



Patsy Penne 125
Ruby L. Whitney

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

BY

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF ITALIAN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY
RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

217.5

The Atheneum Press

GINN AND COMPANY · PROPRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

What is new in this work is chiefly the division and arrangement of topics, though the Introduction assembles material upon pronunciation and versification not hitherto brought together in English, and there is some novelty in subject matter in the exercises for translation. The plan of the book has the merit of having grown directly out of the needs of the classroom. The arrangement is such, it is hoped, as will make the book equally serviceable for the classroom and for private study, and will give it certain of the advantages of both "first book" and reference grammar.

The beginning has been deliberately made very easy. Even the definite article, with which most Italian grammars naturally begin, has been deferred in favor of the indefinite, which, as it lacks a plural, has fewer forms itself and does not immediately require the plural of nouns. This leaves the attention free to center upon the single new principle of the "*s* impure." The definite article with its more complicated forms is not introduced until the fourth lesson, and the main body of rules governing its syntax not until the twenty-second. The plural of nouns is treated in its simpler aspects in the third lesson, and extensively in the thirtieth.

This method of breaking up the more difficult subjects and presenting them at first piecemeal, reserving more thorough-going treatment for a later chapter, has been followed throughout. The subjunctive, for example, is introduced one rule at a time, each illustrated by a sentence or two in all subsequent exercises, so that its use in a few standard cases at least will become automatic, and the student will not fall into the way of regarding it as an unusual, unnatural tense, reserved for special occasions. The subject is

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR.

treated as a whole in Lesson XXVIII. Many of the idiomatic uses of *da*, likewise, are introduced early, although the general treatment of prepositions, including a great number of idioms constructed by means of them, is one of the last in the book. The verbs *essere* and *avere*, except for the indispensable present indicative, are postponed until the regular verbs have been completely learned. The subject of conjunctive pronouns, sometimes presented in a single lesson, is here divided among four, not consecutive, while sentences in the intervening and subsequent exercises continue practice upon them.

In consequence of this method of introducing a working knowledge of many difficult principles early, while leaving their more complicated treatment for later chapters, the book can be divided rather easily, if desired, into first and second year work. Twenty-seven lessons, let us say, would introduce more or less fully all the more important principles, and cover completely the subject of conjunctive pronouns. These lessons, with the irregular verbs of the remaining lessons, might constitute the first year's work, leaving twelve lessons of more complicated questions of syntax for the second year.

It has not always seemed desirable to be entirely consistent in this breaking up of the more difficult subjects; logical arrangement has sometimes seemed to require, as in the case of the person in address, a complete treatment at first. Where this has been the case, the paragraphs dealing with the more subtle points are marked with a star, and may be assigned merely to be read over, or omitted altogether, as the exercises do not illustrate them. In any case the index makes scattered material readily available.

As to the exercises, the older custom has been observed of making them accompany the lessons they illustrate, in the belief that this arrangement keeps the student better in mind of all the work he has done and facilitates review. In designing the work which illustrates the new principles as they are introduced, the desirability of continuing practice on principles already acquired has been kept

PREFACE

steadily in mind. If the instructor prefers fewer sentences for translation, the assignment may be limited to those which illustrate the current lesson. Where the vocabulary seems long, there will usually be found a large proportion of those words whose meaning can be guessed at a glance, and far more of them occur in the paragraphs of Italian reading matter than in the sentences for translation. The paragraphs of Italian on which the exercises for translation are based are in small part original, in large part borrowed or adapted from Italian school readers designed for the lower grades. So they furnish practice from the first in reading connected prose, offer a good practical vocabulary, and deal attractively with Italian home and school life, and the history of modern Italy. Thanks are due to Messrs. Bemporad e Figlio for permission to use selections from the readers *Il mondo nuovo* by Renato Fucini and two *Libri di lettura* by Neretti and Gironi, and to the Società Laziale Editrice of Rome for permission to make similar use of paragraphs from *La terza Italia* in Lessons XXVIII and XXIX. These last, it may to-day be necessary to add, were not selected with any idea of influencing American sentiment, but to show what topics were agitating the Italian mind in the last days before the Great War broke out.

The series of dialogues in the latter part of the book offers a little practice in familiar idiom; they are especially intended for travelers, as they include a good many words useful in the shops and hotels, on the railway, and so on. They are composed in a Tuscan too colloquial to form the basis of exercises, and may be entirely omitted at the pleasure of the instructor.

The third person as the person of address in ordinary intercourse, being the only one for which most travelers have occasion, is introduced very early, before the habit of the true second person is acquired. Accordingly, in the exercises it is the latter which is made to seem the unusual form.

Questions of pronunciation, accent, orthography, and the like are treated in the Introduction, along with an outline of the Italian

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

system of versification and some hints as to the reading of Italian poetry. As the pronunciation cannot be perfectly represented for English readers by any system of equivalent spellings, the instructor will find it necessary to supplement *viva voce* what is said here.

Of the many works that have been consulted in the preparation of this book, those which have been most closely followed are R. Fornaciari's *Grammatica italiana dell' uso moderno*, Parts I and II, and, especially for the Introduction, *Ortoepia e ortografia italiana moderna*, by G. Malagòli. The dictionaries of Edgren and Petrocchi have been constantly consulted; suggestions as to material and arrangement have been gained from the Italian work of Morandi and Cappuccini and from my American predecessors in this field, and for several hints as to Tuscan idiom I am indebted to the grammars of N. Orlandi and Alina Vannini. And I desire to thank Professor A. A. Livingston of Columbia University for kindly undertaking the laborious task of reading this book in proof, and for his very valuable suggestions on many points.

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	
Alphabet	1
Pronunciation	2
Syllabification	15
Tonic Accent	15
Graphic Accents	19
Elision	20
Truncation	22
Variant Forms of Words	24
Capitalization	25
Archaic and Poetic Forms	26
Versification	28
LESSONS	
I. Indefinite Article	33
II. Present of <i>avere</i> and <i>essere</i> . Pronouns in Address	36
III. Plural of Nouns. Future Indicative	39
IV. Definite Article. Past Absolute Indicative	41
V. Contraction of Article. Past Future	45
VI. Gender of Nouns	48
VII. Adjectives and Adverbs	51
VIII. Regular Verbs	58
IX. Conjunctive Pronouns	63
X. <i>Essere</i> . The Passive Voice	67
XI. Conjunctives Continued. Auxiliaries with Intransitive Verbs	71
XII. Reflexive Verbs	76
XIII. Possessives	81
XIV. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs. Relative Pronouns . .	86
XV. The Comparative	90
XVI. The Verb <i>avere</i>	95

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

LESSONS	PAGE
XVII. Two Conjunctive Objects. Conjunctive Adverbs	100
XVIII. Irregular Verbs	103
XIX. <i>Dare, sapere, volere</i>	107
XX. Disjunctives. <i>Venire</i>	111
XXI. Tenses. Verb and Subject	117
XXII. Definite Article. <i>Andare. L'Arrivo</i>	126
XXIII. Cardinal Numerals. <i>Morire</i>	135
XXIV. Ordinal Numerals, Collectives, etc. <i>Parere</i>	142
XXV. Indefinite Article. <i>Fare</i> . Dialogue: <i>L'Albergo</i> . .	149
XXVI. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Stare</i>	155
XXVII. Conjunctive with Dependent Infinitive. <i>Potere</i> . Dia- logue: <i>Dalla sarta</i>	160
XXVIII. The Subjunctive. <i>Dolere</i>	164
XXIX. The Infinitive. <i>Dire</i>	170
XXX. Number of Nouns. <i>Piacere</i>	175
XXXI. Modal Auxiliaries. <i>Dovere</i> . Dialogue: <i>Dal sarto</i> .	184
XXXII. Relative, Demonstrative, and Interrogative Pro- nouns. <i>Udire</i>	190
XXXIII. Participles. <i>Porre</i> . Dialogue: <i>Dal calzolaio</i> . .	196
XXXIV. Gender of Nouns. <i>Uscire</i>	203
XXXV. Indefinites. <i>Scegliere</i> . <i>L'Automobile</i>	209
XXXVI. Adverbs. <i>Valere</i>	220
XXXVII. Prepositions. Dialogue: <i>Dalla modista</i>	232
XXXVIII. Augmentatives and Diminutives. Dialogue: <i>Si fanno le compre</i>	246
XXXIX. Conjunctions and Interjections	251
 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS	 261
ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	275
ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY	301
INDEX	323

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION

I. THE ALPHABET

1. The Italian alphabet is composed of twenty-one letters. Those whose names end in *-a* are of feminine, those in *-e* of common, and the others of masculine gender; but they all may be treated as feminine, to agree with **lettera** understood. They do not change for the plural. Their Italian names are—

LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIA-TION	LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIA-TION
a	a	(ah)	n	enne	(ennay)
b	bi	(bee)	o	o	(toll)
c	ci	(cheat)	p	pi	(pea)
d	di	(Dee)	q	cu	(coo)
e	e	(ale)	r	erre	(erray)
f	effe	(effay)	s	esse	(essay)
g	gi	(genius)	t	ti	(tea)
h	acca	(ahkkah)	u	u	(ooze)
i	i	(machine)	v	vu	(voodoo)
l	elle	(ellay)	z	zeta	(dzayta)
m	emme	(emmay)			

a. The letter *j* (*i lungo*) exists, but only as a diacritical mark used by some writers to indicate the use of *i* as semivowel (cf. 4): *giojelli*, *operajo*; or instead of *ii*: *desidērj*; or for the spelling of foreign words.

b. The following consonants also exist in Italian, for the spelling of foreign words: **k** (*cappa*), **w** (*doppio vu*), **y** (*ipsilon* or *i gr̄eco*), and **x** (*icse* or *ics*).

II. PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS

2. The Vowel Sounds. There are seven vowel sounds in Italian, as follows :

a = ah	fa
ɛ (close) = ale	pɛpɛ
ɛ (open) = men	bɛlla
i = machine	Mimi
ɔ (close) = low	sɔlɔ
ɔ (open) = ought	sɔ
u = moon	luna

a. As the rules given (cf. 3) for determining the close and open e and o, besides being difficult to remember, do not cover all cases, these vowels, when accented, will be marked in this book (as indicated above) when appearing in the text for the first time, in the special vocabularies, and in the complete vocabulary at the end of the volume.

b. People accustomed to speak English incline to mispronounce a, i, and u in certain combinations, slackening and dulling their quality by analogy with English ; this tendency is apparent in a when final, as in **America**, and in i and u when followed by two or more consonants, or by l or r when accented in the antepenult. Thus i in **virtù** 'virtue,' **ninfa** 'nymph,' **mirra** 'myrrh,' **principe** 'prince,' is slackened to the i of 'virile'; u in **singulto** 'sob,' **Bulgaro** 'Bulgarian,' **giunto** 'arrived,' to the u of 'pull.' This tendency should be avoided, and the sound of these vowels kept identical in all combinations.

3. Close and Open E and O. A few rules apply alike to both, but there are numerous special rules for each.

a. Both are Close when followed by gn, lm, mm, nn (except donna 'woman,' monna 'Lady,' nonno 'grandfather'). EXAMPLES : pegno 'pledge,' sogno 'dream,' elmo 'helmet,' olmo 'elm,' vendemmia 'vintage,' sommo 'supreme,' venni 'I came.'

b. Both are Open —

1. When followed by **ns**, **q**, **str**, or (nearly always) a single consonant + two vowels. EXAMPLES: **pēnso** 'I think,' **cōnsole** 'consul,' **equo** 'equal,' **nōstro** 'our,' **finēstra** 'window,' **Venēzia** 'Venice,' **commēdia** 'comedy,' **purgatōrio** 'purgatory,' **collēgio** 'college.'

2. When preceded by a consonant + 1: **glōbo** 'globe,' **splēndido** 'splendid.'

3. *Contrary to rules*, in so-called 'learned' words, not in common use by the people at large: **precōce** 'precocious,' **testimōne** 'witness,' **alfabēto** 'alphabet,' **dittōngō** 'diphthong,' **napoleōnico** 'Napoleonic,' **recōndito** 'recondite,' **Califōrnia**.

c. E is Close (*Lat. i, ē, oe > It. e*) —

1. In unaccented syllables: **Petrucchio**; **cōmē** 'like.'

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in **e**: **mercē** 'thanks to,' **rē** 'King.' EXCEPTIONS: **chē!** 'what!' and other interjections; **è** 'is,' **rē** (musical note), **diē** 'he gave,' **piē** 'foot,' and foreign nouns like **caffē** 'coffee,' **Noē** 'Noah.'

3. In the endings **-ēfice**, **-eggio**, **-ēmbro**, **-esco -a**, **-ēse**, **-ēsimo** (in nouns), **-essa**, **-ēto** (in collectives), **-etto -a** (cf. *d*, 6), **-ēvole**, **-mēnte**, and **-mēnto**. EXAMPLES: **orēfice** 'goldsmith,' **passeggiō** 'walk,' **mēmbro** 'member,' **Francesco** 'Francis,' **mēse** 'month,' **battēsimo** 'baptism,' **contēssa** 'countess,' **olivēto** 'olive-grove,' **allegrettō** 'cheerful,' **onorēvole** 'honorable,' **facilmēnte** 'easily,' **appartamento** 'apartment.'

4. Before **cc**, **ce**, **pp**, **zz** (except **ecco** 'here is,' **spēcchio** 'mirror,' **vēcchio** 'old,' **Giusēppe** 'Joseph,' **sēppe** 'he knew,' **mēzzo** 'half,' **pēzzo** 'piece,' **prēzzo** 'price,' and a few others). EXAMPLES: **zēcca** 'mint,' **orecchio** 'ear,' **invece** 'instead,' **ceppi** 'fetters,' **ricchēzza** 'richness.'

5. In the pronouns **mē** 'me,' **nē** 'of it,' **tē** 'thee,' **gliē** 'to her'; **egli**, **ei**, 'he'; **questo** 'this,' **quello** 'that'; **stesso**, **medēsimo**, 'self.'

6. In the contracted prepositions *nello* 'in the,' *dello* 'of the,' etc.; in the conjunctions *è* 'and,' *ché* 'that,' *finchè* 'as long as,' *mentre* 'while,' *perchè* 'why,' *sé* 'if,' etc.; in the adverbs *dentro* 'within,' *meno* 'less,' *spesso* 'often'; in the numerals *tre* 'three,' *tré dici* 'thirteen,' *sé dici* 'sixteen,' *vénti* 'twenty,' *trénta* 'thirty.'

7. In verbs: whenever accented in the infinitive, past descriptive, future, past absolute, and past subjunctive; in the second plural of the present indicative and imperative; in the second singular and first and second plural of the past future, and in past absolutes and past participles in -*esi* and -*eso* -*a*, except *chiesi* 'I asked' and its compounds.

d. E is Open (Lat. ē, ae > It. ię, e) —

1. When preceded by *i*, or when *i* has been dropped from before it: *cięco* 'blind,' *sęte* (for *sięte*) 'you are.'

2. In the endings -*ello* -*a* (except *capello* 'hair' and *stella* 'star'), -*ema*, -*endo* -*a* (except *vęndo* 'I sell,' *scęndo* 'I descend'), -*ense*, -*ente* -*o* -*i* -*a*, -*lento*, -*enza*, -*ero* (in nouns of more than two syllables), -*ęsimo* (in numerals). EXAMPLES: *bęllo* 'beautiful,' *problema* 'problem,' *bęnda* 'band,' *estęnse* 'of Este,' *Benevento*, *vivęnte* 'living,' *sonnolento* 'somnolent,' *prudęenza* 'prudence,' *impero* 'empire,' *ventęsimo* 'twentieth.'

3. When followed by a single vowel: *sęi* 'six,' *ebręo* 'Hebrew.'

4. In foreign nouns, when final and accented: *Moisę* 'Moses,' *tę* 'tea.'

5. In the adverbs *bęne* 'well,' *certo* 'surely,' *męglio* 'better,' *pęggio* 'worse,' *pręsso* 'near,' *sęmpre* 'always,' *vęrso* 'towards,' in the preposition *sęzna* 'without,' and in the numerals *terzo* 'third,' *sęsto* 'sixth,' *sętte* 'seven,' *sęttimo* 'seventh.'

6. In verbs: in past absolutes in -*etti* and past participles in -*ęnto* and -*ętto*; in present participles in -*ęndo* and -*ęnte*; in the first and third singular and third plural of the past future; in *chiesi* and its compounds, and *ębbi* 'I had,' *ębbe* 'he had,' *ębbero*

'they had.' EXAMPLES: *credetti* 'I believed,' *attento* 'attentive,' *letto* 'read,' *potrei* 'I might,' *avrèbbe* 'he would have,' *saprèbbero* 'they would know.'

e. The following are a few of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the e is close or open:

<i>accetta</i>	hatchet	<i>accetta</i> from <i>accettare</i> to accept
<i>dette</i> from <i>dire</i>	to say	<i>dette</i> from <i>dare</i> to give
<i>legge</i>	law	<i>legge</i> from <i>leggere</i> to read
<i>mèle</i>	apples	<i>mèle</i> (<i>mięle</i>) honey
<i>mente</i>	memory	<i>mente</i> from <i>mentire</i> to lie
<i>pesca</i> from <i>pescare</i>	to fish	<i>pesca</i> peach
<i>pête</i>	footprints	<i>pête</i> pest
<i>sête</i>	thirst	<i>sête</i> (<i>sięte</i>) you are
<i>tema</i> from <i>temere</i>	to fear	<i>tema</i> theme

f. O is Close (Lat. ū, ō > It. ɔ) —

1. In the endings -oce, -doio, -soio, -toio, -one -o -a, -ore -a, -oso (in adjectives). EXAMPLES: *feroce* 'ferocious,' *corridocio* 'corridor,' *vassolio* 'tray,' *scrittocio* 'writing-desk,' *portone* 'great gate,' *padrona* 'mistress,' *imperatore* 'emperor,' *stiratoria* 'laundress,' *glorioso* 'glorious,' *sontuoso* 'sumptuous.'

2. Before r + l, m, n, r, s; before m or n + any consonant except s; and before l + c, f, p, s, or t (except in the inflections of *cōgliere* 'to pluck,' *sciōgliere* 'to loosen,' *tōgliere* 'to take away,' *vōlgere* 'to turn': *colto*, *sciolsi*, *tolse*, *volta*, etc.). EXAMPLES: *orlo* 'margin,' *forma* 'form,' *forno* 'oven,' *torre* 'tower,' *torso* 'torso,' *Orsola* 'Ursula,' *ombra* 'shadow,' *compra* 'buys,' *gōndola* 'gondola,' *tronco* 'trunk,' *contro* 'against,' *mōnte* 'mountain,' *biondo* 'blonde,' *brōnzo* 'bronze,' *oppōngo* 'I oppose,' *solco* 'furrow,' *dolce* 'sweet,' *golfo* 'gulf,' *volpe* 'fox,' *colto* 'cultivated.'

3. In past absolutes and past participles in -osi, -oso (except *espłoso*, *espłosi*), -osto, -otto. EXAMPLES: *nascosi* 'I hid,' *roso* 'gnawed,' *opposto* 'opposed,' *rotto* 'broken.'

4. In the pronouns *lø* 'him,' *loro* 'their,' *coløro*, *costøro*, 'they,' *ogni* 'every'; in the numerals *dødici* 'twelve,' *quattørdici* 'fourteen,'; in *mølto* 'much'; in the prepositions and conjunctions *come* 'like,' *dopo* 'after,' *døve* 'where,' *oltre* 'beyond,' *søpra* 'over,' *søtto* 'under'; in the negative *nøn*; and in the past subjunctive of *èssere* 'to be': *føssi* 'I might be' etc.

g. O is Open (*Lat. ò, au > It. uø, ø*) —

1. After *u*, and in words from which a preceding *u* has been dropped. EXAMPLES: *fuøco* 'fire,' *nøvo* (for *nuøvo*) 'new.' Cf. f, 1.

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in *ø*, except *lø*. EXAMPLES: *ciø* 'that,' *andø* 'he went,' *farø* 'I shall do,' *Pø* the river, *dø* 'I give.'

3. When followed by a vowel (*except* in *nøi*, *vøi*, and the endings *-døio*, *-søio*, *-tøio*). EXAMPLES: *Savøia* 'Savoy,' *nøia* 'annoyance,' *erøe* 'hero,' *Balbøa*, *tuøi* 'thy.'

4. Before *b*, *d* (*except* *cøda* 'tail,' *dødici* 'twelve,' *rødo* 'I gnaw'), *f*, *ns*, *-cchi-*, *-rchi-*. EXAMPLES: *røba* 'things,' *gøbbo* 'hunchback,' *brødo* 'broth,' *støffa* 'goods,' *responso* 'response,' *ginøcchio* 'knee,' *rimørchio* 'towing.'

5. When accented in the antepenult before a single *t* or *s*, or any double consonant except *m* or *r*. EXAMPLES: *esøtico* 'exotic,' *propøsøto* 'resolution,' *zøccolo* 'wooden shoe,' *søffoca* 'suffocates,' *viøttola* 'lane.'

6. In the endings *-øccio*, *-ølo*, *-øntico*, *-øto*, *-øtto* (*except* past participles, cf. f, 3), *-øzzo*. EXAMPLES: *carøccio* 'cart,' *Tirølo* 'Tyrol,' *anacreøntico* 'Anacreontic,' *ignøto* 'unknown,' *aquiløtto* 'eaglet,' *bøzzo* 'sketch.'

7. In the adverbs *øggi* 'to-day,' *pøco* 'little,' *talvølta* 'sometimes,' *tøsto* 'soon,' *trøppo* 'too much'; the conjunctions *perø* 'however,' *perciø* 'on this account,' etc.; the negative *nø* 'no'; and the numerals *nøno* 'ninth,' *nøve* 'nine.'

8. In past absolutes in *-øssi*, *-ølsi*. EXAMPLES: *møssi* 'I moved,' *sciølse* 'he loosened.'

h. Some of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the **o** is close or open:

CLOSE

cogli	contracted prep. with the
collo	contracted prep. with the
fosse	from essere to be
rosa	from rōdere to gnaw
torre	tower
tosco	Tuscan (<i>poetic</i>)
vōlgo	ignorant class
vōlto	face

OPEN

cogli	from cōgliere to pluck
collo	neck
fosse	ditches
rosa	rose
torre	(tōgliere) to take away
tosco	poison
vōlgo	from vōlgere to turn
vōlto	from vōlgere to turn

4. Semivowels and Diphthongs. Any two vowels pronounced as one syllable constitute a diphthong. The vowels **i** and **u** before another vowel are usually pronounced respectively **y** and **w**, and are then called semivowels. (See below, **4, d.**)

Diphthongs are of two kinds: **a.** *Rising* diphthongs, in which a "weak" vowel (**i** or **u**) precedes a "strong" vowel (**e**, **o**, or **a**) and the strong is stressed. EXAMPLES: **liēto** 'joyous,' **fuōco** 'fire,' **guardi** 'look,' **uōmo** 'man,' **ieři** 'yesterday.'

b. *Falling* diphthongs, in which a strong vowel precedes a weak, and still receives the stress. EXAMPLES: **nōi** 'we,' **poichē** 'since,' **Europa** 'Europe,' **Laura**.

i. When two weak vowels combine, the second usually takes the stress. EXAMPLES: **guida** 'guide,' **giù** 'down.'

c. Triphthongs. A strong vowel between two weak ones, or a weak between two strong, may form a triphthong, which is really two diphthongs in one, a rising and a falling. EXAMPLES: **miei** 'my,' **suoi** 'his,' **studai** 'I studied,' **bestiuqla** 'small creature.'

i. Four or even five vowels may be contiguous, and pronounced together; but usually the first of these stands after *g* or *c* merely to give it a special sound (cf. 5, *a*), and so only three, or four, are heard. EXAMPLES: *gioiello* 'jewel,' *merciaio* 'dry-goods merchant,' *bagagliaio* 'baggage room,' *Acciaiuolo*.

d. In many words, often compound or derivative, *i* and *u* are not semivowels but are pronounced as a separate syllable. In such case the combination is not a diphthong. EXAMPLES: *spi-a* 'spy,' *spi-are* 'to spy,' *signori-a* 'lordship,' *oblì-o* 'oblivion,' *ri-esco* 'I succeed,' *ri-uscire* 'to succeed,' *pi-uolo* 'rung,' *tri-qnfo* 'triumph,' *vi-aggio* 'journey,' *sontu-oso* 'sumptuous,' *ambigu-o* 'ambiguous.'

5. Consonant Sounds. *a.* The following consonant sounds occur in Italian, all of them being pronounced more explosively than in English, except when standing alone between two vowels.

b, as in English.

c, cc, (hard) before *a, o, u*, = *k*: *caro* 'dear,' *còn* 'with,' *cura* 'care.'

c, cc, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = *ch*: *Cina* 'China,' *çentro* 'center.'

ch (used only before *i* or *e*), = *k*: *chi* 'who?'

ci before another vowel, = *ch*: *cięco* 'blind,' *ciuco* 'donkey,' *provīncia* 'province.'

d, t, pronounced with the tip of the tongue farther forward than in English.

f, as in English.

g (hard) before *a, o, u*, = 'go': *Bēlga* 'Belgian,' *gola* 'throat,' *laguna* 'lagoon.'

g, gg, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = 'gin': *gente* 'people,' *gita* 'excursion.'

gh (used only before *i* or *e*), = 'go': *aghi* 'needles,' *botteghe* 'shops.'

gi before another vowel, = 'gin': *mangiare* 'to eat,' *Giovanni* 'John,' *giūdice* 'judge.'

gl before *i*, = 'million': *gli* 'to him,' *figli* 'sons.' (But cf. 5, *c*.)

gli before another vowel, = 'million': *glie* 'to her,' *Baglioni*, *Pagliacci*.

h, silent.

l and **n**, pronounced with the tongue a little nearer the front teeth than in English.

m, **p**, **q**, as in English.

n before the hard sound of **c** or **g** or **q**, = *ng*: **franco** 'franc,' **fungo** 'mushroom,' **cinque** 'five.'

r, always rolled, especially when double.

s, = 'sir': **sé** 'if,' **sproné** 'spur.'

š, = 'rose': **rósa** 'rose,' **smeraldo** 'emerald,' **sbaglio** 'mistake.'

sc before **i** or **e**, = *sh*: **scimmia** 'monkey,' **conoscere** 'to be acquainted with.'

sci before another vowel, = *sh*: **scià** 'shah,' **liscio** 'smooth,' **scienza** 'science.'

v, as in English.

z, = *ts*: **conversazione** 'conversation,' **pazzo** 'mad.'

ż, = *dz*: **mèzzo** 'half,' **dózzina** 'dozen,' **żero** 'zero.'

b. Double Consonants. Double consonants must be pronounced double, but without hiatus. Few single words (such as *unnatural*, *tailless*) present this phenomenon in English; but it is easily illustrated by combinations of two words, such as *mad dog*, *big gun*, *a mile long*, *room-mate*, *pine knot*, etc. Pronounce on this principle **bèllo** 'beautiful,' **tèrra** 'earth,' **Boccaccio**, **mòsso** 'moved.'

Note that **cci** and **ggi** sound not as **c-ci** and **g-gi** but as **t-ci** and **d-gi**; similarly **cc** and **gg** before **e**. Also that **zz**, **żż**, sound like **z**, **ż**, not doubled.

This distinction between the single and double consonant should be carefully observed, as there are many words whose meaning, when spoken, would otherwise be mistaken. The following are some of these:

aringa	herring
baco	silkworm
bèla	baa
camino	hearth
canone	large dog

arringa	harangue
Bacco	Bacchus
bella	beautiful
cammino	road
cannone	cannon

casa	house	cassa	money-chest
copia	plenty	coppia	couple
dita	fingers	ditta	firm
Ino	Ino	inno	hymn
Luca	Luke	Lucca	the city
nono	ninth	nønno	grandfather
risa	laughter	rissa	quarrel
sonetto	sonnet	sonnetto	nap
Tracia	Thrace	träccia	trace
vano	vain	vanno	they go

1. Similarly, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, in an accented syllable before another consonant, are prolonged, and pronounced as if double. EXAMPLES: *altro* (all-tro) 'other,' *quando* (quann-do) 'when,' **Dante** (dann-te), *novembre* (novemm-bre) 'November,' **porta** (porr-ta) 'door,' **anche** (ang-che) 'also,' **pongo** (pong-go) 'I put,' **stanco** (stang-co) 'tired,' **propinquo** (proping-quo) 'near.'

2. **Special Doublings.** A word ending in an accented vowel, or a monosyllable ending in a vowel, has in pronunciation the effect of doubling the initial consonant of the following word. Thus **Sì**, **Signora** 'Yes, madam,' is actually pronounced *sissignora*; **ma chè!** 'what!' is pronounced *macchè*; **va bene** 'all right,' *vabbene*; etc.

a. When compounds are made of words in such groups, the spelling follows the pronunciation. EXAMPLES: **più** 'more' and **tosto** 'soon' combine in **piuttosto** 'rather'; **chi** 'who,' **che** 'that,' and **sia** 'be,' in **chicchessia** 'whoever.'

b. The following words, although not accented on the last syllable, double the initial consonant of the following word: **come** 'how,' **dove** 'where,' **qualche** 'some,' **sopra** 'upon.' EXAMPLES: *comemmai* (*come mai*) 'how in the world,' *dovevvà?* (*dove va*) 'where does he go?' *qualchevvolta* (*qualche volta*) 'sometimes,' and the compound **soprattutto** (**sopra tutto**) 'above all.'

c. The words **dio**, **dæa**, **dëi**, **dëe**, 'god' and 'goddess,' singular and plural, double their initial consonant after any word ending in a vowel, as **bælladdea** (*bella dea*) 'beautiful goddess.'

d. Doubling does not take place where there is any break in the sense between the two words; after a conjunctive pronoun object (cf. 94), because, being proclitic, it never takes the accent; or after a word ending with an apostrophe, as **sta' quieto** 'be quiet,' unless the succeeding word be a conjunctive pronoun (see below).

e. But when the conjunctive object follows a form of the verb which is accented on the last syllable, even with the apostrophe, its initial consonant is doubled (cf. 100, *b*). EXAMPLES: **parlommi** (*parlò mi*) 'he spoke to me,' **dille** (*di' le*) 'tell her,' **fallo** (*fa' lo*) 'do it.'

c. *Gli* keeps the hard sound of **g** when preceded by **n**, as **ganglio** 'ganglion,' and in the words **geroglifico** 'hieroglyphic,' **glicerina** 'glycerine,' **negligente** 'negligent,' and a few others.

d. Tuscan Peculiarities. In Tuscan speech a single **c** or **g** between vowels of which the second is **i** or **e**, whether in the same word or in a group of two words, is softened, the **c** almost to *sh* and the **g** almost to *zh* (*s* in *pleasure*). A slight touch of this softening is an elegance of pronunciation anywhere in Italy. EXAMPLES: **dièci** 'ten,' **bugia** 'lie,' **ricèvere** 'to receive,' **diligente** 'diligent,' **la gente** 'the people,' **bella città** 'beautiful city.'

Likewise, a slight softening and aspirating of the hard **c** and **g**, and of **q**, to a sound approximating the German **ch**, is acceptable to the Tuscans, though the exaggeration of it heard among the lower classes is a vulgarism. This "attenuation" (which should not be adopted by foreigners without great discretion) occurs either at the beginning or in the middle of a word, if the consonant stands between two vowels, or is preceded by a vowel but followed by **r** or **l**. EXAMPLES: **nemico** 'enemy,' **equo** 'equal,' **lago** 'lake,' **questa cosa** 'this thing,' **democràtico** 'democratic,' **agro** 'sour,' **la glotta** 'glottis,' **una classe** 'a class.'

e. S and Z. As with the close and open vowels, the rules cannot be made to fit all cases; accordingly in this

book **s** = *z* will be marked (in the vocabularies or when appearing for the first time in the text) **s̄**, and **z** = *dz* will be marked **z̄**.

I. **S** is pronounced **s**:

- a.* When initial before a vowel, as in **santo** 'saint.'
- b.* When double, as in **rosso** 'red.'
- c.* When followed by **c**, **f**, **p**, **q**, **t**. EXAMPLES: **scala** 'stair,' **schērzo** 'joke,' **Schiavo** 'Slav,' **sfēra** 'sphere,' **rispōndere** 'to reply,' **squilla** 'bell,' **stanza** 'room.'
- d.* In words ending in **-eso** -**a** -**e** -**i** or **-oso** -**a** -**e** -**i**, with the vowel close (cf. **3, c, 7**; **f, 1, 3**), and their derivatives. EXAMPLES: **atteso** 'awaited,' **impresa** 'enterprise,' **mēse** 'month,' **presi** 'I took,' **generoso** 'generous,' **generosità** 'generosity,' **Tolosa** 'Toulouse,' **impose** 'he imposed,' **nascosi** 'I hid.'

EXCEPTIONS:

cortēse	kind	paēse	country
francēse	French	paleše	evident
lēsi - o , from lēdere (<i>rare</i>)	to damage	tošo	shaven
marchēse	marquis		

2. **S** is pronounced **s̄**:

- a.* When followed by **b**, **d**, **g**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, or **v**. EXAMPLES: **şbaglio** 'mistake,' **şdegno** 'indignation,' **şgradēvole** 'disagreeable,' **dişlacciare** 'to unlace,' **entusiasmo** 'enthusiasm,' **şnodare** 'to untie,' **şradicare** 'to eradicate,' **şvernare** 'to winter.'
- b.* Between two vowels, as in **āsilo** 'asylum,' with the following important exceptions:
 - (1) Cf. **1, d**, above.
 - (2) When a prefix is set before a word normally beginning with **s**. EXAMPLES: **di-serrare** 'to unlock' (but **dişereditare** 'to disinherit'), **pro-secuzione** 'prosecution,' **pre-servare** 'to preserve,' **ri-sorgimento** 'resurrection,' **trēnta-sēi** 'thirty-six.'

(3) And in the following words :

annusare to smell at	parasito parasite
āsino donkey	Pisa
casa house	pisēllo pea
Chiusi a town	pōsa, ripōso, repose
chiusi -o, <i>from</i> chiūdere to close	raso satin
cōsa thing	Ricāsoli
così thus	rimasi I remained
desidērio desire	riso laugh
fuso spindle	susina plum

3. Z is pronounced z :

a. Before ia, ie, io. EXAMPLES : pazzia 'madness,' grāzie 'thank you,' nazione 'nation.'

b. In all words not listed under 4.

4. Z is pronounced ȝ :

a. In verbs ending in -izzare, of more than four syllables in the infinitive ; as organizzare 'to organize.'

b. When single between two vowels, except as under 3, a. EXAMPLES : biȝantino 'Byzantine,' Donizetti, ozōno 'ozone.'

c. When initial, except in the following words :

zācchera mud stain	zāzzera long hair	zittella spinster
zaffo bung	zecca mint	zitto hush
zampa paw	zeccino sequin	zōccolo wooden shoe
zampillo fountain	zeppa wedge	zōlfo sulphur
zampogna reed	zimbēllo decoy	zōppo lame
zana basket	zingaro gipsy	zucca squash
zāngola charm	zinzino sip	zūcchero sugar
zanna tusk	zio uncle	zuffa fray
zappa mattock	zīpolo spigot	zūfolo whistle
zatta raft	zirlare to whistle	zuppa broth

d. In the following words :

aguzzino slave-driver	azzurro blue	brōnzo bronze
amāzzzone amazon	brezza breeze	donzella damsel

dozzina	dozen	qrzo	barley
gazzella	gazelle	pettegolezzo	gossip
gazzetta	gazette	pranzo	dinner
ghiribizzo	caprice	razzo	spoke
Lazzaro	Lazarus	ribrezzo	shiver
lazzaretto	pest-house	romanzo	novel
lezzo	unpleasant odor	rönzo	buzzing
magazzino	storehouse	scorza	bark
marzocco	lion of Florence	zanzara	mosquito
mèzzo	half, middle	zénzero	ginger
orizzonte	horizon		

And the following less common words, and others still more uncommon :

arzigògolo	bonzo	gazza	olezzo	suzzacchera
arzillo	bózzima	ghezzo	pénzolo	suzzato
azzimo	bózzo (' pool ')	ghiôzzo	raffa (fish)	sverza
baragozzo	buzzo	grezzo	rezzo	verzicare
barzellëtta	calençuolo	intirizzire	rozzo	verziere
bazza	eczëma	lacchezzo	rubizzo	zizzania
bażzana	Elżeviri	lazzeruola	ruzzo	zizzola
bażzoffia	frizzo	lazzo	scarża	zonzo
belzuino	frönzolo	manzo	sfarzo	zozza
Belzebù	ganzo	Manzoni	sgabuzzino	
bizza	garża	mözzo (' hub ')	siżza	
bizzeffe	garzo	Nazzarëno	sozzo	

A few words differ in meaning according to whether the z is "voiced" (z) or "unvoiced" (z), among which are the following :

bózzo	pool	bózzo	sketch
mèzzo	half, middle	mèzzo	wet, ripe
mözzo	hub	mözzo	cabin-boy
razza	ray (fish)	razza	race, lineage

NOTE. In derived words, s or z keeps the sound that it has in the root word, even contrary to rule. EXAMPLES: sorriso 'smile' from riso, rönzio 'continued buzzing' from rönzo.

III. SYLLABIFICATION

The division of words into syllables is very exact in Italian.

6. Nearly all syllables must end in a vowel, which may be preceded by as many as three consonants. EXAMPLES : *ca-sa, ta-sca, a-vrò, ri-u-sci-re, e-strè-mo, sbra-na-re, e-spri-me, mi-glio, va-ghe, tò-sto, Ti-sbe, fi-nè-stra, sfu-ma-re.*

7. But double consonants, and groups consisting of a liquid (*l, r*) or nasal (*m, n*) followed by a mute (*b, c, d, g, p, t*) or spirant (*f, v, s, z*), or of a liquid and a nasal, are divided. EXAMPLES : *qua-drèt-ti, bél-lo, bus-se, al-lac-ciati, da-van-zale, sèn-to, sel-cia-to, rim-bòm-bo, mar-mo, scèn-do, al-tro, sin-cè-ro, Ar-no, al-ma, stir-pe, or-gò-glio.*

8. Words to be divided at the end of a line of print or writing must be divided on these principles, and an apostrophe may never be left at the end of a line. For example, *tutt' altro, all' Italia*, must be divided *tut-t' altro, al-l' Italia*.

IV. TONIC ACCENT

9. The distribution of the tonic accent, or the question on which syllable of a word to lay the stress, is one of the chief difficulties of Italian pronunciation for the foreigner. A few rules may be given, but there are many exceptions. The accentuation of a word, like its gender, should be learned along with its meaning. In this book, all stressed antepe-nults, and *i* when accented in the final groups *ia, ie, io, ii*, will be marked with a macron, thus : *gōndola, Signorīa.*

10. The majority of Italian words are accented on the penult, and are called *parole piane* : *vèdo 'I see,' luna 'moon,' invece 'instead,' reverberare 'reverberate,' finirète 'you will finish.'*

11. Words accented on the last syllable are called **parole tronche**: *poichè* 'since,' *virtù* 'virtue,' *curiosità* 'curiosity.'

12. Words accented on the antepenult are called **parole sdrucciole**: *cèlebre* 'famous,' *ammirano* 'they admire,' *organizzano* 'they organize.'

13. Those accented on the syllable preceding the antepenult are called **bisdrucciole**: *andāndosene* 'going away,' *cèlebrano* 'they celebrate.'

a. Most of these are the third persons plural of verbs having more than three syllables in the infinitive, of which the first person singular is accented on the antepenult; but it is not easy to be sure whether the first person singular is so accented in a given instance. However, if the verb be derived from a noun, the first person singular will follow the accent of the noun; and when the infinitive ends in **-borare**, **-iugare**, **-iuware**, **-ipare**, **-minare** preceded by a single vowel, or **-erare** preceded by a liquid + a mute, or its ending is preceded by a mute + a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the antepenult. But if the infinitive ending is preceded by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the penult. EXAMPLES: *inganno* 'deceit,' *inganno* 'I deceive,' *ingānnano* 'they deceive'; *ōpera* 'work,' *ōpero* 'I work,' *ōperano* 'they work'; *integrare* 'to complete,' *integrano* 'they complete'; *corrobora*re 'to corroborate,' *corrōboro*; *coniugare* 'to conjugate,' *cōniugano*; *dissipare* 'to dissipate,' *dissipo*; *seminare* 'to sow,' *sēmino*; *illuminare* 'to illuminate,' *illūminano*; *camminare* 'to walk,' *cammino*.

NOTE. In verbs of Latin derivation, the quantity of the vowel in the penult of the first person singular of the root verb is a fairly safe guide to the tonic accent in the Italian derivative. EXAMPLES: *indīco* > *īndico*, *imītor* > *imīto* or *īmito*, *conjūro* > *congiūro*.

14. The syllable that receives the tonic accent is usually a few tones higher in pitch than the others, particularly in the important

word of the sentence. The failure to observe this difference will make even well-pronounced Italian sound foreign. Sometimes, as in calling to a distant person, the tonic accent will be an octave above :

Su, Corrado,

Vieni a veder che Dio per grazia volse.

(Oh, Corrado, come and see what God has willed !)

In exclamations, or in questions expressing amazement or incredulity, and to some extent in all speech, the whole sentence takes a kind of tonic accent. This falls sometimes on the first syllable of the sentence. A comparison of the sentences "*Are you going to-day?*" "*Are you going to-day?*" "*Are you going to-day?*" will illustrate this, but in Italian such variety is not reserved exclusively for particular rhetorical effects. English as spoken in England presents a closer analogy than American speech to this peculiarity of Italian.

15. Many words are distinguished in meaning from their homonyms only by the tonic accent. The following are a few of these :

ancōra still

capitāno captain

compīto *from compire* to fulfill

Cupido Cupid

impāri *from imparare* to learn

pagāno pagan

perdōno pardon

principī beginnings, principles

rubīno ruby

āncora anchor

cāpitano *from capitare* to fall

cōmpito task

cūpido eager

īmpari uneven

pāgano *from pagare* to pay

pērdono *from perdere* to lose

pīncipi princes

rūbino *from rubare* to rob

V. WORDS FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

16. For practice on the consonants :

pazzo	svisceratezza	sgattigliare	santo
scianto	ella	lascio	sguaglianza
macchia	Brëscia	sonno	giungeva
Guglielmo	stortigliatura	montagna	glauche
floscio	stagno	sfoglia	negli
sragionevole	staiuolo	scröscio	somigliano
segni	fatto	bagagli	occhio
vèccchio	malizia	somiglianza	chicche
sgagliardare	ingegno	luoghi	sciogliere
curiosa	guai	srugginire	svolazzatoio
allo	lusinghiéro	ghiacciai	sferza
lasciare	pioggia	secco	azzurro
scricchiolare	slanciamento	sdraire	sfilacciatura
sfregiare	svogliatamente	seccia	accostandogli
attesa	Russia	uscio	sceglie
secche	sbirracchiolo	figlioccia	gloriose
ginocchi	sloggiare	seccita	chiacchierare
sfregacciare	bianche	smemorataccio	sassoso
tedeschi	röccia	stovigliaio	villaggio
dramma	disse	sciénte	svegliamento
gloria	scheggetta	qualche	scusa
sghimbescio	smagio	bisbiglio	sguardo
scricchiolano	tacque	stanche	giudizio
gigli	zéro	vizio	fertilizzare

17. For practice on close and open vowels :

allora	Londra	Siena	dolce
forestiere	settembre	elemōsina	parente
solenne	senza	bronzo	borchia
luogo	legno	tōgliere	buono
rotondo	dormitorio	Maremma	moda
membro	deplora	inchiestro	donna
fuori	prendo	Orfeo	fēmmina
milanese	colmo	contento	insolenza

cielo	nōcciolo	Raffaello	Po
silenzio	piega	ecco	Pietro
talvolta	penitenza	ponte	Spezzia
allegrezza	faticoso	chieso	atteso

VI. GRAPHIC ACCENTS

18. Three graphic accents are used in Italian : the grave (`), the most common ; the circumflex (^), used in a few cases ; and the acute (') , which is rare in Italian.

19. The grave accent is used —

a. On final accented vowels of words of more than one syllable.

EXAMPLES : **virtù** 'virtue,' **città** 'city.'

b. On final vowels of monosyllables to indicate a diphthong.

EXAMPLES : **può** 'he can,' **più** 'more,' **ciò** 'that,' **già** 'already.'

c. On the truncated forms (cf. 31, a; 48, c) of the poetic past absolutes in **-aro**, **-iro**, **-ero**, to distinguish them from the truncated infinitives of the same verbs. Thus, **amàr** = **amaro** (**amārono**), not **amare**.

d. On monosyllables that have been combined with some other word or prefix, in order to keep the tonic accent in the same place. EXAMPLES : **fa** 'makes,' **rifà** 'remakes'; **rè** 'king,' **vicerè** 'viceroy.'

e. On certain monosyllables in common use, to distinguish them from others identical in spelling but of different meaning.

chè that	chè because	la, li, <i>articles</i>	là, lì, there
da from	dà gives	nè of it, of them	nè neither
di of	dì day	sé if	sé himself
è and	è is	si himself	sì so, yes
fe' he did	fè faith	tè thee	tè tea

20. The circumflex is used on certain shortened forms such as **tôrre** (**tōgliere**) 'to take away,' and often over final i when it represents ii. EXAMPLE : **desidério** 'desire,' *pl.* **desiderî** (written also **desiderii**, **desiderj**).

21. The acute accent is used —

- a.* To indicate that a certain word with close e or o is meant, and not its homonym with open vowel; as *tóscō*, indicating the poetic word for Tuscan, instead of *tɔsco* 'poison.'
- b.* In poetry, when the tonic accent is altered to suit the rhythm.
- c.* In dictionaries it serves to indicate the close vowels, and the grave the open.
- d.* The tendency is increasing among grammarians to encourage the use of the acute accent over final i and u, and final close e and o, when these are accented.

VII. ELISION

22. Elision is the omission of the final vowel of one word before the initial vowel of the following word. It takes place only between two words closely bound together in sense, as verb and subject or object, preposition and object, adjective or article and noun; and any pause or punctuation mark prevents its use. It is indicated by the apostrophe. EXAMPLES : *l' uomo* 'the man,' *nell' aria* 'in the air,' *tutt' altro* (cf. 8). It may occur in the following cases, but is most usual with the articles.

23. In the articles *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, alone or when contracted with prepositions (cf. 75). *Gli* is elided only before i; *le* only before e, and then not if the word is unchanged in the plural. EXAMPLES : *l(o)' amico* 'the friend,' *l(a)' anima* 'the soul,' *dell(o)' amore* 'of love,' *all(a)' amica* 'to the friend' (f.), *l(e)' erbe* 'the herbs,' *gl(i)' Inglesi* 'the English,' *le età* 'the ages,' *gli uomini* 'the men.'

24. In the singular feminine form of the indefinite article: *un(a)' ora* 'an hour.'

25. In the pronoun objects *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *vi*, *ne*, *lo*; and *ci* before *i* or *e*. EXAMPLES: *m'* abituo 'I accustom myself,' *t'* insegn̄a 'he teaches thee,' *s'* int̄ende 'that is understood,' *n'* ha parlato 'he has spoken of it,' *l'* aspetto 'I await him,' *c'* imita 'he imitates us,' *c'* ērano 'there were.'

26. In the pronouns *ogni*, *questo*, *quello*, *codestō*, *altro*, *nulla*, *niènte*; the adverbs *poco*, *tanto*, *quanto*; the prepositions *di*, *da*, *oltre*, *presso*, and *senza*, in certain adverbial expressions; the adjectives *santo*, *bèllo*, and *buñono*, when immediately followed by their substantives; the conjunctions *anche*, *ché*, *dove*, *onde*, *comè*, and *sé* before *e*; and the numerals *secondo*, *terzo*, *quarto*, *quattro*, *cinque*, *dēcimo*, etc., *vènti*, *trènta*, *cènto*, *mille*, *mèzzo*.

EXAMPLES: *ogn'* altro 'every other,' *quest'* animale 'this animal,' *quell'* amico 'that friend,' *codest'* uomo 'that man,' *altr'* ieri 'day before yesterday,' *null'* uomo 'no man,' *niènt'* affatto 'nothing at all,' *poc'* altro 'little else,' *tant'* è 'so it is,' *quant'* oro 'how much gold,' *tazza d(i)*' acqua 'cup of water,' *oltr'* Arno 'beyond the Arno,' *press'* a *poco* 'nearabout,' *senz'* altro 'without delay,' *d(a)*' allora 'from then,' *Sant' Órsola* 'Saint Ursula,' *bèll'* aria 'beautiful air,' *buñon'* anima 'good soul,' *dov'* è 'where is it?' *anch'* io 'I too,' *com'* è 'how is it?' *ond'* andò 'whence he went,' *ch'* hanno 'that they have,' *s'* è vero 'if it is true,' *second'* anno 'second year,' *terz'* ultimo 'third from the last,' *quattr'* aranci 'four oranges,' *vènt'* anni 'twenty years,' *mill'* anni 'a thousand years,' *mèzz'* ora 'a half-hour.'

27. In the first and third persons singular of verbs before a pronoun subject, and in the third person singular of the past future before a word beginning with *e*. EXAMPLES: *diss'* io 'said I,' *dic'* egli 'says he,' *potrèbb'* èssere 'it might be.'

28. In the following contracted forms:

a' for *ai* to the
bè' for *bene* well

mò' for *modo* manner
ne' for *nei* in the

cò' for ciò with the	pè' for pèi for the
da' for dai from the	pq' for poco little
dè' for dèi of the	prò' for pròde brave
di' for dici say	què' for quèi those
è' for ei he	sù' for sui on the
fe' for fece he did	tè' for tièni hold
fra' for frai among the	tq' for tqgli take away
gua' for guarda look	tra' for trai among the
ma' for mali evils	vè' for vèdi see
mè' for meglio better	vq' for voglio I will

NOTE. All these contractions are used in speech with the greatest frequency, but their use in the written language depends upon the discretion and taste of the author. The forms *be'*, *di'*, *gua'*, *te'*, are Tuscan popular forms; *ma'*, *me'*, *pro'*, are poetic forms; the others are admissible in prose.

VIII. TRUNCATION

29. Truncation (*troncamento*) is the dropping of the final unaccented vowel or sometimes syllable of a word under certain conditions, as *amor* for *amore*, *val* for *valle*, *caval* for *cavalo*.

30. It takes place only under the following conditions :

- a. In a word of more than one syllable, not accented on the last.
- b. When the final vowel (as a rule not **a**, cf. 32) is immediately preceded by **l**, **n**, **r**, rarely **m**.
- c. When the word to be truncated is not followed by one beginning with two consonants or (generally speaking) a vowel, and is not (in prose) a plural substantive.
- d. When the two words are closely bound together without pause or break in the sense. EXAMPLES: *andar(e)* *via* 'to go away,' *nqbil(e)* *donna* 'noble lady,' *bñn(e)* *fatto* 'well done,' *ci siam(o)* *tutti* 'we are all here,' *caval(lo)* *di battaglia* 'war horse,' *un(o)* *bñl(lo)* *giorno* 'a fine day.'

31. Words regularly truncated are —

a. Those ending in -le, -lo, -llo, -ano, -eno, -ino, -ono, -nno, -ne, -re, -ero. EXAMPLES: *cattedral(e)* 'cathedral,' *vuol(e)* 'he will,' *figliuol(o)* 'son,' *castel(lo)* 'castle,' *man(o)* 'hand,' *fren(o)* 'check,' *fin(o)* 'till,' *fan(no)* 'they do,' *diran(no)* 'they will say,' *buon(o)* 'good,' *vien(e)* 'comes,' *mar(e)* 'sea,' *par(e)* 'appears,' *pensier(o)* 'thought.'

b. The words *uom(o)* 'man,' *insiem(e)* 'together,' *un(o)* 'one' and its compounds, *doman(i)* 'to-morrow,' *fuor(i)* 'outside,' *ier(i)* 'yesterday,' *pōver(o)* (only before a vowel) 'poor,' *par(o)* 'pair'; the first person plural of verbs in -mo (not -mmo), as *sarem* 'we shall be,' *andavam* 'we were going'; and the third person plural in -ro, as *sēpper(o)* 'they knew,' *potrēbber(o)* 'they might,' *fōsser(o)* 'they would be.'

c. Titles before proper names, or one proper name before another. EXAMPLES: *dottor(e)* **Antonio** 'Doctor Anthony,' *signor(e)* **Bondi** 'Mr. Bondi,' **Giovan(ni)** *Battista* 'John the Baptist,' **Val(le) di Chiana** 'Valley of the Chiana,' **Anton(io)** **Pietro** 'Anthony Peter,' **Pier(o)** **Antonio** 'Peter Anthony.'

d. In poetry: plurals in -ni, -ri; nouns in -iro, -oro, nouns and adjectives in -aro, -uro, and adjectives in -ero; *parole sdrucciole* in -re; and *van(o)* 'vain,' *san(o)* 'sane,' *ver(o)* 'true,' *color(o)*, *costor(o)*, 'those.' EXAMPLES: *can(i)* 'dogs,' *pensier(i)* 'thoughts,' *acciar(o)* 'steel,' *sicur(o)* 'sure,' *dur(o)* 'hard,' *gir(o)* 'circle,' *lavor(o)* 'labor,' *fier(o)* 'proud.'

32. Irregular truncations are *or(a)* 'hour' and its compounds, *suor(a)* 'Sister' (a nun), *fra(te)* 'Brother' (a friar), *sol(a)* 'only,' *san(to)* 'Saint,' and *gran(de)* 'large' (cf. 85). EXAMPLES: *or ora* 'just now,' *finor* 'until now,' *suor Maria* 'Sister Mary,' *fra Girōlamo* 'Brother Jerome,' *una sol volta* 'just once,' *san Luigi* 'Saint Louis,' *gran caso* 'important circumstance.'

33. Truncation does not affect the tonic accent. As it may be used in poetry before a pause or at the end of a line, truncation provides "masculine endings" which otherwise could scarcely occur in Italian verse.

IX. VARIANT FORMS OF WORDS

34. For a good many words there are two different, equally correct forms, though one will be generally preferred, and the other often confined in its use to Tuscany. Compare English *crawfish*, *crayfish*; *toward*, *towards*; *special*, *especial*. Among such variable words are —

altero, altiero, 'haughty'; angelo, angiolo, 'angel'; castigo, gas-tigo, 'punishment'; ceppo, cippo, 'log'; cilięgia, cirięgia, 'cherry'; crōnaca, crōnica, 'chronicle'; december, dicembre, 'December'; denaro, danaro, 'money'; domani, dimani, 'to-morrow'; forestiere, forestiero, 'foreigner'; nativo, natio, 'native'; nervo, nerbo, 'nerve'; nuqvo, nqvo, 'new'; Pancrazio, Brancazio, 'Pancras'; pellegrino, peregrino, 'pilgrim'; rinunziare, rinunciare, 'to renounce'; riva, ripa, 'bank'; scirocco, sirocco, 'sirocco.'

In addition to such sporadic divergences, there are certain principles of variation, as follows :

35. **Apheresis.** The first syllable is sometimes dropped, as in evangelo, vangelo, 'gospel'; arena, rena, 'sand.'

36. **Syncope.** The middle syllable is sometimes dropped. EXAMPLES : opera, opra, 'work'; anderò, andrò, 'I shall go', tōgliere, tōrre, 'to take away'; onorēvole, orrēvole, 'honorable.'

37. **Apocope.** The last syllable may be dropped, as in fede, fè, 'faith'; piede, pię, 'foot'; umiltade, umiltà, 'humility'; su and giù 'up' and 'down' for suso and giuso (now current

only in poetry); and (in poetry only) **amaro**, **finiro**, **temero** (cf. 48, c), etc., for **amārono**, **finirono**, **temērono**, 'they loved,' 'they finished,' 'they feared.'

38. Prefixion of *i*. When a word ending in a consonant is followed by one beginning with **s** *impure* (cf. 59, a, 1), an **i** is prefixed to the latter to prevent the juxtaposition of too many consonants. This is more common in speaking than in writing. EXAMPLES: **in i-stiva** 'in the hold,' **pér i-schērzo** 'in jest.'

39. Conversely, the words **a** 'to,' **e** 'and,' **o** 'or,' and **su** 'on,' may become respectively **ad**, **ed**, **od**, **sur** before a word beginning with a vowel, especially if it is the same one. EXAMPLES: **ad esēmpio** 'for example,' **ad Anna** 'to Anna,' **ed ebbe** 'and he had,' **o fērro od qro** 'either iron or gold,' **sur una tāvola** 'on a table.'

40. Metathesis. Letters may be reversed, as in **sūcido** for **sūdicio** 'dirty.'

X. CAPITALIZATION

41. Italian capitalization is in general governed according to the same rules as English, but presents the following differences of usage:

42. Capitals are usually omitted, contrary to English usage,

a. From all but the first word of book titles, unless the title consist of but one word and that a noun. EXAMPLES: **Alcune relazioni dēl Fōscolo cōn la letteratura tedēsca** 'Certain Relations between Foscolo and German Literature,' **Il Santo** 'The Saint.'

b. From proper adjectives, sometimes even used substantively. EXAMPLES: **il pōpolo toscano** 'the Tuscan people,' **le guerre napoleōniche** 'the Napoleonic wars,' **il linguaggio manzōniano** 'the language of Manzoni,' **i Tedēschi** 'the Germans.'

c. From titles, when followed by a proper name. EXAMPLES: *dōn Carlo* 'Don Carlos,' *dottor Antonio* 'Doctor Anthony,' *il principe Umberto* 'Prince Humbert,' *il signor Martini* 'Mr. Martini.'

d. From the names of the days and the months. EXAMPLES: *venerdì* 'Friday,' *luglio* 'July.'

e. In most contemporary poetry, from the first word of each line, unless the rules of prose would call for it.

NOTE. Usage in Italian books will often be found to vary considerably from these rules, which have, however, the support of the best authorities.

43. Capitals are used, though not invariably, for the more formal pronoun of address which is borrowed from the third person (cf. 65, *a*). EXAMPLES: *Lèi*, *Ella*, *Loro* 'you' (singular and plural), *Suo* 'your,' *Le* 'to you.'

XI. ARCHAIC AND POETIC FORMS

44. In Italian poetry and old Italian occur many forms unfamiliar to the student of modern Italian prose. The following are the most important of such variations:

45. In general, open *e* and *o* often replace respectively *ie* and *uo*: *tēn* for *tiene*, *lōco* for *luogo*, etc.; and *e* is often added to a final vowel, as in *èe* for *è*, *tue* for *tu*, etc.

46. Nouns. Nouns in *-allo*, *-ello*, often form their plural in *-ai*, *-agli*, *-ei*, *-egli*: *cavallo*, *pl.* *cavai*, *cavagli*; *fratello*, *pl.* *fratei*, *frategli*.

47. Pronouns. The forms *mēl*, *tēl*, *sēl*, etc. are very common substitutes for *mē lō*, *tē lō*, *sē lō*, etc.; *mēn*, *tēn*, etc., for *mē nē*, *tē nē*, etc.; and *nōl* for *nōn lō*.

48. Verb-Endings in Particular Tenses.

- a. Present Indicative: in the first person plural, -i^{em}o, -e^{mo}, -im^o, for -iam^o.
- b. Past Descriptive: in the first and third persons singular of the second and third conjugations, v is often dropped: tem^ea for temeva, seguia for seguiva.
- c. Past Absolute: in the third singular, temeo, finio, for temè, finì; in the third plural, trovaro, trovar, trovarno, trovòrno, trovonno, for trovàrno; colpiro, colpir, colpinno, for colpírono; temero, temer, temenno, for temérno.
- d. Future: in the first person singular, -aggio, -abbo, for -o; in the third plural, -aggiono, -abbono, for -anno: troveraggio, troverabbo, for troverò; finiraggiono, finirabbono, for finiranno, etc.
- e. Past Future: in the first and third singular, -ia for -eⁱ, -ebbe; troveria for trovereⁱ, trovere^{ebbe}, etc.; in the third plural, -iano, -ebbono, for -ebbero: finiriano, finirébbono, for finirébbero, etc.
- f. Present Subjunctive: in the singular, e for i in the first conjugation, i for a in the second and third: tröve, finischi, temi, for trövi, finisca, tema.
- g. Past Subjunctive: in the first person singular, e for i: trovasse, finisse, temesse, for trovassi, finissi, temessi. In the third plural, -ässino, -ässeno, -ässonno, for -ässero; -ëssino, -ësseno, -ëssonno, for -ëssero; and -issino, -isseno, -issonno for -issero: trovässino etc., finissino etc., temëssino etc.
- h. Past Participle: in the first conjugation -at- is omitted, leaving such forms as accöncio for acconciato, cärico for caricato.

49. Special Forms of Particular Verbs:

- a. Avere: aggio, abbo, avo, aio, for h^o; aggia, aia, for abbia; eⁱ, e^{bbimo}, for e^{bbi}, avemmo; ar^o etc. for avrò etc., and similar forms in the conditional.
- b. Dare: di^e for diede; di^{er}, di^{ero}, di^{er}ono, for diēdero.

c. *Dovere*: present indicative *déo*, *dēi*, *dēe*, *dovēmo*, *dovēte*, *dēono* or *dēnno*.

d. *Èssere*: *eramo*, *erate*, for *eravamo*, *eravate*; *sēm*, *sēte*, for *siamo*, *siête*; *ēnno*, *ēn*, for *sono* (pl.); *sie*, *sieno*, for *sia*, *sianō*; *u* for *o* in the past absolute and past subjunctive; *furo*, *fōro*, for *fūrōno*, and *fue* for *fu*; *fia*, *fiano* or *fieno*, for *sarà*, *saranno*; *fōra*, *fōrano*, for *sarei*, *sarebbe*, *sarēbbero*; *sēndo* for *essēndo*; *suto*, *essuto*, *issuto*, for *stato*.

e. *Fare*: *faci*, *face*, for *fai*, *fa*; a past descriptive *fēa* etc.; a past absolute *fēi*, *festi*, *fē* or *fēo*, *fēmmo*, *fēste*, *fērono* or *fēnno*.

f. *Potere*: a past future *porīa* etc.; *puōte*, *pōnno*, for *puō*, *pōssonō*.

g. *Volere*: *vuōgli* or *vuōli* for *vuōi*; *vōlsi*, *vōlse*, *vōlsero*, for *vōlli*, *vōlle*, *vōllero*.

XII. VERSIFICATION

50. Italian versification is reckoned not in feet but in syllables. These are grouped and divided by the "rhythmic accent," which falls at least twice in every line, on the penultimate syllable and at least one other.

Nel mezzo del cammin di nostra vita.

51. An Italian verse or line, like an Italian word, is either *piano*, *tronco*, or *ṣdrūcciolo*, according as the closing accent falls on the penultimate, ultimate, or antepenultimate syllable. But all lines are counted as *piani*, since if represented in musical notation the time would be the same; that is, the accented ultimate of a *verso tronco* would equal the two syllables of a *verso piano*, while the last two short syllables of a *verso ṣdrūcciolo* would be no longer than the final unaccented one of a *verso piano*. For example, in the following stanza each line is counted as having seven syllables:

Tu che, da tanti sēcoli,
Soffri, combatti e preghî;
Che le tue tēnde spieghi
Dall' uno all' altro mar.

52. Elision always occurs when a word ending in a vowel is followed by a word beginning with one, and the two syllables are counted, not pronounced, as one. There are two in the above selection, *combatti e* and *uno all'*, and it would be difficult to find a stanza in which there was no example of elision.

53. Diphthongs are counted as two syllables at the end of a verse, and usually as one in the middle. But those which begin with *i* are often, and others sometimes, counted as two in the middle of a verse, and are then marked with a diæresis.

Di tal superbia qui si paga il fio.
Se buona oraziōn.lui non äita.

a. Triphthongs are counted usually as one syllable.

E come già sei de' miēi rari amici.

54. Number of Syllables. Italian verses are classified as either even-numbered (*parisillabi*) or odd-numbered (*imparisillabi*) according as the number of syllables is even or odd. The *parisillabi* are often *tronchi* but rarely *sdruccioli*; the *imparisillabi* may be either. There are four varieties of each :

a. Parisillabi :

The four-syllabled verse (*quaternario*) and the eight-syllabled (*ottonario*) give the effect of trochaic meter.

Ben è ver, quando è giocondo
Ride il mōndo,
Ride il ciel quando è gioioso ;
Ben è ver; ma non san pōi
Come voi
Fare un riso grazioso.

1. The six-syllabled verse (*senārio*) is amphibrachic :

Stringiamci a coûte,
Siam pronti alla morte :
Italia chiamò !

2. The ten-syllabled verse (*decasillabo*) is anapæstic :

Oh giornate del nôstro riscatto !
Oh dolente per sêmpre colui
Che da lunge, dal labbro d' altrui,
Come un uomò straniéro, le udrà.

b. Imparisillabi :

1. The seven-syllabled (*settenario*) and eleven-syllabled (*endecasillabo*) verses are the most employed of all: the latter is iambic in effect; the former, either iambic or anapæstic. The two are often combined :

Non è questo un morire,
Immortal Margherita,
Ma un passar anzi têmpo a l' altra vita.

Benigne stelle che compagne fêrse
Al fortunato fianco
Quando 'l bel parto giù nel mondo scórse !

2. The *endecasillabo*, or heroic measure (*vêrso erôico*), when *tronco*, corresponds exactly to a line of English blank verse; when normally *piano*, to one of feminine ending. It may also be *sdrucciolo*.

O fqle Aragne, sì vedea io te
Già mèzza aragna, trista in su gli stracci
Dell' ôpera chè mal per té si fe'.

Innanzi assai ch' all' qpra inconsuomâbile
Fosse la gente di Nembròt attenta.

3. The five-syllabled verse (*quinario*), when accented on the first syllable, gives the effect of a dactyl plus a spondee; when

accented on the second, of an iamb plus an amphibrach. It is sometimes combined with the *endecasillabo*.

Oh bell' andare
Per barca in mare
Verso la sera
Di primavera!

Chièser mercè de l' alta sterpe e de la
Gloria di Roma.

4. The nine-syllabled verse (*novenario*) is variously accented, but never very effective or musical.

Fu sposa, fu madre felice.
Quel rubino ch' è il mio tesoro.
A duro stral di ria ventura.

55. Rhyme. The rhyme-word is *piano* or *tronco*, rarely *sdrucciolo*. Close and open vowels may rhyme with each other, and the voiced and unvoiced s and z; but not z and ž. The same word may be used as rhyme-word, if taken in a different meaning. Thus *chièsa* may rhyme with *impresa*, *ròsa* with *gloriosa*, *pure* 'pure' with *pure* 'however,' but not *mèzza* with *tenerezza*.

56. Blank Verse is written in unrhymed *endecasillabi*, and is called *verso sciolto*.

57. Strophes. Strophes are formed of lines combined in a certain pattern. They are often grouped in pairs, their final verses rhyming on a word that is *tronco*, which makes a ringing sonorous effect among the more numerous feminine endings. The following are the commoner forms of strophe:

Térza rima, the measure of the "Divina Commédia," is made up of *endecasillabi* grouped in threes, and rhyming **aba bcb cdc**.

The **quartina** consists of four lines rhyming **abab** or **abba**.

The **sestina** consists of six lines, rhyming **abbacc** or **ababcc**.

Ottava rima consists of eight *endecasillabi*, rhyming **abababcc**.

The sonnet is the sonnet of English poetry, composed of *endecasillabi*. The octave must have but two rhyme-sounds, rhyming either **abba** on the Petrarchan or **abab** on the Shakespearean model.

The Petrarchan strophe is an extremely complicated arrangement of *endecasillabi* and *settenari*, in usually from nine to twenty lines. It is divided into two parts: the first, of six or eight lines, with intricate rhyme-scheme; the second an arrangement of tercets and couplets, connected with the first by a line (called the **chiave**, 'key') which rhymes with the one preceding it.

The old **sestina** is a form composed of six stanzas of six lines each, and a seventh stanza of three lines. These are unrhymed, but the end words of the first stanzas are repeated in all the others, after a fixed order, the last word in the first line of each stanza being identical with that of the last line of the one preceding. The seventh stanza has one of these words at the end, and one in the middle, of each of its three lines.

LESSON I

INDEFINITE ARTICLE

58. Indefinite Article.

MASCULINE SINGULAR

un

uno

FEMININE SINGULAR

una

un'

59. **Masculine.** *a.* **Un** is used before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel, or with any consonant except *s impure* or *z*.

Un padre

A father

Un uomo

A man

i. The *s impure* is *s* followed by another consonant.

b. **Uno** is used before a masculine noun beginning with *s impure* or *z*.

Uno schioppo

A gun

Uno zio

An uncle

60. **Feminine.** **Una** is used before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.

a. **Una** becomes **un'** before a vowel.

Una madre

A mother

Un' ora

An hour

61. The article in Italian, whether definite or indefinite, must be repeated before each noun.

Un ragazzo e **una** ragazza

A boy and girl

62. Interrogative sentences. *a.* The interrogative is commonly expressed merely by the inflection of the voice and the use of the interrogation point.

La donna parla a un ragazzo The woman speaks to a boy
 La donna parla a un ragazzo? Does the woman speak to a boy?

b. The order may be inverted, the subject being thrown at the very end of the sentence.

Parla a un ragazzo la donna? Does the woman speak to a boy?
 Torna a mezzogiorno il padre? Does the father return at noon?

1. 'Do' or 'does,' used as auxiliary, does not exist in Italian.

63. Present Indicative of the Three Conjugations.

trovare 'find'	pērdere 'lose'	capire 'understand'
trōvo troviamo	pērdo perdiamo	capisco capiamo
trōvi trovate	pērdi perdete	capisci capite
trōva trōvano	pērde pērdono	capisce capiscono

a. Subject pronouns are usually omitted, except when required for clearness or emphasis.

VOCABULARY

un bambino	a child, little boy	una bambina	a child, little girl
un libro	a book	una madre	a mother
un padre	a father	una scuola	a school
un panchetto	a stool, footstool	a, ad (<i>cf.</i> 39)	to, at
uno schioppo	a gun	dice (<i>fr.</i> dire, <i>irr.</i>)	says
uno scolare	a pupil	dicono (they)	say
parlare	speak	dopo	after
tornare	return	mezzogiorno	noon
finire	finish	Buon giorno!	Good morning!
rispondere	reply	Buona sera!	Good evening!
ècco	here is, here are	è, ed (<i>cf.</i> 39)	and
il	the (<i>m.</i>)	la	the (<i>f.</i>)
tutti	all, everybody (<i>pl. verb</i>)		

EXERCISE**I. READING LESSON**

Buon giorno! — dice un bambino. — Buon giorno! — rispondono il padre e la madre. — Buon giorno! — dicono tutti. Il bambino torna a scuola e dice — Buon giorno! — ad uno scolare. Dopo mezzogiorno tutti dicono — Buona sera!

II

1. Finisco ; torna ; perdiamo ; rispondete ; trovano : capiscono ; finisci.
2. Ecco un libro ed un panchetto.
3. Ecco un bambino ed una bambina.
4. Finiamo un libro.
5. Parla ad uno scolare.
6. Risponde — Buona sera!
7. Un padre e una madre parlano.
8. Ecco uno scolare.
9. Uno scolare finisce un libro.
10. Trovate uno schioppo.
11. Perde un libro.
12. Rispondono un bambino e una bambina.

III

1. Here is a little girl.
2. Here are a book and a gun.
3. I finish, you (*pl.*) understand ; thou repliest ; they lose, he speaks ; thou speakest, he understands, we are returning, we understand.
4. The mother speaks to a little boy.
5. They are replying "Good evening!"
6. A pupil is returning to school.
7. I lose a gun.
8. A mother and a little boy are speaking.
9. They are speaking to a pupil.
10. We are returning to school.
11. Are you finishing a book ?
12. The little girl finds the footstool.

LESSON II

PRESENT OF *AVERE* AND *ESSERE*64. Present Indicative of *avere* 'have' and *essere* 'be.'

I have, etc.	I am, etc.
hø abbiamo	søno siamo
hai avete	sei siete
ha hanno	è sono

65. Personal Pronouns, Nominative Forms (cf. 63, a).

io I	nøi we
tu thou	vøi you
egli, ei, he	øglino, oftener øssi, they (m.)
ella she	ølleno, oftener øsse, they (f.)
esso, essa, he, she, it	øssi, øsse, they

a. The third person is the one commonly used in address in Italian, to persons not members of one's family ; the singular for one person, the plural for more than one.

Ha finito il libro? Have you (*sg.*) finished the book?
Hanno comprato la casa? Have you (*pl.*) bought the house?

*1. The pronoun is the feminine **Ella**, or more familiarly **Løi** (*pl.* **Loro**; usually written with capitals), even when a man is addressed. It stands for some feminine noun like **Vossignoria** 'Your Lordship,' formerly used in respectful address.

Løi è ammalato, Signore? Are you ill, sir?

b. The second singular is used to a member of one's family, to the Deity, to a small child, to a woman house-servant, or to animals. Its plural is **vøi**.

*c. The second plural is used to a manservant, a peasant, a cabman, or a porter; but in the south of Italy it is the form in general use except for especial formality.

*d. The second person, singular or plural, is used by the author to his reader.

e. In these exercises use the third person in address, unless it is indicated that the person spoken to is a small child or a member of the speaker's family.

Buon giorno, Signore! Come sta? Good morning, sir. How do you do?

Hai il libro, Giovannino? Have you the book, Johnny?

Mammina, vieni qua Mother, come here

Tornano a mezzogiorno, Signori? Do you return at noon, gentlemen?

f. 'It is' with a personal pronoun ('It is I,' 'It is you,' etc.) is rendered by a form agreeing in person with the pronoun.

È Lei? Is it you?

Sai tu? Is it thou?

Siamo noi It is we

Chi è là? Sono io Who is there? It is I

66. Omission of the Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is omitted in the predicate after *essere* (and *fare*, *diventare*) before an unmodified noun of rank, profession, or nationality, except in answer to 'Who is he?'

Chi è questa signora? Who is this lady?

È una contessa She is a countess

Questa signora è contessa This lady is a countess

Questo signore è un medico inglese This gentleman is an English physician

NOTE. For the syntax of the indefinite article, cf. Lesson XXV.

VOCABULARY

un Americano	an American (<i>m.</i>)	italiano	Italian
un' Americana	an American (<i>f.</i>)	americano	American
un cognato	a brother-in-law		
una cognata	a sister-in-law	di	of
una contessa	a countess		
un fratello	a brother	questo	this (<i>before masc. noun</i>)
un Italiano	an Italian (<i>m.</i>)	questa	this (<i>before fem. noun</i>)
un' Italiana	an Italian (<i>f.</i>)		
un professore	a professor	no	no
una signora	a lady, a married woman	non	not (<i>precedes the verb</i>)
Signora	used in address	sì	yes
una signorina	a young lady, an unmarried woman	chi?	who?
Signorina	used in address	o	(<i>cf. 39</i>) or
un signore	a gentleman		
Signore	used in address	amare	love
una sorella	a sister	avere paura	(<i>di</i>) be afraid (of)
uno zio	an uncle	portare	carry
una zia	an aunt	preferire	prefer
		temere	fear

EXERCISE

I

1. Chi è questo signore? 2. È un professore. 3. Ha una sorella? 4. No, ha un fratello e una cognata. 5. Finisce il libro, Signora? 6. Il bambino ha il padre, la madre, e uno zio. 7. Il bambino e la bambina sono a scuola. 8. Siamo a scuola? 9. No, non siamo a scuola. 10. Il signore e la signora amano il bambino. 11. Tornano a mezzogiorno, Signore? No, non torniamo. 12. La bambina capisce. 13. È Americana, Signorina? 14. No, non sono Americana, sono Italiana. 15. Ecco uno scolare. 16. Chi è? Sono io. 17. Ecco un signore. È professore? Sì, è un professore americano. 18. Tutti parlano a questa bambina. 19. Preferiamo il libro. 20. Non hanno paura.

II

1. Are you an Italian, Madam?
2. No, I am an American.
3. This little girl is afraid of a gun.
4. Are they at school?
5. No, they are not at school.
6. Have you (*pl.*) a brother?
7. No, we have a brother-in-law and a sister-in-law.
8. Are you speaking to a professor?
9. Yes, I am speaking to a professor.
10. Who is this lady?
- She is an Italian.
11. Is she a countess?
12. Yes, she is an Italian countess.
13. Does the professor prefer a gun or a book?
14. The lady has an uncle.

LESSON III

PLURAL OF NOUNS

67. Plural of Nouns. *a.* Nouns ending in **o** or **e** in the singular change **o** or **e** to **i** in the plural.

Un ragazzo, due ragazzi	A boy, two boys
Un inglese, dieci inglesi	An Englishman, ten Englishmen
Una lezione, tre lezioni	One lesson, three lessons

b. Feminine nouns ending in **a** in the singular change **a** to **e** in the plural.

Una finestra, nove finestre	A window, nine windows
-----------------------------	------------------------

c. Masculine nouns in **a** take **i** in the plural.

Un socialista, quattro socialisti	A socialist, four socialists
-----------------------------------	------------------------------

NOTE. For full treatment of plural of nouns, see Lesson XXX.

68. Compound Tenses. *a.* The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are formed by means of **avere** (cf. 120).

b. The past participle of verbs of the first conjugation ends in **-ato**, of the second in **-uto**, and of the third in **-ito**,

these terminations being substituted respectively for the infinitive endings -are, -ere, and -ire.

Hò finito il libro

I have finished the book

Abbiamo visitato la famiglia

We have visited the family

Hanno creduto la storia

They have believed the story

Il padre è tornato

The father has returned

69. Future Indicative of Model Verbs.

troverò	troveremo	perderò	perderemo	capiro	capiremo
troverai	troverete	perderai	perderete	capirai	capirete
troverà	troveranno	perderà	perderanno	capirà	capiranno

VOCABULARY

un bicchiere a glass

aiutare help (*takes a before infinitive*)

un coltello a knife

apparecchiare set table

un cucchiaio (*pl. cucchiai*) a spoon

consistere (in) consist (of)

una forchetta a fork

distendere (*irr. p. abs. and p.p.*) spread

un piatto a plate, dish

mettere (*irr. p. abs. and p.p.*) put, put on

una posata knife, fork, and spoon, a place at table

prima di before (*time*)

una tavola a table

domani to-morrow

una tovaglia a tablecloth

oggi to-day

un uomo (*pl. uomini*) a man

in in, into

due two

su (*cf. 39*) on

quattro four

EXERCISE

I

1. La Flora è una buona (*good*) bambina.
2. Aiuterà la mamma ad apparecchiare.
3. Apparecchia prima di mezzogiorno.
4. Domani torneranno due uomini e un bambino.
5. Distende la tovaglia, mette quattro piatti, quattro bicchieri, e quattro posate.
6. Una posata consiste in un coltello, una forchetta, e un cucchiaio.
7. Un

bambino e una bambina distenderanno la tovaglia. 8. Metterò uno schioppo sur una tavola. 9. Troveremo il libro prima di domani. 10. Bambini, apparecchierete a mezzogiorno.

II

1. One mother, two mothers; a glass, four glasses; a pupil, four pupils. 2. I shall understand, thou wilt put, they will reply, we shall return. 3. They will return to-morrow. 4. We shall set the table before noon. 5. Children, you will lay the cloth. 6. I shall put on four knives, two forks, two glasses, and one spoon. 7. Shall you return before to-morrow, sir? 8. Uncle, shall you bring a gun and a knife? 9. They will return to school and finish the book. 10. Two men are speaking to a pupil. 11. They have set the table, but we have lost two knives. 12. They will help Maria to find the fork.

LESSON IV

DEFINITE ARTICLE

70. The Definite Article. Forms:

MASC. SING.	MASC. PLUR.	FEM. SING.	FEM. PLUR.
il	i	la	le
lo	gli		
l'	{ gli gl'	l'	{ le l'

71. **Masculine.** *a.* Il, i, are used before masculine nouns beginning with any consonant except *s impure*, *z*, or *gn*.

Il letto, i letti

The bed, the beds

b. Lo, gli, are used before masculine nouns beginning with *s impure*, *z*, or *gn*.

Lo Spagnuolo, gli Spagnuoli

The Spaniard, the Spaniards

Lo zio, gli zii

The uncle, the uncles

Lo gnocco, gli gnocchi

The dumpling, the dumplings

***1.** For *gli* is often substituted *li* before words in which the syllable *gli* occurs.

Lo scoglio, li scogli The reef, the reefs

***2.** For *i* is substituted *gli* before the plural of *dio*.

Il dio, gli dei (cf. § 179, c) The god, the gods

c. L', gli, are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' autore, gli autori The author, the authors

i. Gli becomes **gl'** when the vowel is *i*.

L'imperatore, gl' imperatori The emperor, the emperors

d. The form li often occurs in dates.

Li 8 dicembre The eighth of December

72. Feminine. **a. La, le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant.

La sedia, le sedie The chair, the chairs

La stanza, le stanze The room, the rooms

b. L', le, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' ora, le ore The hour, the hours

i. Le becomes **l'** when the vowel is *e* unless the plural is identical with the singular.

L' era, l' ere The era, the eras

L' età, le età The age, the ages

73. Uses of the Definite Article. **a. The definite article is required, contrary to English usage, before an abstract noun, or a noun taken in a general sense as representative of its class.**

La vita è breve Life is short

I cavalli sono intelligenti Horses are intelligent

La pazienza è una virtù Patience is a virtue

La vita dell'ape The life of the bee

b. The definite article is used before the surnames of men; and familiarly before the given names of women.

L' Ariosto fu un grande scrittore Ariosto was a great author
La Pietrina chiama la mamma Pietrina is calling her mother

NOTE. For the syntax of the definite article, see Lesson XXII.

74. Past Absolute Indicative of Model Verbs.

trovai	trovammo	perdei	perdemmo	capii	capimmo
trovasti	trovaste	perdesti	perdeste	capisti	capiste
trovò	trovārono	perdè	perdērono	capì	capirono

VOCABULARY

l' amico (<i>m.</i>) friend	l' occasione opportunity
l' avvocato (<i>m.</i>) lawyer	la pazienza patience
la battaglia battle	la salute health
la bellezza beauty	la scommessa wager
la büssola compass, bearings	il sonno sleep
il cervello brain, mind	lo speculatore speculator
il colmo summit	la sventura misfortune
il coraggio courage	il tempo time
il denaro money	il tiranno tyrant
la forza force	la vita life
il generale general	ieri yesterday
la gioventù youth	finalmente finally
la gloria glory	ma but
l' imprudente (<i>m.</i>) imprudent man	per for; <i>with infinitive</i> in order to
l' ingratto (<i>m.</i>) ingrate	tre three
la lite lawsuit	cinque five
la memoria memory	tutto all, everything
il mondo world	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

L'uomo perde tutto in questo mondo : perde la bellezza, la giovinezza, le forze, gli amici, la pazienza, il tempo, il coraggio, la gloria, l'occasione, la bussola, le scommesse, il cervello, e finalmente, per colmo di sventura, perde la vita. Gl'imprudenti perdono la salute, gli avvocati perdono le liti, i generali perdono le battaglie, i tiranni perdono il sonno, gl'ingrati la memoria e gli speculatori il denaro.

II

1. Lo speculatore perde la scommessa. 2. Il generale, per colmo di sventura, perde l'occasione. 3. Apparecchieranno, tornarono ; consiste, distendesti, finiste, capì ; tememmo, risponderemo ; aiutò, parlano, portai, aiuterò, parlerai, temerono. 4. L'avvocato parlò ad un amico. 5. Gli scolari finirono il libro. 6. I generali perderono la battaglia.

III

1. Did you understand the lesson yesterday, children ? 2. The men lost the gun, and returned. 3. Speculators lose sleep. 4. Did you return yesterday, sir ? 5. The lawyers will lose the case. 6. We have the opportunities in this world, but we lose time. 7. The pupil carried the books to school. 8. We laid the cloth and helped our mother [**la mamma**]. 9. The imprudent (men) talked to a speculator. 10. Thou returnest, he spoke, we finished ; I shall put, they carried, he will aid ; thou spakest, you returned, they feared, I found ; we are afraid.

LESSON V

CONTRACTION OF ARTICLE

75. Contraction. The prepositions **a**, **con**, **da**, **di**, **in**, **per**, and **su**, when followed by the definite article, are contracted with it to form one word as follows:

	il	i	lo	gli	la	le	l'
a to, at	al	ai or a'	allo	agli	alla	alle	all'
con with	còl	còi or co'	collo	cogli	colla	colle	coll'
da by, from	dal	dai or da'	dallo	dagli	dalla	dalle	dall'
di of	dèl	dèi or dè'	dèllo	dègli	dèlla	delle	dell'
in in, into	nel	nèi or nè'	nèllo	nègli	nella	nelle	nell'
per for	pèl	pèi or pè'	per lo	per gli	per la	per le	per l'
su on	sul	sui or su'	sullo	sugli	sulla	sulle	sull'

76. The preposition must be repeated before each noun.

Parlò allo Spagnuolo e al Franceſe He spoke to the Spaniard and the Frenchman

77. The Partitive. The partitive idea, of something less than the whole or fewer than all, expressed in English, if at all, by 'some' or 'any,' is expressed in Italian by *di* plus the definite article. It is sometimes omitted, but in good Tuscan usage is oftener expressed. (For 'some,' 'any,' used as pronouns, cf. 94, 124.)

Ho del pane
I have bread, I have some bread
Ci sono dei libri sullo scaffale
There are books on the shelf

a. This sign of the partitive is omitted in the negative, unless the noun is modified by an adjective.

Non ho pane

I have no bread, I haven't any
bread

Non ho del pane bianco

I have no white bread

b. And in enumerations.

Garibaldi non offrì ai suoi soldati
che fame, sete, marce forzate,
battaglie e morte

Garibaldi offered his soldiers nothing
but hunger, thirst, forced
marches, battles, and death

78. The Possessive.

The possessive in Italian is always expressed by **di** before a noun.

La casa di mio padre	My father's house
L' orologio di Giovanni	John's watch
Ecco un quaderno; è del lo scolare?	Here is an exercise book; is it the pupil's?

79. Past Future ('should,' 'would') of Model Verbs.

troverei	troveremmo	perderei	perderemmo
troveresti	trovereste	perderesti	perdereste
troverebbe	troverebbero	perderebbe	perderebbero
		capirei	capiremmo
		capiresti	capireste
		capirebbe	capirebbero

VOCABULARY

l'acqua (<i>f.</i>) water	annaffiare water
il fiore flower	appassire wither
il giardino garden	fiorire bloom
la mattina morning	levare raise
il mughetto lily-of-the-valley	scendere (<i>p. abs. and p.p. irr.</i>) descend, go down
la pianta plant, tree	alle sei at six o'clock
la rosa rose	ci sono there are
lo scaffale shelf	senza without
la tazza cup	sette seven
bel beautiful	si (<i>third person refl.</i>) himself, herself, itself, themselves
fiorito in bloom	si leva (<i>refl. use of levare</i>) rises
molto much	
ogni every	

EXERCISE**I. READING LESSON**

La Luigina ha un bel giardino tutto fiorito. Nel giardino ci sono rose e mughetti. La Luigina ama molto i fiori. Ogni mattina si leva alle sei, scende nel giardino e annaffia le piante. Le piante appassirebbero senz' acqua.

II

1. Il padre della bambina aiutò la famiglia dello zio. 2. Metterei i coltelli colle forchette sulla tavola. 3. Ci sono dei fiori nel giardino dell'amico? 4. Portano dei libri dalla scuola. 5. Non troveremmo il libro sullo scaffale? 6. I bambini non apparecchierebbero senza la mamma.

III

1. Are there some roses on the table? 2. There are roses and lilies-of-the-valley in the garden. 3. Would the plants bloom without water? No, they would wither. 4. The little boys carried a gun from the table to the shelf. 5. By the men, to the pupils, for the little boys, for the mother, of the books, with the friend, on the footstool, in the cup. 6. Would you speak to the speculator and the lawyer? 7. We should not put the flowers with the books. 8. The uncles would go down into the lawyer's garden. 9. The pupils' mother will lay the cloth. 10. They will put the table in the garden.

LESSON VI

GENDER OF NOUNS

80. Gender of Nouns. *a.* Names of males are masculine; names of females are feminine.

Il nonno	The grandfather
La donna	The woman

i. EXCEPTIONS: **guida** 'guide,' **guārdia** 'guard,' 'policeman,' **persona** 'person,' **recluta** 'recruit,' **sentinella** 'sentinel,' **spia** 'spy,' and **vedētta** 'scout,' which are feminine, although usually referring to men.

b. Names of objects without sex are either masculine or feminine, there being no neuter in Italian.

i. Nouns ending in **a** are feminine.

La lāmpada	The lamp
------------	----------

EXCEPTIONS: **duca** 'duke,' **monarca** 'monarch,' **poēta** 'poet,' and other words listed under Lesson XXXIV; and words ending in **-ista**, like **artista** 'artist' and **pianista** 'pianist,' when referring to men.

2. Nouns ending in **-giōne**, **-zīone**, and **-ūdine** are feminine.

la ragiōne reason	la solitūdine solitude
la conversaziōne conversation	

3. Nouns ending in **o** are masculine.

il ginōcchio knee

EXCEPTIONS: **l'eco** (of common gender) 'echo,' and **la mano** 'hand.'

4. Nouns ending in **u** are feminine.

la virtū virtue

EXCEPTIONS: a few foreign words, like **il bambù** 'bamboo'; and some other parts of speech used substantively, as **il più** 'the most,' **per lo più** 'for the most part.'

NOTE. For further treatment of the gender of nouns, see Lesson XXXIV.

81. Four Tenses of *essere* 'be.'

PRESENT INDICATIVE

sono I am
sei thou art
è he, she, it is
siamo we are
siete you are
sono they are

FUTURE INDICATIVE

sarò I shall be
sarai thou shalt be
sarà he, she, it will be
saremo we shall be
sarete you will be
saranno they will be

PAST FUTURE

sarei I should be
saresti thou wouldst be
sarébbe he etc. would be
saremmo we should be
sareste you would be
sarébbero they would be

PAST ABSOLUTE

fui I was
fosti thou wast
fu he etc. was
fummo we were
foste you were
furono they were

VOCABULARY

la casa house
a casa home, homeward
il duca duke
la festa festival
la fine end
la guida guide
la lezione lesson
la mano hand
il monarca monarch
la persona person
il poeta poet
la porta door

la sentinella sentinel
la settimana week
la vacanza vacation
la vedetta scout
la volontà will, willingness
battere beat, clap
bisognare (*impers.*) be necessary
cominciare begin (*takes a before infin.*)
continuare continue
imparare learn
avrò I shall have

anche	also, even	quel che	what, that which
bene	well	otto	eight
che	who, which (<i>rel.</i>)	dici	ten
come	how, as	starò	(from <i>stare</i> , <i>irr.</i>) I shall be
quanti?	how many?	voglio	(from <i>volere</i> , <i>irr.</i>) I wish, I will
quante?			

EXERCISE**I. READING LESSON**

Il bambino dice :

Lunedì. — Voglio cominciare bene la settimana ; starò attento alle lezioni, e sarò buono.

Martedì. — Bisogna continuare quel che abbiamo ben cominciato. Anche oggi sarò buono.

Mercoledì. — Come sono contento ! Domani è giovedì, e avrò vacanza !

Giovedì. — Abbiamo vacanza ! Battiamo le mani !

Venerdì. — Oggi tornerò a scuola con molta volontà.

Sabato. — È la fine della settimana.

Domenica. — La domenica è giorno di festa !

II

1. Quanti giorni ci sono nella settimana ? 2. Nella settimana ci sono sette giorni. 3. Domani è lunedì ; bisognerà tornare a scuola. 4. Chi sono arrivati lunedì ? Un poeta e una sentinella. 5. I bambini imparerebbero le lezioni. 6. Saremo, sarebbero, siete, fui, sono, siamo, saranno. 7. Abbiamo vacanza il giovedì. 8. Comincia a imparare le lezioni.

III

1. To-morrow is Friday, and I shall learn the four lessons.
2. He would be at the door of the school at noon. 3. We shall go to school Monday, but at the end of the week we shall return home. 4. It is necessary to set the table before noon, and the

children will put on the cups with the glasses. 5. How many cups are there on the shelf? 6. Dante was an Italian poet. 7. Who are the men in the garden? They are a guide and a scout; they are speaking to the duke. 8. The children will clap their (the) hands at the end of the week. 9. The lady's flowers are in the glass; I shall put some water in the glass. 10. On Sunday it is not necessary to learn lessons.

LESSON VII

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

82. Most adjectives end in either *o* or *e*.

a. Adjectives in *o* have the forms of the nouns in *o* and *a*: *rosso*, *rossi*, *rossa*, *rosse*, 'red.'

Il libro rosso	The red book
Le rose rosse	The red roses

b. Adjectives in *e* take *i* in the plural, but do not change for gender.

La cāmera grande, le cāmere grandi	The large room, the large rooms
Un contadino semplice, dei contadini semplici	A simple peasant, simple peasants

83. Agreement of Adjectives. *a.* An adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number.

Il cappello nero	The black hat
Le piccole mani	The small hands
La rosa e la mammola belle	The beautiful rose and violet

**b.* An adjective modifying two or more nouns of different gender is either masculine plural or in agreement with the noun nearest it.

Prati e selve vastissime	Very vast meadows and woods
--------------------------	-----------------------------

1. But when referring to persons it must be in the masculine plural.

I signori e le signore sono partiti The gentlemen and ladies are gone

*c. A plural noun may take two or more adjectives in the singular instead of being repeated in the singular before each adjective.

I governi inglese e tedesco The English and German governments

84. Position of Adjectives. a. Most adjectives of size or quantity, numerals and pronominal adjectives, and usually *bello*, *buono*, *solo*, *ultimo*, and *unico*, precede the noun.

Una piccola scatola	A small box
Ho poco denaro	I have little money
Il primo capitolo	The first chapter
Quegli uomini sono francesi	Those men are French

1. Numerals may follow when emphatic.

Lire 20 20 lire

b. Adjectives of shape, color, nationality, and descriptive qualities generally, participles used as adjectives, adjectives longer than their nouns, and adjectives modified by an adverb or a suffix, usually follow.

La stampa inglese	The English press
Il vestito celeste	The blue dress
La cioccolata svizzera	Swiss chocolate
La notte oscura	The dark night
Il risultato voluto	The desired result
Una persona rispettabile	A respectable person
Una bella signora, una signora più bella, una signorina bellina	A beautiful lady, a more beautiful lady, a pretty young lady

1. Adjectives of characteristic may precede, when the characteristic is peculiarly intimate or usual.

La bianca neve

The white snow

*c. When two or more adjectives modify the same noun, either both follow, or one precedes and the other follows, the less emphatic preceding.

Un palazzo antico e bello
Un bel palazzo antico } A beautiful ancient palace

*d. Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow their noun. The unusual position often indicates the literal, and the usual position a more metaphorical, meaning.

Un uomō grande	A large man
Un grand' uomō	A great man
Una cara figlia	A dear daughter
Una collana cara	A costly necklace
La chiesa di santo Stēfano	The church of St. Stephen
È un uomō santo	He is a saintly man

*e. The adjective may also be placed in the unusual position for emphasis.

85. Some Irregular Adjectives. a. The adjectives *buōn* 'good,' *bello* 'beautiful,' *santo* 'saint,' 'saintly,' and *grande* 'large,' vary in the masculine on the same principle as do the articles. The forms are —

1. Before any consonant except *s impure*, sg. *buōn*, *bēl*, *san*, *gran*; pl. *buōni*, *bēi*, *santi*, *grandi*. (*Gran* may also be used in the feminine singular and the masculine plural.)

Un buōn soldato	A good soldier
Un bēl cavallo, dei bēi cavalli	A handsome horse, handsome horses
San Pāolo	Saint Paul
Una gran sala	A large hall

2. Before a vowel, sg. (m. and f.) **buqon**, **bəll'**, **sant'**, **grand'**; pl. (m.) **buqoni**, **bęgli**, **santi**, **grandi**.

Un buqon amico	A good friend
Un bəll' uqomo	A handsome man
Sant' Agostino	Saint Augustine
Bęgli uccęlli	Beautiful birds
La bəll' aria	The beautiful aria

3. Before **s** *impure*, in the predicate, or when placed after their noun, the full forms: sg. **buqono**, **bəllo**, **santo**, **grande**; pl. **buqoni**, **bęlli**, **santi**, **grandi**.

Buqon pane	Good bread
Questo pane è buqono	This bread is good
Un bəllo spettācolo	A fine spectacle
Santo Stęfano	Saint Stephen
I buqoni stivali	Good boots
Bęgli uqomini	Handsome men
Gli uqomini səno bęlli	The men are handsome

b. The following adjectives are invariable: **fu** 'the late,' 'formerly,' **pari** 'equal,' 'even,' **impari** 'unequal,' 'odd,' **più** 'many,' 'most,' and **ogni** 'every' (with no plural).

La fu Signora Bianchi	The late Mrs. White
Il número pari	The even number
I númeri impari	Uneven numbers
Səno andato più volte a Parigi	I have been to Paris several times
Il pane di ognı giorno	Daily bread

86. The Demonstrative Adjective. (Cf. 190.)

a. **Questo** 'this.'

SINGULAR

questo (*m.*)
questa (*f.*)

PLURAL

questi (*m.*)
queste (*f.*)

b. *Quello* 'that.'

SINGULAR	PLURAL
quel, <i>quello</i> , <i>quell'</i> (<i>m.</i>)	<i>quelli</i> , <i>quei</i> , <i>quegli</i>
<i>quella</i> , <i>quell'</i> (<i>f.</i>)	<i>quelle</i>

i. *Quello* is inflected like *bello*. (Cf. 85, a.)

87. The Interrogative Adjective. (Cf. 191.)

a. *Quanto, quanta?* 'how much?'

Quanti, quante? 'how many?'

b. *Quale, quali?* 'which, which one?' 'which ones?'

c. *Che?* 'what?'

88. Any adjective may be used substantively.

Il *pôvero*

The poor man

a. Proper adjectives are not capitalized unless used substantively, and not invariably even then.

La lingua *francesê*

The French language

Ecco due *Ingleši* (*inglesi*)

There are two Englishmen

*b. The substantive is understood after the adjective in a good many familiar phrases.

Per la più *brêve* (strada)

By the shortest route

Alla *dêstra* (mano)

To the right

Averla (sorte) *peggio*

To have a worse lot

Nel (territorio) *fiorentino*

In the Florentine territory

Alla *buçona* (maniêra)

Familiarly, in everyday fashion

Alla (maniêra) *francesê*

In the French mode

89. Adverbs. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

a. Adverbs are most commonly formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine form of the adjective.

Sincero, sinceramente

Sincere, sincerely

Prudente, prudentemente

Prudent, prudently

b. The words **molto** 'much,' **poco** 'little,' **troppo** 'too much,' **tanto** 'so much,' and **quanto** 'as much' or 'how much,' are either adverbs or adjectives. As adjectives they have the forms of adjectives in **o**; as adverbs they are invariable.

Molte uōmini sono molto infelici
Lei è tanto buono, Signore
Tanti saluti a casa
Ho pochi libri; sono troppo cari
Ci sono troppe persone nella
stanza

Many men are very unhappy
You are so kind, sir
Many kind regards to your family
I have few books; they are too
dear
There are too many persons in
the room

VOCABULARY

l' angolo (<i>m.</i>) corner	bello fine, beautiful
l' appartamento (<i>m.</i>) apartment	buono good
la cāmera da letto (<i>m.</i>) bedroom	famoso famous
la chiesa church	grande large
la cucina kitchen, cooking	largo (<i>pl.</i> larghi, larghe) wide
l'inverno (<i>m.</i>) winter	lungo (<i>pl.</i> lunghi, lunghes) long
il palazzo palace	santo saint, saintly
il panorama view	vēcchio (<i>pl.</i> vēcchi) old
il ponte bridge	abitare dwell, live
la riva bank, wharf	guardare look at
la sala da pranzo (<i>m.</i>) dining-room	passare pass, spend
il salōne parlor	sedere (<i>irr.</i>) sit
la stanza room	accanto next, next door
la terrazza balcony	dinanzi a in front of
la torre tower	dove where
la via street	fa makes, does (<i>from fare, irr.</i>)
Firēnze Florence	fa angolo con is at the corner of
Le Cascine 'the Dairies,' public gardens of Florence	perchè because, why
lo Schiavone Slav	sempre always
	vediamo we see
	vicino a near

EXERCISE**I**

1. Passiamo quest' inverno a Firenze. 2. Abbiamo un bell' appartamento vicino alle Cascine. 3. Il signore che abita nella casa accanto è un buon medico inglese. 4. Nell' appartamento ci sono sette stanze: un salone, una sala da pranzo, la cucina, e quattro camere da letto. 5. Le camere sono grandi, e il salone è bello, con una terrazza molto larga. 6. Dopo il pranzo sediamo ogni sera sulla terrazza, e guardiamo il bel panorama. 7. Vediamo la torre della chiesa di Santo Spirito, e il Ponte Vecchio famoso, ma non vediamo il Palazzo Vecchio. 8. Il palazzo dove abitiamo fa angolo colla Via Curtatone. 9. Il Palazzo Pitti è vicino al Ponte Vecchio.

II

1. We live in a large apartment in Florence. 2. We have six rooms, with a large parlor, but a very small kitchen. 3. That man is the lawyer who lives near the Old Palace. 4. The gentleman who lives in the house next door is a lawyer. 5. There is a fine square in front of the Pitti Palace. 6. Near the church of Saint Mark in Venice is the Church of St. Stephen. 7. The Duke's palace is near the Wharf of the Slavs. 8. Handsome men are not always good; good men are not always handsome. 9. Those men live in a large palace; the rooms are large, they are long and wide. 10. Why are those ladies looking at the Old Bridge? Because it is beautiful and famous. 11. Those gentlemen are looking at the Palace of the Uffizi (*pl.*).

LESSON VIII

THE REGULAR VERBS

90. a. There are three regular conjugations, the first ending in -are in the infinitive, the second in -ere or '-ere, and the third in -ire.

b. Table of Regular Verbs.

INFINITIVE					
trov-are 'find'	crēd-ere 'believe, think'	cap-ire 'understand'			
PRESENT PARTICIPLE					
trov-ando	cred-ēndo	cap-ēndo			
PAST PARTICIPLE					
trov-ato, -a, -i, -e	cred-uto, -a, -i, -e	cap-ito, -a, -i, -e			
INDICATIVE					
PRESENT					
I find, I am finding, <i>etc.</i>					
trōv-o	trōv-iamo	crēd-o	cred-iamo	cap-isco	cap-iamo
trōv-i	trōv-ate	crēd-i	cred-ete	cap-isci	cap-ite
trōv-a	trōv-ano	crēd-e	crēd-on	cap-isce	cap-īscono
PAST DESCRIPTIVE					
I found, was finding, used to find, <i>etc.</i>					
trov-avo, -ava	trov-avamo	cred-ēvo, -ēva, -ea	cred-evamo		
trov-avi	trov-avate	cred-ēvi	cred-evate		
trov-ava	trov-āvano	cred-ēva, -ea	cred-ēvano, -ēano		
		cap-ivo, -iva, -ia	cap-ivamo		
		cap-ivi	cap-ivate		
		cap-iva, -ia	cap-īvano		

THE REGULAR VERBS

§ 90

PAST ABSOLUTE

I found, *etc.*

trov-ai	trov-ammo	cred-ēi, -ētti	cred-emmo
trov-asti	trov-aste	cred-esti	cred-este
trov-ò	trov-ārono	cred-è, -ette	cred-ērono, -ēttero
	cap-ii	cap-immo	
	cap-isti	cap-iste	
	cap-ì	cap-irono	

FUTURE

I shall find, *etc.*

trov-er-ò	trov-er-emo	perd-er-ò	perd-er-emo
trov-er-ai	trov-er-ete	perd-er-ai	perd-er-ete
trov-er-à	trov-er-anno	perd-er-à	perd-er-anno
	cap-ir-ò	cap-ir-emo	
	cap-ir-ai	cap-ir-ete	
	cap-ir-à	cap-ir-anno	

PAST FUTURE

I should find, *etc.*

trover-ēi	trover-emmo	perder-ēi	perder-emmo
trover-esti	trover-este	perder-esti	perder-este
trover-ēbbe	trover-ēbbero	perder-ēbbe	perder-ēbbero
	capir-ēi	capir-emmo	
	capir-esti	capir-este	
	capir-ēbbe	capir-ēbbero	

IMPERATIVE

Find, let him find, *etc.*

	trov-iamo	perd-iamo	cap-iamo
trōv-a	trov-ate	perd-i	cap-i
trōv-i	trōv-ino	perd-a	cap-isca

SUBJUNCTIVE

(Variously rendered, according to sense)

PRESENT

trōv-i	trov-iamo	pērd-a	perd-iamo	cap-isca	cap-iamo
trōv-i	trov-iate	pērd-a	perd-iate	cap-isca	cap-iate
trōv-i	trōv-ino	pērd-a	perd-anō	cap-isca	cap-īscano

PAST

trov-assi	trov-āssimo	perd-essi	perd-ēssimo	cap-issi	cap-īssimo
trov-assi	trov-aste	perd-essi	perd-ēste	cap-issi	cap-iste
trov-asce	trov-āssero	perd-esce	perd-ēssero	cap-isce	cap-īssero

91. Formation of Regular Verbs. Italian regular verbs have three principal parts: the infinitive, and the present and past participles. These all have the same stem.

a. All simple tenses except future and past future are formed by dropping -are, -ire, or -ere from the infinitive, and adding the personal endings. For compound tenses, cf. 96, 120.

b. The future and past future are formed by dropping merely the final e of the infinitive, and adding the terminations; verbs of the first conjugation first change the a of -are to e.

c. Verbs of the third conjugation may be said to have a second stem in their inchoative form in -isco, from which are formed the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and the singular imperative.

92. Imperative. **a.** The third persons of the imperative, it will be seen, are filled in from the subjunctive.

Finisca il lavoro

Let him finish the work

Tōrnino a mēzzogiorno

Let them return at noon

Creda quello che dico, Signore

Believe what I say, sir

b. The negative of the second person singular of the imperative is formed with the infinitive.

Non aver paura, Chiarina Do not be afraid, little Clara
Non apparecchiare ancora, Peppina Do not set the table yet, Josephine

93. Past Subjunctive. *a.* The past subjunctive is used in a condition of which the conclusion is in the past future.

Se mi mandasse il danaro, comprerei questa casa If he should send (sent) me the money, I should buy this house

VOCABULARY

l' anno (<i>m.</i>)	year	azzurro	blue
l' autunno (<i>m.</i>)	autumn	caldo	hot
il calore	heat	corto	short
il colore	color	freddo	cold
l' estate (<i>f.</i>)	summer	primo	first
il garofano	carnation	ultimo	last
la giornata	day, period of one day	verde	green
il lavoro	work, task	nove	nine
il mese	month	dodici	twelve
il Natale	Christmas	quale, -i	which? which one?
la neve	snow	cantare	sing
il nido	nest	diminuire	lessen
la primavera	spring	fa caldo	it is hot (weather)
la stagione	season	fa freddo	it is cold (weather)
la terra	earth	si chiudono	refl. use of chiudere (irr.) close
la tristezza	sadness	si riaprono	refl. use of riaprire (irr.) reopen
l' uccello (<i>m.</i>)	bird	si tinge	refl. use of tingere (irr.) color
la vendemmia	vintage		
più	more, most		
se	if		

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

I MESI DELL' ANNO

Gennaio. — È il primo mese. Neve, freddo, e giornate corte.

Febbraio. — È il mese più corto dell' anno.

Marzo. — Comincia la primavera. L' uccello torna al vecchio nido.

Aprile. — La terra si tinge di verde, il cielo d' azzurro.

Maggio. — È il mese delle rose e dei garofani. Che festa di colori !

Giugno. — Finisce l' anno scolastico.

Luglio. — È estate. Si chiudono le scuole.

Agosto. — Fa molto caldo.

Settembre. — Il calore dell' estate diminuisce. Comincia la vendemmia e l' autunno.

Ottobre. — La sera e la mattina fa fresco. Si riaprono le scuole.

Novembre. — Questo è il mese della tristezza.

Dicembre. — È l' ultimo mese dell' anno, e siamo all' inverno. Ecco il freddo, ma anche la più bella delle feste : il Natale !

II

1. Quanti mesi ci sono nell' anno ?
2. Fa freddo di gennaio, ma il freddo diminuisce di marzo.
3. È primavera ; gli uccelli cominciano a cantare nel giardino.
4. Le nevi d' inverno sono molto fredde.
5. Qual è la stagione calda ? Fa sempre caldo l' estate.
6. Nella primavera cantano gli uccelli.
7. Cantino, Signorine, questa sera.
8. Se gli uccelli non temessero il freddo, tornerebbero più presto al nido.
9. Tornate a mezzogiorno, bambini.
10. Se il freddo diminuisse, la primavera tornerebbe.
11. Luisina, porta i piatti sulla tavola.
12. Se finissimo il lavoro prima di mezzogiorno, torneremmo a casa.
13. Se farà troppo caldo non torneremo.

III

1. There are twelve months in the year.
2. December, January, and February are the months of winter. What are the months of summer?
3. Which is the cold season? It is always cold in winter.
4. If the men should speak, should we reply?
5. Let us return home.
6. If the birds returned to the old nest, they would sing.
7. It is always very hot in August, but the heat grows less in September.
8. Do not fear the heat of summer.
9. Speak to that sentinel, sir.
10. If the cold should diminish, we should return in March.
11. If we spoke to the Italians, they would reply in Italian.
12. Little girl, do not be afraid of that gun.
13. Look, madam.
14. Go down into the garden, miss.
15. How many seasons are there in the year?
16. Reply in Italian, young ladies.
17. It is November; the days begin to be short.

LESSON IX

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

94. a. Accusative, Direct Object.

mi me	ci us
ti thee	vi you
lø him	li them (<i>m.</i>)
la her	le them (<i>f.</i>)
nø some, any, of it, of them (<i>cf. 124</i>)	

*1. Instead of *ci* is often found, especially in poetry and older writings, the form *nø*; and sometimes *il* for *lø*.

b. Dative, Indirect Object.

mi to me, for me	ci to us, for us
ti to thee, for thee	vi to you, for you
gli to him, for him	
le to her, for her	løro to them, for them (<i>m. or f.</i>)

c. Reflexive Object, Direct or Indirect.

mi myself, to <i>or</i> for myself	ci ourselves, <i>etc.</i>
ti thyself, to <i>or</i> for thyself	vi yourselves, <i>etc.</i>
si himself, herself, <i>etc.</i>	si themselves, <i>etc.</i> (<i>m. or f.</i>)

95. Rules of Syntax. *a.* These pronouns are called conjunctive, because conjoined to the verb in the relation of object. The object pronoun, whether direct, indirect, or reflexive, immediately precedes the governing finite verb (except **loro**, which always follows). If the verb is compound, the conjunctive (except **loro**) precedes the auxiliary; **loro** follows the participle.

L o fa	He does it
N e parla	He speaks of it
C i alziamo	We get up
M i ha detto la verità	He has told me the truth
L e danno un mazzolino di fiori	They give her a bunch of flowers
Parliamo loro	We speak to them, let us speak to them
Abbiamo dato loro un quadro	We have given them a picture

i.* In literary usage **loro will sometimes be found preceding the verb.

b. But if the governing verb be an infinitive, a positive imperative of the first or second person, a present participle, or a past participle used without auxiliary, then the conjunctive pronoun (except **loro**) becomes enclitic, being appended to the verb-form so as to make one word with it. **Loro** is never appended. The enclitic makes no change in the accent of the verb-form.

Viene a vederlo	He comes to see him
Abbiamo fatto il possibile di tro-varli	We have tried our best to find them

Vuòl dir l'oro ché s'ono arrivate delle lètttere	He wishes to tell them that some letters have come
Avèndolo	Having it
Avèndolo dëtto	Having said it
Dëttogli quest'o	This being said to him
Il dispaccio comunicàtoci dal còn- sole affèrma ché la guèrra è stata dichiarata	The telegram communicated to us by the consul states that war has been declared
Lo punìrono per averne parlato	They punished him for having spoken of it

1. *With the imperative:*

troviāmolo	nòn lò perdiamo
tròvalo	nòn lò përdere
lò trövi	nòn lò përda

2. The *e* is dropped from the infinitive before an enclitic pronoun (cf. 31, *a*).

Andiamo a vederla	Let us go and see her
-------------------	-----------------------

VOCABULARY

bagnato	wet	comprare	buy
il burro	butter	desiderare	wish, desire
la campagna	the country	favorire	favor with, kindly give
la lèttera	letter	piacere (irr.)	please, be pleasing to; mi piace I like
l' ombrello <i>m.</i>	umbrella	per piacere	please
l' orològio <i>m.</i>	watch	riavere	get back, recover
il pane	bread	dica 3 sg. pres. subj. and imper.	
il postino	postman	of dire (irr.)	say, tell (takes di before inf.)
la strada	street	vuole 3 sg. pres. ind. of volere	
gràzie (<i>f. pl.</i>)	thanks	(irr.)	will, wish
qua	here	dia 3 sg. pres. subj. and imper.	
fatto	done, made; <i>p. part. of fare</i>	of dare (irr.)	give
(irr.)			
aver	fretta be in a hurry		

EXERCISE

I

1. Le piace la campagna, Signorina? Mi piace tanto.
2. Hai perduto l' orologio? Sì, l' ho perduto.
3. Dov' è il denaro? L' abbiamo perduto; abbiamo fatto di tutto per riaverlo.
4. Le lettere portatemi dal postino erano della famiglia.
5. Parlāndole per la strada, capimmo che aveva fretta.
6. Guarda, Beppino, l' ombrello è bagnato; non portarlo qua.
7. Mi favorisca il pane, Signora. Grazie.
8. Ecco un bell' orologio; bisogna comprarlo per Giuseppe.
9. Lo dia a Giovanni, e gli dica di portarlo a Giuseppe.
10. Vediamo degl' Italiani.
11. Le dice che abbiamo perduto il denaro, ma non lo creda.
12. Ne abbiamo dato a Gigi.

II

1. Is this John's book?
2. Carry it to John, Chiarina; don't put it on the shelf.
3. Have you lost the money? Yes, I have lost it.
4. Do you wish to find it? I will help you.
5. Yes, help me to find it, please.
6. I spoke to him. She spoke to us. We spoke to them.
7. Please pass me the butter. Thank you.
8. Tell them to return before noon.
9. Put the chairs near the table; do not put them in front of the door.
10. Give us the flowers, please; do not give them to Maria.
11. Has he the money? No, carrying it home he lost it.
12. It is very hot to-day; I do not like the heat.
13. Buy some at once.
14. Don't speak of it, child.

LESSON X

THE VERB *ESSERE*96. The Verb *Essere*, 'be.'

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE		PAST PARTICIPLE				
essere	essendo		stato				
essere stato	essendo stato						
INDICATIVE							
PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE				
sōno	siamo sēi	ero, -a eri	eravamo eravate	fui fosti	fummo foste	sarò sarai	saremo sarete
è	sōno	era	érano	fu	fürono	sarà	saranno
PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	SECOND PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT				
sōno stato, -a, etc.	ero stato, etc.	fui stato, etc.	sarò stato, etc.				
PAST FUTURE	PAST FUTURE PERFECT						
saréi	saremmo	saréi stato, etc.					
sarésti	sareste						
sarébbe	sarébbero						
IMPERATIVE							
	siamo						
sii	sięte						
sia	śiano						
SUBJUNCTIVE							
PRESENT	PAST						
sia	siamo	fossi	fōssimo				
sia	siate	fossi	foste				
sia	śiano	fosse	fōssero				
PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT						
sia stato, etc.	fossi stato, etc.						

97. The Passive Voice. *a.* The passive voice is constructed by means of the auxiliary **essere** and the past participle of the verb conjugated. It is used chiefly when the agent is expressed; otherwise the reflexive best translates the English passive. (See Lesson XII.)

L' Amērica è stata scoperta da America was discovered by Christopher Columbus
Cristōforo Colombo

i.* The passive may be constructed with the verbs **andare 'go,' **venire** 'come,' **rimanere** 'remain,' but with reference rather to the state resultant from the action than to the action itself (cf. 129, 138, 149).

Va fatto così	It should be done this way
Prima che la frugale colazione venisse imbandita, il lavoro fu terminato	Before the frugal luncheon was served, the work was done
Né rimase stupefatto	He was amazed at it

b. Model Passive Verb.

PRESENT	INFINITIVE	PERFECT
essere lodato, to be praised	essere stato lodato, to have been praised	
PARTICIPLE		
essendo lodato, being praised	essendo stato lodato, having been praised	
PRESENT	INDICATIVE	PAST DESCRIPTIVE
sono lodato, I am praised, <i>etc.</i>		ero lodato, I was being praised, <i>etc.</i>
FUTURE		PAST ABSOLUTE
sarò lodato, I shall be praised, <i>etc.</i>		fui lodato, I was praised, <i>etc.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT
sono stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>		sarò stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>

PAST PERFECT	SECOND PAST PERFECT
ero stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>	fui stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>
PAST FUTURE	PAST FUTURE PERFECT
sarei lodato, <i>etc.</i>	sarrei stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>
IMPERATIVE	
sii lodato, <i>etc.</i>	
PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE
sia lodato, <i>etc.</i>	fossi lodato, <i>etc.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT	PAST
sia stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>	fossi stato lodato, <i>etc.</i>

98. All passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs (except *fare* used impersonally) are conjugated with *essere*.

I Cristiani primitivi fùrono perseguitati dai Romani	The early Christians were persecuted by the Romans
S' è levato alle sette	He rose at seven
È piovuto	It has rained

99. After the auxiliary *essere*, the past participle agrees with the subject; except with reflexives (cf. 104, c, 1; 194, b).

Molte battaglie fùrono vinte dai Tedeschi	Many battles were won by the Germans
Sono venuti quei signori?	Have those gentlemen come?

VOCABULARY

la bandiera	flag	arrivare	arrive
la guerra	war	combattere	fight
il popolo	people	difendere (irr.)	defend
il sangue	blood	dividere (irr.)	divide
il soldato	soldier	innalzare	raise
lo stato	state	insegnare	teach (<i>insegno</i>)
la volta	time, a time	morire (irr.)	die

mostrare show	circa about
spārgere (<i>irr.</i>) scatter	disse <i>3 sg. p. abs.</i> of dire (<i>irr.</i>) say
venire (<i>irr.</i> , <i>p.p.</i> <i>venuto</i>) come	dobbiamo <i>1 pl. pres. ind.</i> of
bianco (<i>pl.</i> <i>bianchi</i> , <i>bianche</i>) white	dovere (<i>irr.</i>) must
caro dear	la nostra our
felice happy	or sono ago
il prōprio own, one's own	quando when
rosso red	stesso itself etc. (<i>not refl.</i>), same
tutto all	sūbito immediately
ancora yet, still	vogliamo <i>1 pl. pres. ind.</i> of volere
cento hundred, a hundred	(<i>irr.</i>) wish, will
chi? who?	

EXERCISE

I

LA BANDIERA NAZIONALE

La nostra bandiera nazionale è di tre colori: bianco, rosso, verde. Essa è il simbolo della patria, e noi dobbiamo amarla come la patria stessa. Il soldato per essa combatte, ed è felice di spargere il proprio sangue e di morire per difenderla.

La nostra bella bandiera tricolore fu innalzata la prima volta dai soldati piemontesi, circa cento anni or sono, quando l' Italia, la nostra cara patria, non era ancora tutta unita e libera.

E il popolo subito l' amò, e disse che era la più bella di tutte; e la cantò così:

La bandiera a tre colori
sempre è stata la più bella;
noi vogliamo sempre quella,
noi vogliam la libertà!

II

1. The national flag of the United States is of three colors: red, white, and blue.
2. The soldiers have come, carrying the flag of the state.
3. Carrying it always, they will have returned to the

war. 4. The tricolored flag was carried by the Italians in the war for [of] Independence. 5. Soldiers love their own country; they are glad to die to defend it. 6. The soldier has found the gun, but he has not yet returned. 7. Do you like the tricolored American flag? Yes, I like it.

LESSON XI

CONJUNCTIVES (CONTINUED)

100. a. *Ecco* takes the pronouns appended in the same manner as certain parts of the verb (cf. 95, *b*).

Dov' è la mia borsa?	<i>Eccola</i>	Where is my bag? Here it is
<i>Eccone</i>		Here is some, here are some
<i>Eccoci</i>		Here we are

b. All conjunctive pronouns except *gli* and *glie* double their initial consonant when appended to a verb-form which ends in an accented vowel (cf. 5, *b*, 2).

Dammi del latte	Give me some milk
Fallo subito	Do it at once
Stacci attento	Pay attention to it

***1.** The following types are confined to poetic or literary use:

Parlommi, <i>for</i> Mi parlò	He spoke to me
Porterallo, <i>for</i> Lo porterà	He will bring it to us
Guardöcci, <i>for</i> Ci guardò	He looked at us

c. *La* and *Lè* are the accusative and dative cases, respectively, of *Lèi* in direct address (cf. 65, *a*), and are used to persons of either sex (but *Li*, *Le*, accusative plural, according to sex).

A rivederla, Signore	Good-by, sir
Come Lè piace questo dolce, Si- gnore?	How do you like this dessert, sir?
A rivederli, Signori	Good-by, gentlemen

d. When a noun object, or an object clause, precedes the verb, it must be repeated in pronoun form, as a conjunctive object.

La carne non l' ho comprata

The meat I haven't bought

***1.** Sometimes in conversation, for vivacity or emphasis, the order is reversed, a conjunctive pronoun preceding the verb redundantly.

L' ha visto il Duomo?

Have you seen the Cathedral?

***2.** The dative is often used as the so-called dative of reference or concern.

M' era morta di poco la mamma

My mother had died a short time before

***e.** In the predicate after 'to be,' 'so' is expressed by **lo**, used even where it would be redundant in English.

Così impervi allo spirito moderno

As impervious to the modern spirit

come lo sono quei rozzi contadini

as are those rough peasants

i. **Lo** translates 'so' also in such phrases as the following:

L' credo

I think so

Speriamolo

Let us hope so

***f.** The reflexive pronoun may be appended, but only in the third person, to the forms of the indicative in addition to those forms listed under **95, b.**

Dicesi

It is said

***g.** A conjunctive form is sometimes used as subject of the third person. It is unstressed, and usually redundant. The forms are these:

gli, e' = { egli
 { èglino

la = ella
le = èlleno

La non lo creda

Do not (you) believe it

Le son molto eleganti

They (*f.*) are very elegant

Gli is used before a word beginning with a vowel or **h**; **e'**, elsewhere.

CONJUNCTIVES AND AUXILIARIES §§ 100-101

i. The similar use of **Io** and **Li** as the redundant object of reflexive verbs is provincial and incorrect.

Tu sei ammalato, Io si vede You are ill, one sees it

ii. The word 'it' in such phrases as 'it is because' etc. is translated, if at all, by **gli** or **egli**.

Gli è perchè le leggi sono troppo It is because the laws are too
rigorose rigorous

101. Some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **essere** and some with **avere**:

a. The following always with **essere**:

andare go	morire die	scendere descend
arrivare arrive	nascere be born	sorgere arise
cadere fall	partire depart	tornare return
comparire appear	parvenire arrive	uscire go out
correre run	piacere please	venire come
entrare enter	rimanere remain	
essere be	riuscire succeed	

*b. The following (for reference only) always with **avere**:

camminare walk	nitrare neigh	riderem laugh
desinare dine	parlare speak	sbadigliare yawn
dormire sleep	passeggiare take a walk	sognare dream
giocare play	piangere weep	sonnecchiare nap
muggire low	pranzare dine	starnutire sneeze

*c. The following is a partial list of verbs which take **avere** when the *action* is thought of, and **essere** when the state resultant from the action is more considered.

appartenere belong	dimorare dwell	partire divide
bastare suffice	durare last	ritornare return
cessare cease	giungere arrive	salire go up
consistere consist	invecchiare grow old	succedere happen
degenerare degenerate	montare mount	vivere live

102. The verb 'to be' combined with the participle in '-ing,' in such English phrases as 'to be singing,' 'they are writing,' etc., is rendered in Italian by the verbs *stare* and *andare*. With *andare* the idea conveyed is more *active*, with *stare* more *static*.

Stanno cantando	They are singing
Sto leggendo	I am reading
Il raggazzo va crescendo giorno a giorno	The boy is growing day by day
L' albero va perdendo le foglie	The tree is losing its leaves

103. Some Uses of *da*. The preposition *da* has many idiomatic uses :

a. To mean 'at the house of,' 'at,' 'to,' with a word referring to a person.

Andiamo dalla sorella mia	Let us go to my sister's
Sono andati dal guantaio	They have gone to the glover's (the glove-store)
Vuole andare da Chiara?	Do you wish to go to Clara's?
Abita da sua cognata	She lives at her sister-in-law's

b. With *essere*, to mean 'it is to be' with the sense of obligation or propriety. The infinitive then has often passive force.

È da sperarsi che quest' affare non andrà a finire male	It is to be hoped that this affair will not terminate badly
Era da ridere	It was an occasion for laughter

VOCABULARY

la cioccolata chocolate	la sēggiola chair
Giusèppe Joseph	la stazione railway station
il nonno grandfather	
la pasta small cake	aspettare wait, wait for
il patriota patriot	invitare invite
il ritratto portrait	sperare hope (<i>spiero</i>)

due volte	twice	andato <i>p.p. of</i> <i>andare</i> go
a piedi	on foot	morto <i>p.p. of</i> <i>morire</i> die
fiorentino	Florentine	partito <i>p.p. of</i> <i>partire</i> go away
contro	against	piaciuto <i>p.p. of</i> <i>piacere</i> please
per tempo	early	rimasto <i>p.p. of</i> <i>rimanere</i> remain
da, date,	<i>z sg. and pl. imper. of</i>	sceso <i>p.p. of</i> <i>scendere</i> go down
dare		uscito <i>p.p. of</i> <i>uscire</i> go out
di' <i>z sg. imper. of</i>	dire	venuto <i>p.p. of</i> <i>venire</i> come

EXERCISE

I

1. Siamo invitati a pranzo da due amici. 2. Eccoci arrivati dagli amici, che abitano vicino alla chiesa ; siamo venuti a piedi. 3. Dov' è la tazza ? Eccola sullo scaffale. 4. La metta sulla tavola. Non la porti in cucina. 5. L' orologio non lo trovo. 6. Ha i libri italiani che desidero ? Eccoli, Signore ; vuol comprarli ? 7. Molti soldati sono morti nella guerra contro i Turchi. 8. Chi Le ha insegnato la lingua italiana ? La lingua italiana m' è stata insegnata da un vecchio patriota italiano. 9. Erano arrivati prima di mezzogiorno i ragazzi ? 10. Ecco la Luisina ; dalle dei fiori. 11. È venuta una signora ; bambine, portatele delle paste. 12. Dimmi, Peppina, sei stata a scuola oggi ? 13. Parlandomi della famiglia, mi mostrò un ritratto della madre. 14. Ecco il nonno ; bambini, dategli una seggiola. 15. Luigi è andato da Chiara, per mostrarle l' orologio che ha comprato.

II

1. I have lost John's watch, but I hope to [di] find it. 2. Our flag was made by the pupils of the old Florentine school. 3. Here is the bread, but the butter I have not bought. 4. Where is Louis's gun ? There it is on the shelf. 5. Having carried it to Louis, return here at once. 6. Let us return to Joseph's ; he will show us the Italian national flag which he carried in the war. 7. The soldier has found the guns, but has not yet returned. 8. The mother and aunt of the pupil have died. 9. The little girl went down into the

garden at six this morning. 10. Had John's sisters gone to the station when Mary arrived? 11. Give me some bread, little Clara; do not carry it into the kitchen. 12.* The American ladies are not here; they left to-day. 13. Where is Mrs. Rossi? There she is, arrived at the station. 14. Chiarina, tell her to wait for us. 15. We should have spoken to them if they had remained. 16. Have you been in America? We have been in America twice; we liked it very much. 17. The ladies had gone out early this morning; they bought some chocolate, and have now returned to Mary's.

LESSON XII

REFLEXIVE VERBS

104. Reflexive Verbs: *a.* Reflexive verbs are those whose object is the same person as their subject.

Si alza	He rises (<i>lit. raises himself</i>)
M' assuefò ad alzarmi alle sei	I accustom myself to rise at six

i. 'Self' reflexive (which is always the object) must not be confused with 'myself,' etc., intensive, which may be the subject and is expressed by **stesso** or **medesimo** accompanying the pronoun.

L' hò fatto io stesso	I did it myself
L' ha detto lui medesimo	He said it himself

b. In the plural, reflexives may have reciprocal force; if this is not clear from the context, **l'** un **l'** altro 'one another' may be added to emphasize reciprocal meaning.

Si amano	They love themselves, they love each other
Si amano l' un l' altro	They love each other

c. Reflexives are conjugated in the compound tenses with **essere** (cf. 98).

Mi sono pentito	I have repented
Se si fossero amati	If they had loved each other

1. The participle agrees with the *direct object* (cf. 194, b, 3), which may or may not be the reflexive, personal object.

La signora s' èra alzata presto The lady had risen early.
 Mi sono comprati dei guanti I have bought myself some gloves

*2. But the strict observance of this rule offends the Tuscan ear. Tuscans make the participle agree with the personal object.

Mi sono comprato (*or comprata*) dei guanti

d. Model Reflexive Verb: synopsis of fermarsi 'stop.'

	INFINITIVE		
PRESENT		PARTICIPLE	PERFECT
fermarsi			essersi fermato
fermāndosi			essēndosi fermato
	INDICATIVE		
PRESENT			PAST DESCRIPTIVE
mi fērmo	ci fermiamo		mi fermavo, <i>etc.</i>
ti fērmi	vi fermate		
si fērma	si fērmano		
	FUTURE		PAST ABSOLUTE
mi fermerò, <i>etc.</i>			mi fermai, <i>etc.</i>
	PRESENT PERFECT		PAST PERFECT
mi sono fermato, -a	ci siamo fermati, -e		mi ero fermato, <i>etc.</i>
ti sei fermato, -a	vi siete fermati, -e		
s'è fermato, -a	si sono fermati, -e		
	FUTURE PERFECT		SECOND PAST PERFECT
mi sarò fermato, <i>etc.</i>			mi fui fermato, <i>etc.</i>
	PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT
mi fermerei, <i>etc.</i>			mi sarei fermato, <i>etc.</i>

	IMPERATIVE		
	PRESENT	SUBJUNCTIVE	PAST
fērmati	fermāmoci	non ti fermare	non ci fermiamo
si fērmi	fermātevi	non si fērmi	non vi fermate
	si fērmino		non si fērmino

105. The Reflexive is Used —

a. In expressions essentially reflexive in character.

Si veste He dresses himself

b. In many verbs not essentially reflexive in character in English, but invariably so in Italian.

Lagnarsi to complain **vergognarsi** to feel ashamed

1. When the English equivalent of such verbs is transitive, the Italian reflexive often governs an object by means of a preposition.

Si accorge di uno strépito He perceives a noise
Avviciniāmoci a quella casa Let us approach that house

*2. The reflexive pronoun is omitted from the infinitive of these verbs when dependent upon **fare**, **lasciare**, **sentire**, **udire**, **vedere**.

Lo faremo pentire (*refl. pentirsi*) We shall make him repent

*3. The pronoun may be the "dative of reference or concern," merely to add vivacity or intensity; auxiliary sometimes, rarely, *avere*.

Io **mi** viveva di mia sorte contenta I lived content with my lot

c. In the dative, to avoid the use of the possessive with clothing or parts of the body (cf. 109).

S' è bruciato il dito
Mi metto il cappello

106. Special Uses. *a.* In the third persons singular and plural, and in the infinitive and participles, the reflexive translates the English passive.

Molti libri inglesi *si vendono* in Italia
Many English books are sold in Italy

Qui *si parla francese* French spoken here

**i.* The agent may even be expressed, and still the reflexive construction will be retained.

Sé nè discuteva molto dal popolo There was much discussion of it by the people

b. The English impersonal 'one,' 'we,' 'they,' etc., and the impersonal passive, are translated by the reflexive.

Si dice They say, it is said

Si va spesso al teatro People often go to the theater, we often go to the theater

Si può entrare? May one enter?

**i.* *Èssersi*, impersonal, takes a plural subject (cf. 194, *b*, 3, *a*):

Si è lieti il giorno di Natale People are happy on Christmas Day

**c.* Italian being a much more impersonal language than English, the reflexive often best translates also the English personal construction.

Sé non Lè piacciono questi guanti, If you do not like these gloves,
si barattano you may exchange them

Dove si comprano i biglietti? Where do I buy my tickets?

**d.* In the third person singular the reflexive is peculiarly used in Tuscan familiar speech, along with the pronoun of the first person plural, with which in compound tenses the past participle agrees. 'We' in this case is not general or impersonal, necessarily.

Noi si va sempre in chiesa la domenica	We (i.e. our family, our household) always go to church on Sunday
Ci si accorse del suo arrivo	We noticed his arrival
Noi si era allegri ieri	We were joyful yesterday

VOCABULARY

l' amica (<i>pl. amiche</i>) friend (<i>f.</i>)	accomodarsi make oneself comfortable, sit down (<i>m' accōmodo</i>)
la giornata day, period of one day	alzarsi rise
l' inchiostro <i>m.</i> ink	chiamare call
il libraio bookseller	chiamarsi be named
la macchia spot	far colazione lunch
il vestito dress	fa passare shows in (makes to enter)
alle nove at nine o'clock	fermarsi stop
meno male luckily	insudiciare soil
grasso big	lavarsi wash (oneself)
scuro dark	mēttersi put on (clothes)
	mēttersi a sedere sit down
	ricordarsi (<i>di</i>) remember (<i>ricorđo</i>)
	seguitare follow

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

LA GIORNATA DELLA NERINA

1. Ecco una cara bambina!
2. Come si chiama? Si chiama Nerina.
3. Nerina passa una giornata felice.
4. Si alza alle sei e aiuta la mamma a preparare il caffè.
5. Si mette un vestito scuro per non insudiciarlo.
6. Non si mette il vestito bianco delle feste.
7. È arrivata a scuola alle nove.
8. A scuola s' è fatte delle grosse macchie d' inchiostro sul vestitino.
9. Meno male che non era il bianco.
10. A mezzogiorno è tornata a far colazione, senza fermarsi per la strada.
11. Prima di far colazione si lava le mani.
12. I bambini non si ricordano sempre di lavarsi le mani.
13. La

sera qualcuno è arrivato. Era un' amica della mamma. 14. Nerina la fa passare, e le dice, " Buona sera, Signora. S' accomodi. Ecco una seggiola."

II

(Use present perfect for past tenses.)

1. At what hour did you get up, ladies? 2. We got up at six; after [the] coffee we visited St. Stephen's church. 3. A little girl followed us. 4. What is your name, little girl? My name is Nerina. 5. We stopped at the bookseller's, to buy some books. 6. The bookseller spoke to us in Italian; we spoke to him in English. 7. Italian is not spoken much in the United States. 8. If Nerina did not remember her lessons, she would feel ashamed. 9. It is said that soldiers are glad to die for their country. 10. Nerina washes her hands and puts on a white dress before taking lunch. 11. She has two white dresses; she does not like (to) soil them. 12. Nerina is happy; two women friends of her [the] mother have arrived. 13. She shows them in, and says, " Good afternoon, ladies! Be seated!"

LESSON XIII

POSSESSIVES

107. Possessives. *a.* The forms of the possessive adjective are as follows:

SINGULAR

il mio

la mia

il tuo

la tua

il suo

la sua

PLURAL

i miei } my, mine

le miei } thy, thine

i suoi } his,
le sue } her, hers

SINGULAR	PLURAL
il nostro	i nostri } our, ours
la nostra	le nostre }
il vostro	i vostri } your, yours
la vostra	le vostre }
il loro	i loro } their, theirs
la loro	le loro }

i. Both words may precede the noun ; or the article may precede and the possessive follow, suggesting intimacy in possession.

I miei libri ; i libri miei

My books ; my very own books

b. The possessives (except **loro**, invariable) agree in number and gender with the noun they modify ; that is, with the object possessed, not with the possessor. The context usually prevents ambiguity.

Hanno venduto la loro casa

They have sold **their** house

Maria legge il suo libro

Mary is reading **her** book

Giovanni ha perduto la sua grammatica

John has lost **his** grammar

***i.** When there might be ambiguity, as when the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, **di lui**, **di lei**, **di loro**, with the article, may be substituted for the possessive of the third person.

Mise il suo anello nel dito **di lei**

He put **his** ring on **her** finger

Mi disse che il suo figliuolo aveva

He told me that **his** little boy had

perduto il **di lui** orologio

lost **his** (i.e., the boy's) watch

c. The possessive 'its,' when modifying a noun in the accusative case, is translated by **ne** and the definite article.

There is the city ! I see its towers Ecco la città ! **Ne** vedo le torri

108. The definite article is omitted from the possessive,

a. When it modifies a noun of human relationship, otherwise unmodified and in the singular. (Augmentatives and diminutives count as modifiers, cf. 228.)

Suo padre morì combattendo per la pàtria	His father died fighting for his country
I miei figliuoli sono tutti maschietti	My children are all boys
La mia sorella maggiore abita a Parigi	My eldest sister lives in Paris
Il tuo fratellino sta piangendo	Your little brother is crying

b. When it stands alone in the predicate, with the force of an adjective ; unless it distinguishes the possession of one person from that of another.

Quella casa è sua	That house is his (or hers)
--------------------------	-----------------------------

But

Questo libro è il mio ; quell' altro è il vostro	This book is mine ; that other one is yours
---	--

c. When preceded by a demonstrative or interrogative adjective, a numeral, or an adjective of quantity.

Questa sua casa	This house of his
Qual suo libro ?	Which book of his ?
Tre sorelle sue (<i>or</i> , Tre delle sue sorelle)	Three sisters of his, three of his sisters
Molti libri suoi	Many of her books

***d.** When it is part of a title.

Sua Maestà, Loro Altezze	His Majesty, Their Highnesses
--------------------------	-------------------------------

***e.** Usually in the vocative, the possessive more often following the noun.

Quello che vi dico, amico mio, è vero	What I am telling you, my friend, is true
--	--

***f.** In certain set phrases.

Per fortuna loro	By their good luck
In casa nostra	In our house
In camera mia	In my room
A loro volta	In their turn
Con mia gran sorpresa	To my great surprise

g. 'A friend of mine' and similar expressions are rendered **un amico mio**, **un mio amico**, etc.

Tre libri suoi	Three books of his
Una proprietà mia	An estate I own
Lo vede da un suo speciale punto di vista	He sees it from a special point of view of his own

109. In accordance with the greater impersonality of the Italian language (cf. 106, c), the definite article is substituted for the possessive with nouns describing parts of the body or clothing, and often with nouns of human relationship, especially **babbo** and **mamma**. If ownership is indicated, it is by means of the dative conjunctive pronoun (cf. 105, c). With certain words, as **tasca** 'pocket,' even the article is omitted.

Mette il denaro in tasca	He puts the money in his pocket
Mi sono levato il cappello	I have taken off my hat
Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Hanno sparato e gli hanno strappato un braccio	They shot, and shot away one of his arms
Mi racconta d'aver perduto la madre	He tells me of having lost his mother
Mettiti i guanti	Put on your gloves
Si leva il soprabito	He takes off his overcoat

***a.** **Próprio** 'own' may intensify the possessive, or be used instead of it.

Ognuno ama la própria patria	Every one loves his own country
-------------------------------------	--

***b.** **Altrui**, which always follows the noun in prose, is an indefinite possessive, meaning 'of others.'

Agisce sempre per il bene altrui	He acts always for the good of others
Lo scendere e il salir per l' altrui scale	Going up and down the stairs of others

***c.** The possessives are used alone, with the noun understood, in a great variety of familiar phrases. Here are a few examples:

Saluta i tuoi da parte dei miei

Greet your family on behalf of mine

Ha molte persone dalla sua

He has many persons on his side

Spendo il mio in viaggiare

I spend my money in travel

Né fa troppe delle sue

He does too many of his characteristic ill turns

Ho avuto le mie; avrai le tue

I have had my troubles; you will have yours

Lavoro sul mio

I labor on my own land

VOCABULARY

il babbo papa

levarsi take off (clothing)

il bosco wood

raccomandare urge, recommend;
takes a before a word meaning
a person, di before a verb

il cappello hat

sgridare scold

la cosa thing

smarriti lose one's way

il guanto glove

far tardi be late

il paese village, country, nation

invece on the contrary, instead

il paniere basket

potrebbero (3 pl. past fut. of po-

trebere, irr.) might

tiene (3 sg. pres. indic. of tenere,

irr.) holds

vanno (3 pl. pres. indic. of andare,

irr.) go

d'estro right

maggiori elder

sinistro left

svoigliato listless, unwilling

EXERCISE

I

1. Giannetta e Marcellina vanno alla scuola del paese.
2. Non si mettono i guanti.
3. Giannetta porta i loro libri, e Marcellina tiene il paniere con la mano sinistra.
4. La mamma e il babbo raccomandano alle due bambine di non fermarsi nel bosco.
5. Potrebbero smarriti e far tardi a scuola.
6. Giannetta, la maggiore, è una bambina giudiziosa; Marcellina, invece, è una piccola svogliata.
7. Ha sempre tante cose da vedere, che si ferma ogni cinque

passi. 8. Non bisogna far tardi! — dice Giannetta — Il babbo e la mamma ci sgrideranno. 9. Si levi il cappello, Signorina. Non si metta i guanti. 10. Abbiamo i nostri libri, e il loro paniere, e molte cose loro. 11. Mia madre è dalla mia sorella maggiore. 12. Dov'è il suo paniere? È sulla mia tavola.

II

1. Marcellina is holding my basket in her right hand. 2. Do not be late to school, Marcellina; your father and mother will scold you. 3. My sisters live in Florence, but they are now at Clara's. 4. Marcellina will stop every three steps, but her elder sister would not stop. 5. The little girls would lose their way if they should stop in the wood. 6. Marcellina says to her sister, "We have not lost our way." 7. Does he like his school? 8. Is this your house? Yes, it is ours. 9. My mother is talking with my elder brother. 10. I take off my gloves. I have lost my hat. 11. My brothers are going to school. 12. There is their house. 13. Have they bought yours? 14. My brothers say the pupil has a book of mine.

LESSON XIV

CHANGES OF LETTERS. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

110. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs.

a. Verbs of the first conjugation ending in -care and -gare, -ciare and -giare, retain throughout the conjugation that sound of c or g which is heard in the infinitive.

1. Verbs in -care and -gare insert h after c or g before e or i: paghi, cercherò.

2. Verbs in -ciare and -giare omit i before e or i: lasceremo, mangi, cominciamo.

b. Other verbs in *-iare* drop the *i*, if unaccented, before another *i*.

Stūdio, studi, stūdino; but **spīo, spīi, spīino**

c. Verbs of the third conjugation in *-cere* and *-gere* do not retain this sound of *c* and *g* except where it would occur naturally.

Vīncere gives **vinco, vincono, vīnce, vinciamo**, etc.

d. Some verbs, as *giocare, rotare, sonare*, usually change *o* of the stem to *uo* wherever it takes the accent.

Suōno, sonerò; **giuōca, giochiamo**

i. Conversely, some verbs like *cuōcere, muōvere*, drop the *u* of the infinitive stem wherever the syllable containing it does not take the accent.

Cuōco, cocēsti; **muōve, movēndo**

111. a. A number of second-conjugation verbs do not have, in the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative, the inchoative forms in *-isco* etc. Such a verb is the model, *sentire*, given below.

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
sento	sentiamo	sēnta	sentiamo		sentiamo
sēnti	sentite	sēnta	sentiate	sēnti	sentite
sēnte	sēntono	sēnta	sēntano	sēnta	sēntano

b. The following are conjugated like *sentire*:

aprire (<i>irr.</i>) open	fuggire flee	soffrire suffer
bollire boil	offrire (<i>irr.</i>) offer	tossire cough
coprire (<i>irr.</i>) cover	pentirsi repent	vestire dress
cucire (<i>irr.</i>) sew	seguire follow	divertire amuse
dormire sleep	servire serve	

*c. The following (and others) are conjugated both ways :

applaudire	applaud	mentire	lie	sortire	go out
assorbire	absorb	nutrire	nourish		
comparire	appear	partire	depart		

1. Partire and sortire use the inchoative form (in -isco etc.) only when transitive.

112. **Uses of da.** The preposition **da** is used before nouns referring to persons, without article, to mean 'like,' 'in the character of,' 'characteristic of,' 'as.' (Cf. 162, c.)

Ha agito da uomo	He has acted like a man
S'è travestito da monaco	He has disguised himself as a monk

113. The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses after verbs of *wishing* and *willing*, when the subject is not the same as that of the independent clause. (With the same subject, the infinitive is used.)

Desidero che Lei legga questo libro	I wish you to read this book
Vogliamo che lo faccia	We wish him to do it

114. **The Relative Pronoun** (cf. 189). These forms are used of either persons or things :

a. **Ché** 'who,' 'whom,' 'which,' 'that'; invariable, used as the subject or object of a verb. It cannot be omitted.

L'uomo ch' io ho veduto	The man whom I saw
L'uomo ché m' ha veduto	The man who saw me
I fiori ché compro	The flowers I am buying

b. **Cui** 'of which,' 'for,' 'by,' 'with' (etc.) 'whom' or 'which'; invariable, used after prepositions. 'Whose' is *il cui*.

Il signore a cui ho venduto la casa	The gentleman to whom I sold the house
Lo sciopero di cui tutti parlano in questo momento	The strike of which everybody is talking at this moment

c. **Il quale** (**la quale**, **i quali**, **le quali**), inflected, used in all cases, and frequently instead of **cui** after prepositions, especially for clearness. Its article is contracted with the prepositions (cf. 75).

La signora alla quale ha dato il libro

La figlia dell' avvocato, la quale abita a Firenze

The lady to whom you have given the book

The lawyer's daughter, who lives at Florence. (**La quale**, being feminine, indicates the daughter, not the father.)

VOCABULARY

la lingua	language	abituarsi a	accustom oneself to
la lira	lira (twenty cents)	cercare	look for; <i>w. di</i> try to (<i>w. inf.</i>)
il maestro	teacher	divertirsi	amuse oneself
la penna a serbatoio	fountain pen	dormire	sleep
lo studio	study	lasciare	leave, let
la tasca (<i>pl. tasche</i>)	pocket	mancare	(<i>w. dat.</i>) be lacking
il viso	face	pagare	pay, pay for
difficile	difficult	sentire	hear, feel
facile	easy	servirsi di	make use of
scorso	last, past	studiare	study
a poco a poco	little by little	vendere	sell
		vestirsi	dress oneself

EXERCISE

I

1. Comprammo quella casa la settimana scorsa ; paghiamola presto.
2. Cominceremo a studiare alle otto ; lasceremo i nostri libri sullo scaffale.
3. Metta il pane nel paniere ; non lo lasci sul piatto.
4. Lo studio d' una lingua è difficile ; bisogna abituarsi a poco a poco a parlarla.
5. Giannetta si lavò il viso quando tornò da scuola.
6. Suo padre gli da tre lire. Si mette il denaro in tasca.
7. Luigi ha perduto i guanti ; cerchiamoli.
8. M' ha parlato da

padre. 9. Ho perduto la mia penna a serbatoio. Si serva della mia. 10. Se gli vendo l' orologio, lo pagherà domani? No, perchè gli manca il denaro. 11. Il maestro non desidera che gli scolari lascino lo studio per divertirsi. 12. Se si divertissero troppo, mancherebbe loro il tempo per studiare.

II

1. He sold me his house last week; when shall I pay for it?
2. I am finishing my work, but my sister sleeps.
3. If he were a soldier, he would dress like a soldier.
4. We should leave Italy if we did not lack money.
5. Let us try to amuse ourselves.
6. They wish their mother to sleep.
7. He put in his pocket the four lire with which he will pay for his book.
8. The pupils are studying the Italian language, and are accustoming themselves little by little to speak it.
9. Our teacher has lost his fountain pen; let us look for it.
10. Giannetta will wash her face and hands before taking lunch.
11. I am trying to accustom myself to make use of my fountain pen.
12. Joseph would make use of his if he studied.
13. He does not like study, but he wishes his brother to study.

LESSON XV

COMPARISON

115. Comparatives. *a.* The comparative is formed by placing **più** 'more,' or **meno** 'less,' before an adjective or adverb.

b. 'Than' is **di** before nouns, pronouns, or numerals,

Il padre è più alto del figlio	The father is taller than the son
I nostri vicini sono più ricchi di noi	Our neighbors are richer than we
Ho più di tre palle	I have more than three balls

But changes to **che** —

i. After **piuttosto**, **prima**, meaning 'rather,' 'sooner.'

Prenderei quella casa piuttosto che questa	I should take that house sooner than this
---	---

2. When the comparison is between two nouns.

Mi piace più la campagna che la città	I like the country better than the city
Non più bevve del fiume acqua che sangue	He drank from the river not more water than blood

c. 'Than' is **che** before adjectives, adverbs, prepositional phrases, infinitives, and participles.

L' avaro è più ricco che sāvio	The miser is more rich than wise
Méglia tardi che mai	Better late than never
I giōvani si preōcupano più delle eleganze della vita che dello stūdio	Young people think more of what is fashionable than of their studies

d. 'Than' is **che non** or **di quel che** before inflected verbs.

Lo spensierato parla più che non (<i>or di quel che</i>) pēnsa	The thoughtless man talks more than he thinks
---	---

116. The Superlative. a. The superlative is formed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative, from which it may be distinguished sometimes only by the context.

La sua stanza è la più grande	Her room is the largest (<i>or the larger, if only two are in question</i>)
-------------------------------	---

b. When the superlative follows the noun, as it may, the article of the superlative is omitted.

Agosto è il mese più caldo dell' anno	August is the hottest month of the year
---------------------------------------	---

c. The preposition used with the superlative is **fra**, sometimes **di**.

Ognuno crede che la sua patria sia la più bēlla fra (<i>or di</i>) tutte	Every one thinks his own country the most beautiful of all
---	--

d. An absolute superlative is formed by adding the suffix **-issimo** to the stem of the adjective; **-mente** may be added to the feminine of this, to make an absolute superlative for the adverb. These are in constant use in conversation.

La villa del suo amico è bella? Your friend's villa is beautiful?
 È bellissima Very beautiful indeed

i. The adjectives **acre**, **cèlebre**, **integre**, **salubre** (and in poetry, **mīšero**) have an absolute superlative in **-ērrimo**: **celebērrimo**.

117. Irregular Comparisons. *a.* The following words are compared irregularly:

buono 'good'	migliore	il migliore
		l' ottimo
bene 'well'	meglio	il meglio
		benissimo
		ottimamente
cattivo 'bad'	peggiore	il peggiore
		il pessimo
male 'badly'	peggio	il peggio
		pessimamente
alto 'high'	superiore	il superiore
		il sommo
basso 'low'	inferiore	l' inferiore
		l' infimo
grande 'large'	maggiore	il maggiore
		il massimo
piccolo 'small'	minore	il minore
		il minimo
molto 'much'	più	il più
		moltissimo
poco 'little'	meno	il meno
		pochissimo

b. All these may be compared also regularly, but sometimes with different meanings.

1. The irregular forms of **buono**, **cattivo**, **bene**, and **male** are the more usual. But **ottimo**, **pessimo**, etc., are absolute rather than comparative.

2. **Maggiore** and **minore** usually mean 'older' and 'younger.' The regular forms refer to size.

*3. **Superiore** and **inferiore** are often figurative, the regular forms literal.

*4. **Meglio** is used as an adjective in the predicate after **essere**, and still more widely in familiar speech; similarly **peggio**, but more familiarly.

Scelgo questo ; è il meglio	I choose this ; it is the best
Fra i tiranni dell' Italia moderna,	Among the tyrants of modern Italy
<i>i Borboni</i> erano i peggio	the Bourbons were the worst

118. Subjunctive after Superlative. The subjunctive is required after the superlative and 'only.'

Venezia è la più bella città ch' io abbia mai vista	Venice is the most beautiful city I have ever seen
Il quarto reggimento è il solo che sia partito	The fourth regiment is the only one that has left

119. Comparison of Equality. This is expressed by **tanto** . . . **quanto**, **così** . . . **come**, 'as . . . as,' 'so . . . so.'

Il mio amico è tanto alto quanto mio fratello	My friend is as tall as my brother
Non è così bella come sua sorella	She is not so beautiful as her sister

a. **Tanto** and **così** are more often omitted.

L'argento non è caro quanto l'oro. Silver is not so precious as gold

VOCABULARY

l' America (f.)	America
l' Austria (f.)	Austria
il conquistatore	conqueror
l'eredità (f.)	heritage

l' Inghilterra (f.)	England
il pensiero	thought
la pratica	practice
il preggio	value

lo scrittore	writer	tedesco	German
la Spagna	Spain	vinto	conquered (<i>from vincere, irr.</i>)
la storia	history	così	thus, so, as
lo strumento	instrument	dove	<i>3 sg. pres. indic. of dovere (irr.) must</i>
imporre	(<i>irr.</i>) impose; <i>imponeva, 3 sg. past descr. indic.</i>	leggendo	<i>pres. part. of leggere (irr.) read</i>
ricévere	receive	esprime	<i>3 sg. pres. indic. of esprimere (irr.) express</i>
tenere	(<i>irr.</i>) hold	vede	<i>3 sg. pres. indic. of vedere (irr.) see</i>
solo	only	è via dicendo	and so on, et cetera
spagnuolo	Spanish, Spaniard		
tanto	so, so much, (<i>pl.</i>) so many		

EXERCISE

I

1. La lingua è lo strumento col quale l'uomo esprime i suoi pensieri.
2. Perchè ogni nazione deve tenere in gran pregio la propria lingua?
3. Perchè l'ha ricevuta come sacra eredità dai padri, ed è il più nobile patrimonio di un popolo.
4. Leggendo la storia, si vede come i conquistatori cercarono di imporre ai popoli vinti la propria lingua.
5. Così perderebbero il carattere della nazionalità.
6. Così Roma imponeva la lingua latina, la Spagna la lingua spagnuola, l'Inghilterra la lingua inglese, l'Austria la lingua tedesca, e via dicendo.
7. La lingua spagnuola non è difficile quanto l'inglese; l'inglese è più facile della tedesca.
8. Qual è la più grande fra tutte le nazioni?
9. Gli scrittori pensano più che non parlano.
10. Questo è il solo libro tedesco che si trovi sullo scaffale.
11. Desideriamo che nostra sorella parli inglese, ma le manca la pratica.

II

1. Language is the instrument of the writer.
2. The English language is spoken in the United States.
3. The history of Spain is longer than that of America.
4. Reading it, one sees why

conquerors try to impose their own language on conquered peoples.
 5. Are soldiers greater than writers? 6. The German language is the most difficult of all. 7. The Spaniard would have been a better soldier if he had been better paid. 8. Winter is colder than autumn. 9. My little sister sings more than she talks. 10. My brother and my sisters have returned from Rome, and have brought me many Italian books. 11. This is the greatest war that has ever (*mai*) been. 12. They will leave their books on the shelf; let us look for them. 13. We like our own house; it is larger than yours; it is rather large than beautiful.

LESSON XVI

THE VERB *AVERE*120. The Verb *avere* 'have.'

		INFINITIVE			
PRESENT				PERFECT	
avere				avere	avuto
avendo		PARTICIPLE		avendo	avuto
		INDICATIVE			
PRESENT				PAST DESCRIPTIVE	
hò	abbiamo			avevo	avevamo
hai	avete			avevi	avevate
ha	hanno			aveva	avēvano
		FUTURE		PAST ABSOLUTE	
avrò	avremo			ebbi	avemmo
avrai	avrete			avesti	aveste
avrà	avranno			ebbe	ēbbero
PRESENT PERFECT				SECOND PAST PERFECT	
hò avuto, <i>etc.</i>				ebbi avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
PAST PERFECT				FUTURE PERFECT	
avévo avuto, <i>etc.</i>				avrò avuto, <i>etc.</i>	

PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT	
avrēi	avrēmmo	avrēi	avuto, <i>etc.</i>
avrēsti	avrēste		
avrēbbe	avrēbbero		
IMPERATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		abbiāmo	
abbi	abbiāte		
abbia	ābbiano		
PRESENT		PRESENT PERFECT	
abbia	abbiamo	abbia	avuto, <i>etc.</i>
abbia	abbiāte		
abbia	ābbiano		
PAST		PAST PERFECT	
avessi	avēssimo	avessi	avuto, <i>etc.</i>
avessi	avēste		
avesse	avēssero		

a. The irregular past absolute of **avere** may be taken as the model of all irregular past absolutes. It will be noticed that three forms are regular: the second person singular and the first and second plural. For example **leggere** 'read':

lessi	leggēmmo
leggēsti	leggēste
lesse	lēssero

b. Of very many verbs the past participle also is irregular, and their principal parts are the infinitive, the first person singular of the past absolute, and the past participle, as **leggere**, **lessi**, **letto**.

121. The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **avere**.

a. The most important intransitives conjugated with **avere** are—

bollire	boil	passeggiare	take a walk	tremare	tremble
dimorare	dwell	sbadigliare	yawn	viaggiare	travel
dormire	sleep	starnutire	sneeze		

*b. Certain other verbs, such as *tacere* 'be silent' and *vivere* 'live,' may be conjugated with either: with *avere* when the idea of action predominates, with *essere* when the idea of condition is more important.

122. The past participle with *avere* usually agrees with a preceding direct object. Agreement is *required* when the object is a conjunctive pronoun or a relative.

Ho scritto (or scritte) due lettere	I have written two letters
Ne ho scritte due	I have written two of them
Veda questi cavalli. Li abbiamo comprati oggi	See these horses. We have bought them to-day
La catena che mi ha prestata	The chain you lent me

123. Special Uses of *avere*. *a. Avere da* with the infinitive means 'have to.'

Ho da scrivere tre lettere } I have to write three letters
 Ho tre lettere da scrivere }

b. Idioms with *avere*:

Aver caldo	To be too warm
Aver freddo	To be too cold
Aver fame	To be hungry
Aver sete	To be thirsty
Aver sonno	To be sleepy
Aver paura (di)	To be afraid (of)
Aver soggezione	To be nervous, embarrassed
Aver ragione	To be right
Aver torto	To be wrong, be in the wrong
Aver fúria, aver fretta	To be in a hurry
Ha fame?	Are you hungry?
Avévanlo sonno?	Were they sleepy?
Non ho freddo	I am not cold
Ha ragione	You are right
Abbiamo paura	We are afraid
Ho fúria	I am in a hurry

124. The Conjunctive *ne*. *a.* 'Some' or 'any,' when pronouns (cf. 77), are translated by *ne*. It means also 'of it,' 'of them,' and is equivalent to *di* plus a conjunctive.

Avete delle mele? No, non *ne* ho Have you any apples? No, I have not any

b. *Né* must be used in Italian when its equivalent would not be required in English; and it is sometimes logically pleonastic in Italian, though rhetorically emphatic. Cf. 100, *d.*

Ha dei libri tedeschi?	Have you any German books?
Sì, <i>né</i> ho. <i>Né</i> ho molti	Yes, I have. I have a great many
Di quest' affare <i>né</i> sai nulla?	Do you know anything about this matter?

c. The past participle agrees with *ne* (cf. 122).

VOCABULARY

il biglietto ticket	dimenticare (di) forget (to)
la classe class	leggere, lessi, letto read
la guardia guard, conductor	mettere, misi, messo put
il minuto minute	permettere (di), permisi, permesso permit
il posto place, room	prendere, presi, preso take
lo scompartimento compartment	scrivere, scrisse, scritto write
il treno train	detto p.p. of dire (irr.) say
fra between, among; (<i>with a measure of time</i>) in, within	prego, niènte, you're welcome, don't mention it
pronto ready; all aboard	

EXERCISE

I

1. Quando si parte per Roma? Alle nove. 2. Mi compri un libro, perchè desidero di leggere in treno. 3. Quando parte il primo treno per Firenze? Fra dieci minuti. 4. Non dimettichi di scrivermi. 5. Ha i biglietti, Giovanni? Ne ho due; mi manca un biglietto. 6. Quando una persona dice — Grazie — si risponde

sempre — Prego! — o — Niente! 7. Desidera ch' io prenda i biglietti? Li metterò in tasca. 8. Ha trovato i biglietti che aveva perduto? 9. Li ho trovati in tasca. Eccoli. 10. È questo uno scompartimento di prima classe? 11. Sì, ma non c' è più posto, Signora. Mi permetta di offrirle il mio. 12. S' accomodi, Signora.— Grazie tante! — Prego! 13. Quando si entra in uno scompartimento dove ci sono delle persone, si dice — Permesso — o — Con permesso. 14. Si ha da prendere i biglietti prima di partire. 15. Si dice — Due biglietti di prima classe. 16. La guardia dice — Pronti! — e il treno parte.

II

(Translate the present perfect by the present perfect, the simple past by the past absolute.)

1. Please give me three first-class tickets to [for] Rome.
2. If I had put my tickets in my pocket, I should not have lost them.
3. My train will arrive in five minutes.
4. I read your letter; we did not read our books in the train.
5. If I had my letters, I should not forget to read them.
6. He took their tickets and put them in his pocket; he did not permit me to take them.
7. Have you written the letters? I have written two of them.
8. We had our books in the compartment, but we forgot to read them.
9. Have you any roses? Yes, I have. I have bought six to-day.
10. The English writer who lives in Florence wrote these books. Have you read them?
11. May I enter? Is there room in the compartment?
12. The conductor would have said "All aboard!" in two minutes, and we had not yet found a place.
13. They had to buy some German books at the bookseller's, but he did not have any.
14. Did we put? I permitted. You did not read. They wrote. Did he read? Thou tookest. They took.
15. Are you not too hot? He is in the wrong. We were sleepy. I am in a hurry.

LESSON XVII

TWO CONJUNCTIVE OBJECTS

125. Two Conjunctive Objects. *a.* When two conjunctive objects, direct and indirect, are governed by the same verb, the indirect (except *loro*) precedes the direct. Both precede the verb (cf. 95, *a*), or are appended to it (cf. 95, *b*).

Cè ne da	He gives us some
Vè lò mostra	He shows it to you
Fàccelo vedere	Show it to us
Lè si avvicinò	He approached her

i. **Loro**, as always, follows the verb.

Comprò un cane, e lò da loro He buys a dog, and gives it to them

b. When immediately followed by *lo*, *li*, *la*, *le*, or *ne*,

i. **Mi**, **ti**, **ci**, **vi**, and **si** change *i* to *e*, and become respectively *mè*, *tè*, *cè*, *vè*, and *sè*.

Tè li porta	He carries them to you
Mi mostra una rosa e mè la dà	He shows me a rose and gives it to me
Prende il cappello e sè lò mette	He takes his hat and puts it on

ii. **Gli** and **le** alike become **gliè**, and are joined with the following conjunctive to make one word.

Finii la lèttera e glièla spedii I finished the letter and sent it to her, or to him

126. Conjunctive Adverbs. *a.* **Ci**, **vi**, and **ne** are adverbs as well as pronouns, **ci** and **vi** meaning 'here,' 'there' (of some place already referred to), and **ne** meaning 'thence.' They are conjunctive in character, as they precede the verb (or are appended as enclitics), and are unemphatic.

È stato da suo cugino?	Have you been at your cousin's?
Sì, ne vengo ora	Yes, I am coming from there
Pensava di andarvi io	I was thinking of going there myself
Andiamoci domani	Let us go there to-morrow

1. **Ci** and **vi** are sometimes equivalent to 'at it,' 'to it,' taking the place of **a** plus a conjunctive pronoun of the third person, but seldom used of persons. This use is frequent with verbs which take **a** before their object (cf. 224, *a*).

Pensa al suo paese?	Are you thinking of your country?
Ci penso sempre	I am always thinking of it

2. **Ci** means a place nearer the speaker, but is tending to supersede **vi** in vivid speech.

b. **Ci** and **vi** undergo the same changes as adverbs that they do as pronouns (cf. 125, *b*).

Non ce n'è	There isn't any
Ve ne trovo pochi	I find few of them there

*c. Rules for position of these adverbs are intricate :

1. **Ci** follows **mi**, **ti**, **vi**, and precedes **si** and those forms which begin with **l**.

Mi ci abituo	I am accustoming myself to it
Ci si abitua	He is accustoming himself to it
Ce lo trovò	He found it there

2. **Vi** follows **mi**, and precedes other forms.

Mi vi rechero subito	I shall take my way thither at once
Ve lo misero	They put it there

3. **Ne** follows either **ci** or **vi**, and precedes the forms beginning with **l**.

Ce ne andiamo	We are going away
Ne lo tolse	He took it away from there, from him, etc.

127. Certain reflexive verbs take a second conjunctive in certain meanings, as **andārsene** 'go away,' **prēndersela** 'take it ill,' and **avērsela a male** 'be offended.'

Andiāmocene	Let us go away
Andātosene, non tornò più	Having gone, he did not return again
Essēndosela presa	Having taken it ill
Non se l'abbia a male	Do not be offended

VOCABULARY

l'avviso (m.)	sign, notice	accompagnare	accompany
il giornale	newspaper	aspettare	wait, wait for
Londra	London	aver notizie di	receive news from
le notizie	news	avērsela a male	be offended
Parigi	Paris	dare il buon viaggio a	wish a pleasant journey to
lo sportello	ticket window	partire	leave (<i>intr.</i>)
la stazione	railway station	prēndersela	take it ill
il viaggiatore	passenger, traveler	spōrgersi, sporsi, spōrto	lean out
per favore	please	danno 3 pl. pres. ind. of dare (irr.)	give
pericoloso	dangerous		
secondo	second		
a tempo	in time		
terzo	third		

EXERCISE

I

1. Si monta in treno.
2. Tutti si danno il buon viaggio.
3. Il treno parte fra poco: tornerò subito alla stazione.
4. Non bisogna far tardi, se vogliamo arrivarvi a tempo.
5. Non se la prenda.
6. Voglio accompagnarcela.
7. Dove si comprano i biglietti? Allo sportello.
8. Mi dia due biglietti di seconda classe per Parigi.
9. Me li dia subito, per favore.
10. Nei treni italiani c'è sempre un avviso, che dice: *È pericoloso sporgersi.*
11. Ho avuto notizie di un mio amico.
12. La lettera che m'ha scritta è più interessante che lunga.
13. Desidera ch'io gliela legga?
14. Il suo viaggio è

stato pericoloso. 15. Non se l' ha a male ; non me ne ha parlato.
 16. Ha comprato una bellissima villa, e desidera di mostrarmela.
 17. Fermiamoci alla prima stazione per visitarla.

II

1. Let John accompany them to the station. 2. Will he buy the tickets ? Yes, he will buy them, and [will] bring them to us. 3. One buys one's tickets at the ticket-window. 4. Let us return there at once. 5. Our brother will not look for us there, but he will wait for us near the door. 6. Wait a minute. Here are the newspapers I have bought. 7. I will read them to you, if you wish me to read them to you. 8. Don't lean out, Marcellina. 9. Two travelers in the compartment are talking of Paris : they say that it is more beautiful than London. 10. Do not lean out, madam. It is dangerous. 11. He buys a gun and gives it to them. 12. They will show it to her. 13. Having felt offended, he does not wish me to speak to him about it.

LESSON XVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS

128. Irregular Verb : Regular Forms. *a.* Certain parts of all irregular verbs except *essere* are always regular : the past descriptive indicative, past subjunctive, and present participle, the second person plural of the present indicative, and the second person singular and first and second persons plural of the past absolute.

1. In addition, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive, are regular in many irregular verbs, as *rimanere*.

129. The Verb *rimanere* 'remain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *rimanere*, *rimanendo*, *rimango*, *rimarrò*, *rimasi*,
rimasto (*or rimaso*)

	INDICATIVE		PAST DESCRIPTIVE	
	PRESENT		PAST ABSOLUTE	
rimango	rimaniamo, rimanghiamo		rimanevo, <i>etc.</i>	
rimani	rimanete		rimasi	rimanemmo
rimane	rimāngono		rimanēsti	rimaneste
			rimase	rimāsero
	FUTURE		PAST FUTURE	
rimarrò	rimarremo		rimarrei, <i>etc.</i>	
rimarrai	rimarrete			
rimarrà	rimarranno			
	IMPERATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	rimaniamo		PAST	
rimani	rimanete		rimanessi, <i>etc.</i>	
rimanga	rimāngano			
	PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE	
rimanga	rimaniamo			
rimanga	rimaniate			
rimanga	rimāngano			

130. **Principal Parts.** To the three principal parts of regular verbs (cf. 91) must be added, for wholly irregular verbs, the first person singular of the present indicative, of the past absolute, and of the future. But of very many (cf. 120, b) the infinitive, past absolute, and past participle are enough, and the present participle is required only of a few, like *porre*, *ponendo*, or *dire*, *dicendo*, where its stem differs from that of the infinitive. The system of formation is as follows:

a. From the present participle :

1. The past descriptive.
2. The second person plural of the present indicative. EXCEPTIONS : **dire** and **fare**, which have **dite** and **fate**.
3. The second person singular, and first and second plural, of the past absolute. EXCEPTIONS : **dare** and **stare**, which change **a** in the stem to **e** (**d^esti**, **st^emmo**, etc.).
4. The past subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS : **dare** and **stare**, as above.
5. Often, as in **rimanere**, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive.

b. From the first person singular of the present indicative :

1. The third person plural of that tense. EXCEPTIONS : **andare**, **avere**, **dare**, **fare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **vanno**, **hanno**, **danno**, **fanno**, **sanno**, **stanno**.
2. The entire singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS : **avere**, **dare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **abbia**, **dia**, **sappia**, **stia**, and **abbiano**, **diano**, **sappiano**, **stiano**.

NOTE. The other persons of the present indicative and subjunctive may be regular, as in **rimanere**, or not; in any case the first and second plural of the subjunctive follow the first plural of the indicative.

c. From the future, whether regular or irregular, is formed the past future.

d. From the first person singular of the past absolute are formed the third singular and plural of that tense (cf. 120, *a*).

e. The imperative of irregular verbs is identical with the corresponding persons of the present indicative and subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS : **avere**, **sapere**, **valere**, in which it follows wholly the subjunctive; and **andare**, **dare**, **dire**, **fare**, **stare**, which have in the second singular the shortened forms **va'**, **da'**, **di'**, **fa'**, **sta'** (cf. 100, *b*).

NOTE. Only as many parts of a verb will be found in the special vocabularies as are necessary to its conjugation on the principles just explained. If the present and future are omitted, they are regular. If the first person only of the present is given (unless marked *irr.*), then the present indicative and subjunctive are to be conjugated like *rimanere*. Unusual or alternative forms are to be found in the alphabetical list of irregular verbs.

VOCABULARY

il bacio (<i>pl. baci</i>) kiss	inviare send
compagno, -a companion	mandare send, order
il dolce sweetmeat, dessert	parere, paio, parrò, parvi, parso seem, appear
la licenza leave; in licenza on leave	promettere, promisi, promesso promise
Pasqua (<i>f.</i>) Easter	riabbracciare embrace again
dèvi (<i>2 sg. pres. ind. of dovere,</i> <i>irr.</i>) must	vedere, vedrò, vidi, visto see
fa' (<i>2 sg. imper. of fare, irr.</i>) make, have	allegro joyful, happy
mai ever	disperato heartbroken
sta' (<i>2 sg. imper. of stare, irr.</i>) be	dispiacente sorry
vieni (<i>2 sg. imper. of venire</i>)	francese French
	mille a thousand
	sicuro sure, safe

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

PASQUA

il 12 aprile, 1914

Caro Lucio

La mamma è disperata. Come ci avevi promesso, ti s'aspettava tutti per Pasqua; si era sicuri che ti avrebbero mandato in licenza, ed io volevo vederti vestito da soldato. O come mai non ti hanno più mandato? Povero Lucio, anche tu devi essere molto dispiacente!

Il babbo e la mamma ti hanno inviato dei dolci; il giorno di Pasqua sta' allegro coi tuoi compagni, e ricordati di noi.

Fa' buona Pasqua, e vieni presto presto ; ci par mille anni a tutti di riabbracciarti.

Tanti baci del tuo

piccolo fratello

Mino.

II

1. The teacher showed me the letter which the pupil had written.
2. What is the name of the little boy who wrote the letter ? His name is Mino.
3. Have you any sweetmeats, Mino ? No, but my brother has promised to buy me some.
4. These are the most beautiful roses I have ever seen.
5. They saw Lucio (on) Easter Day ; he had returned on leave to his brother's.
6. Do you wish some water ? Yes, bring me a glass (of it).
7. Here is my fountain pen ; make use of it, pray [pure].
8. If I had made use of it, I should have feared to [di] lose it.
9. Return home, my brother ; it seems to me a thousand years till I see you again [rivedere].
10. If they returned to London, they would remain there six weeks.
11. My sisters wish me to remain in Florence, because they will soon return thither.
12. If we should see some French books at the bookseller's we should not forget to send you some.

LESSON XIX

THE VERBS DARE, SAPERE, VOLERE

131. The Verb *dare* (cf. 130, e) 'give.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **dare, dando, dō, darò, dētti or diędi, dato**

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
dō diamo	dētti, diędi	dia diamo
dai date	desti	dia diate
dà danno	dētte, dięde	dia diano
	dēttero, diędero	

a.* Idioms with **dare (for reference) :

dare addosso a to hold to blame

dare a fare a to give trouble, make work or bother for

dare ad intendere a to make (one) believe

darci dentro to guess right

darsi d' attorno to look about, try every means

dar del tu, del Lei, etc., to use **tu**, or **Lei**

dar fuoco a to set on fire

dare in una risata, in singulti to burst into laughter, into sobbing

dar la buona notte, il buon giorno to say good night, good day

dar la mano a to shake hands with

dar luogo a to give rise to

dar nel secentismo to fall into seventeenth-century affectations

dar noia a to disturb, annoy

dar nell' occhio to be conspicuous

dar pensiero a to cause worry to

darsi pensiero to worry, feel worried

dar retta a to heed

dar sull' Arno to face on the Arno

132. The Verb *sapere* 'know.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **sapere, sapendo, so, saprò, seppi, saputo**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

so	sappiamo
sai	sapete
sa	sanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

sappia	sappiamo
sappia	sappiate
sappia	sappiano

a. Special meanings of **sapere** :

- When followed directly by the infinitive, it means 'be able,' in the sense of to know how, to have learned how.

Non sa leggere né scrivere

He cannot read or write

- It may mean 'learn of.'

Ho saputo la cosa stamane

I learned of the matter this morning

3. Followed by **di**, it means 'smack of' or 'know about.'

Calamecca, nome che sa di saracino	Calamecca, a name which smacks of the Saracen
Di storia patria ne sai nulla?	Do you know anything about the history of your country?

4. **Saperne di** means 'have to do with,' 'hear of,' 'put up with.'

La Francia non volle mai saperne di una tassa di questo gènere	France would never hear of a tax of this kind
---	--

133. The Verb *volere* 'will,' 'wish,' 'intend.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volere**, volendo, voglio, vorrà, volli, voluto

PRESENT INDICATIVE

voglio	vogliamo
vuoi	volete
vuole	vogliono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

voglia	vogliamo
voglia	vogliate
voglia	vogliano

a. Special meanings of **volere**:

1. With **ci**, in the third person, it means 'be necessary.'

Quanto denaro ci vuole ?	How much money is needed ?
Ci vorranno almeno quindici anni	It will take at least fifteen years

2. **Volere bene a** means 'love.'

I bambini vogliono bene ai genitori	Children love their parents
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

134. **Uses of da.** **Da** with a measure of time means 'for.' The present tense is used in this construction to translate the English present perfect (cf. 139, a).

Da quando abita a Livorno?	How long have you been living in Leghorn?
Da undici anni	For eleven years

VOCABULARY

l' ingegno (<i>m.</i>)	talent, brains	andò (<i>3 sg. p. abs. of andare, irr.</i>)	go
la lotta	struggle	ādere , arsi, arso	burn
la minaccia	threat	attrarre , attraçendo, attraggo	(<i>irr.</i>),
la minięra	mine	attrarrò , attrassi, attratto	draw,
l' ōpera (<i>f.</i>)	work		attract
la parte	share, part, side	dotare	endow
la pietra	stone	esiliare	exile
giōvane	young	morire, muoio	(<i>irr.</i>), morrò, morii,
ineſauribile	inexhaustible	mōrto	die
nuovo	new	nāscere, nacqui, nato	be born
prezioso	precious	peregrinare	wander, go on pilgrimage
vivo	alive	prevalegere, prevalgo	(<i>irr.</i>), prevarrò,
qualora	whenever (<i>w. subj.</i>)	prevalsi, prevaluto	prevail
seicento	six hundred	riparare	take refuge
in età di	at the age of	scoprire, scopersi, scoperto	discover; take off one's hat

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

DANTE ALIGHIERI

Dante Alighieri, il più grande dei poeti italiani, nacque in Firenze da nobile famiglia nell' anno 1265. Dotato di straordinario ingegno, si diede con ardore agli studi e, giovane ancora, incominciò a poetare. L' amor di patria lo attrasse nelle lotte, che fervevano allora in Firenze tra i Bianchi ed i Neri, e prese parte ad alcune battaglie.

Ma, prevalendo i Neri, il sommo poeta fu esiliato dalla patria con minaccia di essere arso vivo, qualora fosse tornato, e andò peregrinando per l' Italia. Finalmente riparò a Ravenna, dove morì il giorno 14 settembre dell' anno 1321 in età di 56 anni.

Scrisse molte opere; ma il suo lavoro più rinomato è il poema chiamato Divina Commedia, che, da seicento anni circa, gl' Italiani

e gli studiosi di tutto il mondo leggono e ammirano, scoprendovi ogni giorno nuove e sublimi bellezze, come in una miniera inesauribile di pietre preziose. Gl' Italiani dicono che Dante è l'uomo più straordinario che Dio abbia mandato sulla Terra.

II

1. We learned the news yesterday.
2. They learned it this morning.
3. How much time will it take?
4. It will take two months.
5. The Italian authors were born in Florence.
6. The Whites drew Dante into the struggle.
7. I found your newspaper, and gave it to them.
8. We did not take part in the battle.
9. We burned his books.
10. He will wander many years, and will die in Ravenna.
11. The two Americans died in Paris.
12. Who discovered America?
13. The young Italian will show you a precious stone.
14. We gave it to him.
15. John will give it to his sister.
16. The Spaniard burned their house.

LESSON XX

THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN. THE VERB VENIRE

135. The Disjunctive Pronoun. The disjunctive pronoun differs from the conjunctive in that it is not, like the latter, inseparable from the verb. It has two cases:

a. The *nominative* (cf. 65), which is used as the subject of the verb, when expressed (cf. 63, *a*).

b. The *objective*, which has various uses. Its forms are as follows:

mę me	nōi us
tę thee	vōi you
lui him	łoro them (<i>m. and f.</i>)
lej her	
sę (<i>refl.</i>) himself, herself, themselves (<i>m. and f.</i>)	

136. The Objective Case of the disjunctive pronoun is used—

a. After prepositions (cf. 222, *a*).

Vanno al museo. Andiamo con loro	They are going to the museum. Let us go with them
Venga a prendere il tè da me alle cinque	Come and have tea with me at five
La bambina scrisse la lettera da sè	The little girl wrote the letter all herself

i. Instead of *con me*, *con te*, and *con se*, may be used the forms *meco*, *toco*, and *seco*. *Seco* is sometimes equivalent, where there is no ambiguity, to *con lui* or *con lei*.

Vò a casa. Vién *meco* I am going home, come with me

b. Hence, after comparatives.

Il suo fratello minore è più alto His younger brother is taller than
di lui he

c. As a substitute for the conjunctive,

i. Where there are two objects in the same construction.

I nostri genitori amano *te e me* Our parents love you and me
Parla a lui ed a noi He speaks to him and to us

ii. For clearness, emphasis, or contrast.

L'hanno dato proprio a *me* They have given it to me myself,
to me in person. (The unemphatic form would be *Me* [or
Mi] lo hanno dato)

Lodo *te*, Giannetta, e biasmo lui. I praise you, Giannetta, and reprove him

(*a*) Sometimes the conjunctive form is retained redundantly:

A *me* non mi piace l'arte moderna I do not care for modern art

d. In the third person, where the other persons would take the nominative case,

Venuti *loro*, cominciammo a parlare di politica When they had come, we began to talk of politics
 Vivente *me*, non lo farai You shall not do it while I live

But

Essēndoci io, non vōllerò parlarne I being there, they refused to speak of it

*i. The disjunctive reflexive, *sè*, can of course be used only when it represents the same person as the subject.

Va da *sè* It goes without saying (of itself)

But (since 'Rembrandt' is not the subject)

Un ritratto di Rembrandt, fatto da lui medēsimo A portrait of Rembrandt painted by himself

1. When reciprocal, *sè* is replaced by *loro*.

Non s'accōrdano fra *loro* They do not agree among themselves

2. *Sè* loses its accent before *stesso*.

Non vōlle mai parlare di *sè* stesso He would never talk of himself

137. The subjunctive is used after *crēdere* meaning 'think' or 'believe.'

Credo che *pioya* I think it is raining
 Non crēde che ci sia io He does not believe I am here

138. The Verb *venire* 'come.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *venire*, *venendo*, *vēngō*, *verrō*, *vēnni*, *venuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

vēngō	veniamo
vēnni	venite
vīene	vēngono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

vēnga	veniamo
vēnga	veniate
vēnga	vēngano

a. Special uses of **venire**:

1. **Venire** is often used instead of **essere** to construct the passive (cf. 97, *a*, 1).

Questi desiderî non vénnero compiuti These desires were not fulfilled

2. **Venire** takes **a** before an infinitive.

Vénga a vedermi alle quattro Come and see me at four

3. **Venire** is used for **andare**, when motion is with or towards the second person.

Verrò, verranno, da Lei domani

I shall come, they will come, to your house to-morrow

VOCABULARY

il calzino sock

augurare wish, wish well

il caporale corporal

crédere think, believe, have an opinion

il cartellino sheet, label

impostare post, mail (impôsto)

il fazzoletto handkerchief

lodare praise (lôdo)

la fotografia photograph

passare pass, pass as

il francobollo postage stamp

pensare think, reflect; pensare a

la lana wool

think of, have in mind

il nome name (given)

risparmiare save

il pacco (*pl.* pacchi) package

tenere, tengo (*irr.* like **venire**),

il principio beginning

terrò, tenni, tenuto hold

appena hardly

affettuoso affectionate

costaggiù down there near you

lontano distant

dunque then, well

postale postal

insieme together

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

NATALE

il 22 dicembre

Caro fratello,

il babbo e la mamma mi hanno detto: scrivi tu a Lucio. Ma come fare che appena so tenere la penna in mano? Ho pregato la signora maestra di aiutarmi, e fra lei e me si è messa insieme questa letterina.

Dunque: a nome di tutti di famiglia ti auguro buon Natale e buon anno.

Riceverai un pacco postale: il babbo ci ha messo i dolci, la mamma i fazzoletti, la Gigina i calzini di lana che ti ha fatti da sè, ed io un bel libro, che ti ho comprato con i denari che risparmio alla scuola coi cartellini dei francobolli.

Sta' allegro il giorno di Natale: noi penseremo a te che sei costaggìù a Tripoli, tanto lontano da noi; ma anche tu pensa a noi, che ti vogliamo bene.

È vero che sei passato caporale? allora fatti la fotografia, e mandacela.

Tanti baci da tutti, un abbraccio dal tuo

aff.^{mo} fratello

Mino

II

1. We shall think about our family on Christmas Day.
2. Shall you think about yours?
- I am always thinking of it.
3. Buy ten postage-stamps for me, and mail these letters for him.
4. I have mailed them. Many thanks. Don't mention it.
5. What was there in the postal package that Mino's brother received?
6. Mino's brother found in it six handkerchiefs and some woolen socks.
7. Mino says his little sister has made the socks all by herself.
8. Is his sister younger than I?
9. The teacher would not praise

the letters which the pupils had written. 10. Mino hardly knew how to hold the pen in his hand, and asked the teacher to help him. 11. Between him and me a letter has been put together. 12. My friend will come with us, but his brothers have returned with them. 13. We shall wish them Merry Christmas and Happy New Year. 14. Does the teacher praise you or him, Giannino? 15. Give me the gun, please. No, I will not give it to you, but to him. 16. We think our brother and his friend will come on Easter Day.

LESSON XXI

SPECIAL USES OF TENSES. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT. INVERSION

139. Present Indicative. *a.* With a measure of time after *da*, and sometimes in temporal clauses with *dacchè*, the present indicative is used to translate the English present perfect expressing an action begun in the past but continuing into the present (cf. 134).

Siamo in Italia da sei mesi	We have been (and still are) in Italy for six months
Dacchè sono qui	Since I have been here

i. If the action, begun in the past, was continuing at a later date in the past, the English past perfect is to be translated by the past descriptive.

Era ammalato da una settimana	He had been ill a week (and still was so at the time of which I speak)
Combattevamo da più di sei ore	We had been fighting for more than six hours

b. It is used, as in English, of the immediate future.

Parto domani	I leave to-morrow
--------------	-------------------

*c. For vividness of narration it is used, as in Latin and some other languages, for the past; this is known as the *historical present*.

Trovandomi vicino a una stazione,
völli fare una corsa per la strada
sotterranea. Scendo due o tre
scale, e mi trovo tutt' a un
tratto sbalzato dal giorno alla
notte

Happening near a station, I decided
to take a ride on the under-
ground railway. I descend two
or three steps, and find myself
suddenly transported out of day
into night

140. Past Tenses of the Indicative. a. These are not susceptible of really logical analysis. The **past absolute** describes a past action, and translates the English simple past.

Ricevei una lettera ieri
Morì a Parigi nel 1860

I received a letter yesterday
He died in Paris in 1860

b. The **present perfect** may be used —

1. Generally speaking, to translate the corresponding English tense, expressing an action completed within a period that has not yet expired.

Abbiamo speso tanto denaro
Molti soldati sono arrivati questa
settimana

We have spent much money
Many soldiers have arrived this
week

2. For an action completed since midnight.

Stamane ho scritte tre lettere This morning I wrote three letters

3. To describe an action which happened at an unstated time in the past, whose consequences extend into the present.

Ho perduto il mio orologio
L'Ariosto ha scritto l'*Orlando
Furioso*

I have lost my watch
Ariosto wrote the *Orlando Furioso*

Colombo ha scoperto l'America

Columbus discovered America

NOTE. Outside of Tuscany the distinction between past absolute and present perfect is not carefully enough observed, and foreigners who have studied French are in danger of using the present perfect too much. Still, usage varies with mental attitude, vivid interest, etc.

c. The past descriptive is used to express incomplete or habitual action; to describe an action that was taking place when something else occurred; and in description.

Chiacchieravano	They were chatting
Noi si andava spesso al teatro l'inverno	We used to go often to the theater in winter
Scriveva quando entrai	He was writing when I entered
Un velo nero cadeva dalle due parti	A black veil descended on both sides
Il tempo era cattivo	The weather was bad
Il castello era a cavaliere di una valle angusta e serviva di confine ai due stati	The castle bestrode a narrow valley, and acted as boundary to the two states

i. Cf. 139, a, i.

*2. It is often found substituted for the past future perfect (especially in *bisognare*, *convenire*, *dovere*, *potere*) and sometimes for the past subjunctive.

Sarei andato se potevo	are all equivalent to	Sarei andato se avessi potuto
Andavo se avessi potuto		I should have gone if I had been able
Andavo se potevo		

d. The past perfect translates the English past perfect except where the second past perfect is required (cf. e).

Mentre il frate stava così meditando, Renzo era comparso sull'uscio; ma visto il padre soprappensiero e le donne che facevano cenno di non disturbarlo, si fermò sulla soglia

While the friar stood thus in meditation, Renzo had appeared at the door; but seeing the holy father in thought, and the women making signs not to disturb him, he stopped on the threshold

i. Past tenses of *nascere*. 'Was born' is variously translated: *è nato*, of a person still living; *era nato*, of one recently dead; *nacque*, of one long dead.

e. The second past perfect translates the past perfect —

1. In temporal clauses beginning with **appena**, **quando**, **tostochè**, etc., immediately followed by a principal clause whose verb is in the past absolute.

Quando ebbe serrato l'uscio dietro
a sè, vide un uomo ritirarsi pian
piano, strisciando il muro

When he **had locked** the door behind
him, he **saw** a man withdrawing
very softly, skirting the wall

2. In such phrases as this:

Fra cinque minuti li ebbe finiti

He had them finished in five minutes

NOTE. To temporal clauses with either the past perfect or second past perfect, is very often preferred in actual usage the absolute construction with the participle (cf. 195).

141. The Future Tense.

The future tense is used —

a. Contrary to English usage,

1. To indicate possibility or probability; when the action referred to is past, the future becomes future perfect.

L'avrò perduto

I **must** have lost it

Saranno le otto

It **must**, *or may*, be eight o'clock

Sarà un' illusione, sarà vero

It **may** be true, it **may** be an illusion

2. To indicate actual future time after **quando**, **se**, etc.

Quando la vedrò, glielo dirò

When I **see** her, I shall tell her so

*3. As an alternative to the present subjunctive,

a. To indicate possibility.

Bada, che ti brucerai

Take care, you **may burn** yourself

b. When the dependent clause refers to future time (169, i. n. 1).

Credo che verranno

I think they will come

b. As in English,

*1. Instead of the imperative, in a general precept or when the action is not to be performed immediately.

Amerai il prossimo tuo come te stesso Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself

142. The Past Future. *a.* The past future is used like the English forms with *should*, *would*, *might*, to express what is uncertain or indefinite in the principal clause.

Potrēbbero smarrirsi	They might lose their way
Non mi farēbbe spēcie	It would not surprise me
Si dirēbbe che fosse pazzo	One would say he was mad

b. To express future time in relation to the past tense of a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

Dice che farà, diceva che farebbe,	He says he will, he said he would,
il giro del mondo	make the tour of the world

c. When the statement made has failed to come true, the past future perfect is required.

Dissero che sarebbero venuti	They said they would come (but they did not)
------------------------------	--

c. In deferential or polite requests.

Vorrei vedere i suoi quadri	I should like to see his pictures
-----------------------------	-----------------------------------

d. In a statement reported by hearsay, on the authority of another.

Secondo i nostri dispacci, la Germania avrebbe dichiarato la guerra alla Francia	According to our telegrams, Germany has declared war upon France
--	--

e. In the conclusion of conditional sentences (cf. 93).

NOTE. In general, the past future perfect is often used in Italian where English would employ the simple past future.

Ciascuno studiava il luogo dove avrebbe dovuto cacciare la baionetta	Each one considered the point where he should have to drive his bayonet
--	---

***143. Sequence of Tenses.** If the present or future of the independent clause be changed to a past tense, the present

of the dependent clause is changed to the past descriptive, the present perfect to the past perfect.

a. If the dependent clause states a general truth, the present tense may stand.

Galileo said that the world moves
muove

*144. Agreement of Verb with Subject. *a.* If there is more than one subject, the verb is plural.

1. But if there is close alliance between them, a singular verb may be admitted.

2. Two or more singular subjects of the third person connected by **o** take a singular verb.

L' uno o l' altro verrà senza fallo One or other of them will come without fail

3. Singular subjects connected by **con** or **nè** may take the verb in the singular or plural.

b. If the subjects are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second, with the second in preference to the third.

Lo duca ed io per quel cammino
ascoso Entrammo The leader and I entered upon
that secret way

Tu e lui siete dalla mia You and he are on my side

c. The verb of a relative clause agrees in person and number with the antecedent.

Voi, che intendendo il terzo ciel You who by understanding move
movete the third heaven

d. Collective nouns take a plural verb usually, if followed by a plural noun in a phrase with **di**.

La maggior parte degli Italiani desideravano la libertà The majority of the Italians wished for liberty

***145. Inversion of Verb and Subject.** The subject frequently follows the verb in Italian, there being no hard and fast rule about it. Such inversion may occur —

a. In interrogative sentences (cf. 62, b), unless beginning with an interrogative pronoun.

b. With impersonal verbs, especially with the partitive.

Ci mancano dieci minuti alle otto
Ve ne ha tanti

c. For emphasis or contrast.

L'ha detto anche lei

S'egli mi parlava una lingua che io non capivo, io potevo bene parlargli una lingua che non capisse lui

She said so too

If he spoke to me in a language I did not understand, I might well speak to him in a language he would not understand

d. With participles in the absolute construction (cf. 136, *h*).

Parlando tu, tutti stanno attenti

When you talk, every one gives
heed

e. In exhortations, wishes, or imprecations.

Ci fossi tu!

If you were only here!

Lo ricompensi Iddio!

May God reward him!

f. In relative clauses and indirect questions.

Le mostrerò il gioiello che m' ha dato lo zio	I'll show you the jewel my uncle gave me
Domando dove sono le seconde classi	I ask where the second-class places are

g. In adverbial clauses of time or place.

Dal fondo della escavazione cen- trale si partono le gallerie secondarie	From the end of the central excavation start the secondary galleries
Nel 1817 capitò a Venezia un viaggiatore inglese	In 1817 there happened to come to Venice an English traveler

h. With verbs which take the dative of the person.

<i>Le</i> dispiace la notizia	The news causes her pain
<i>Gli</i> tremavano le labbra	His lips trembled

i. When the subject or predicate has long modifying clauses, which should logically be placed near it.

Quale uomo fosse il Thouar, quanto l'Italia gli debba, come in lui s'accoppiasse alla lucidità della mente la bontà del cuore, dice in questo volume il biografo con autorità che non è dato ad alcuno di pareggiare	What kind of man Thouar was, how much Italy owes him, how in him goodness of heart was united to clearness of mind, the biographer tells in this volume with an authority which it is given to no one else to equal
--	---

j. In general, in narrative style, and in conversation, to avoid pedantry.

Venne subito la disfatta di Novara	The defeat of Novara came soon after
È morto il papa	The pope is dead

k. The subject may follow both verb and predicate nominative.

Era presidente del Consiglio Mās- simo d' Azeglio	Massimo d' Azeglio was President of the Council
--	--

VOCABULARY

l' allodola (<i>f.</i>) lark	agguntare possess oneself of
il brano scrap, fragment; fare a brani tear to pieces	appollaiarsi roost, lodge
la civiltà civilization	avventarsi (a) fall (upon)
il falco (<i>pl.</i> -chi) hawk, falcon	cacciare hunt, drive out
la fatica (<i>pl.</i> -che) fatigue	succhiare suck
il nonno grandfather	dopochè (<i>conj.</i>) after
il pezzo piece	dovesse <i>3 sg. p. subj. of</i> dovere
il resto remainder, rest	fecero <i>3 pl. p. abs. of</i> fare
il risorgimento resurrection	già already
il secolo century	nonostante che (<i>with subj.</i>) not- withstanding that
lo straniero stranger, alien	per uno apiece
il suolo soil	qualche some (<i>indef. adj. w. sg. n.</i>)
altro other	sotto under
	via (<i>adv.</i>) away

EXERCISE

I

UN PO' DI STORIA DEL RISORGIMENTO ITALIANO

Nonostante che la nostra Italia dovesse essere sacra per gli uomini di tutto il mondo dopochè da essa avevano imparato le arti, le scienze, le industrie e la civiltà sotto tutte le forme, gli stranieri, in altri tempi, l' hanno sempre guardata come i falchi guardano le allodole: per avventarcisi, per farla a brani e per agguntarsene un pezzo per uno.

E disgraziatamente per noi, non si contentarono di guardarla, ma fecero anche il resto.

Voi, ragazzi italiani, avrete già qualche idea di quello che i vostri nonni e i vostri babbi hanno fatto per cacciar via dal nostro suolo i vampiri che da secoli vi s'erano appollaiati per succhiargli il sangue.

Ora i vampiri se ne sono andati. Ma quante fatiche, quanti pericoli e quanti morti!

II

(Involves 139, 140, 141, 142)

1. The duke possessed himself of the state. 2. If many Italians had not fought for their country, they would not have driven out the alien from their soil. 3. He read my letter after I had written it for the second time. 4. Your grandfathers drove out the strangers from Italy, because they had sucked her blood for centuries. 5. According to the letter I received this morning, my mother has returned to Paris. 6. This is the shortest letter I have ever received from her. 7. The palace of the stranger was larger than the house which was near it. 8. Hawks fall upon the other birds. 9. The Spaniard said he would come before noon, but he has not yet arrived. 10. Where is my umbrella? I must have left it in that compartment. 11. We were talking of John's pupil when he entered. 12. We used to see her every week last winter, but we have not seen her this year. 13. When he had bought the tickets, he put them in his pocket. 14. When I arrive at my grandfather's I shall find the others there.

LESSON XXII

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *ANDARE*

146. The Definite Article. The definite article is used far more in Italian than in English. It is used where it would not be in English —

- a. Before the possessive adjective (cf. 107, 108).
- b. Before abstract nouns and nouns denoting a whole class (cf. 73, a).
- c. Before family names of men; often, especially to imply familiarity or affection, before given names of women; rarely before given names of men, when referring to a character

or to the man's works; sometimes before the surnames of women, to indicate fame or familiarity.

Il Tasso passò sette anni in prigione a Ferrara	Tasso spent seven years in prison at Ferrara
La Lauretta è una brava bambina	Laura is a capable little girl
L' Amlēto del Shakespeare	Shakespeare's Hamlet
Ha molto studiato il Dante	He has studied Dante (the works of Dante) a great deal
La pīccola Bugiani	The little Bugiani girl
La Duše	Duse, the great actress

1. When men's surnames, as Garibaldi's, are in very familiar and affectionate use, the article would be an affectation.

d. Before names of continents, countries, and provinces; and names of lakes, islands, mountains, and rivers (except **Arno**).

L' Australia è molto lontana dall' Europa	Australia is very far from Europe
Viva l' Italia !	Long live Italy !

1. After **in** meaning 'in' or 'to' a country it is omitted with names ending in **a** (unless modified).

Resteremo tutta l'estate **in** Italia We shall remain all summer in Italy

But

Stetti due mesi nel Belgio	I stayed two months in Belgium
È mai stato nel Giappone?	Have you ever been in Japan?
Avēvano passato l'inverno nella Francia meridionale	They had spent the winter in southern France

2. It is omitted likewise after **di**, when preposition and noun are equivalent to an adjective of nationality.

Il re d' Inghilterra	The king of England, the English king
Vini di Francia	French wines

3. A few names of cities require the article, such as **l'Aia** 'the Hague,' **il Cairo** 'Cairo,' **la Spëzia** 'Spezia,' etc.

4. Among names of islands which do not take the article are **Crëta** 'Crete,' **Cipro** 'Cyprus,' **Rödi** 'Rhodes.'

e. Instead of the possessive: with parts of the body or clothing, or some names of relatives; in general, where the idea of possession is intimate and there cannot be ambiguity (cf. 109); sometimes with **ne** to translate 'its' (cf. 107, c).

Si levò l'impermeabile	He took off his raincoat
I capelli gli scendevano fin sulle spalle	His hair fell down to his shoulders
Come sta la mamma?	How is your mother?

1. Likewise after **avere**, of personal characteristics.

Egli ha gli occhi azzurri	He has blue eyes
Ella ha le mani piccole	She has small hands

*2. In poetic usage this may be in an adverbial accusative construction.

Poggiate il ginocchio allo scudo	Leaning their knees against their shields
----------------------------------	---

f. Before the number of the year or the hour, or the name of a particular month:

Il Petrarca nacque nel 1304	Petrarch was born in 1304
Verrò da Lei alle cinque	I shall come to your house at five
Nell' ottobre dell' anno scorso	In October of last year

g. Distributively,

1. In expressing measure.

Ho pagato questa seta cinque lire il metro	I paid five francs a meter for this silk
--	---

2. With days of the week, to mean 'every.'

La mia maestra d' italiano viene da me il mercoledì	My Italian teacher comes to me on Wednesdays, or every Wednesday
---	---

a. Without article, the name of a day of the week may be understood to refer to the last or the next one.

Lo vidi lunedì

I saw him on Monday, last Monday

b. Before a title followed by a proper name.

È arrivata la regina Elena nel suo yacht Queen Helen arrived in her yacht

È in casa la Signora Casagrande? Is Mrs. Casagrande at home?

c. Before any other part of speech used as a noun.

Mi duole il dirlo

It pains me to say it

Rifiutò di dirmi il perchè

He refused to tell me the reason

Pensava con grande sgomento al
come avrei fatto a pagareI thought with great anxiety of
how I should manage to pay

d. In constructing the superlative degree (cf. 116).

*k. In a number of idiomatic phrases :

Dare il buon giorno

To say good morning

Dire le bugie

To tell lies

Fare il Natale

To keep Christmas

Fare le scuse

To make excuses

1. Many such phrases take the feminine article alone, with a noun, presumably *cosa*, understood. (Or this may be considered the feminine conjunctive pronoun, replacing *la cosa*.)

Averla con

To have a grudge against

Darla vinta a

To surrender

Dirselo con

To be congenial to

Dirsi schietta

To speak frankly

Farla da padrone

To act arrogantly, play the master

Farla finita

To make an end of it

Io la veggoo brutta

It looks bad to me

Legarsela al dito

To hold a grudge

Saperla lunga

To know all about it

147. The Definite Article is Omitted —

a. In the vocative, and after a pronominal adjective or a numeral.

S' accōmodi, Signore.	Il signore	Sit down, sir. The gentleman sits down
s' accōmoda		
Questo lume		This lamp
Due scodelle		Two soup-plates

b. In proverbs.

Cosa fatta capo ha	A thing done has an end
--------------------	-------------------------

c. In enumerations.

Nōbili, popolani, contadini, uōmini, dōnne, tutti s' affollavano allo scalo	Nobles, populace, peasants, men, women, everybody was thronging down to the landing-place
---	---

d. With *di*, to indicate material, contents, intimate characteristics, or nationality.

Il vestito di seta	The silk dress
Il bicchier d' acqua	The glass of water
Il maestro d' italiano	The Italian teacher
La cioccolata di Svizzera	Swiss chocolate
Una moltitudine di pellegrini	A multitude of pilgrims

***e.** In many set phrases, such as

A letto	In bed
A scuola	At school
Barca a remi	Rowboat
Da mane a sera	From morning till night
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di settembre	In September
In casa	At home
In città	In town
In piedi	On one's feet
Uomo di giudizio	Man of judgment, good behavior

***148. Agreement of Definite Article with Two or more Nouns.**

a. In a series of substantives of the same number and gender, the article may be used with one alone.

Le montagne, valli e piagge della Riviera italiana sono bellissime	The mountains, valleys, and coasts of the Italian Riviera are most beautiful
--	--

But

Le montagne ed i ghiacci della Svizzera	The mountains and glaciers of Switzerland
---	---

149. The Verb *andare* 'go.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *andare, andando, vado, anderò or andrà, andai, andato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

vado, or vō	andiamo
vai	andate
va	vanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

vada	andiamo
vada	andiate
vada	vādano

For the imperative, cf. 130, e.

a. Special uses of *andare*.

1. *Andare* takes a before the infinitive. To 'go and' is translated *andare a*.

Andrò a comprare della carta da scrivere	I shall go and buy some writing-paper
--	---------------------------------------

2. *Andare* with the present participle translates the verb 'be,' with an additional idea of continuation (cf. 102).

Va crescendo a poco a poco	It is growing little by little
----------------------------	--------------------------------

3. With the past participle, it makes a passive carrying the additional idea of obligation or propriety (cf. 97, a, 1).

I ragazzi italiani non vanno mandati soli a scuola	Italian boys are never sent to school unaccompanied
--	---

Questo non va messo qui	This isn't to be put here
-------------------------	---------------------------

***b.** Idioms with **andare**.

Andare a cavallo	To go on horseback
Andare in collera	To become angry
Andare dietro a	To be inferior to; to follow
Andare in estasi	To go into ecstasies
Andare fuori	To go out
Andare a piedi	To go on foot
Andar superbo	To be proud
A lungo andare	In the long run

VOCABULARY

il caffè coffee	andare a cavallo ride horseback
la conoscenza acquaintance	andare a piedi go on foot
il figlio son	aprire, apersi, aperto open
la figlia daughter	aver piacere di be pleased to
il latte milk	conoscere, conobbi, conosciuto be
Milano Milan	acquainted with, meet, become
Napoli Naples	acquainted with
il principe prince	dar fuoco a set fire to
la principessa princess	dar la buona notte etc. say good
la regina queen	night etc.
il romanzo novel	dar noia a annoy
la seta silk	dar pensiero a worry (<i>tr.</i>)
come al solito as usual	incontrare meet, run across
per il solito usually	presentare introduce
in casa at home	restare stay, remain
fuori out	sperare hope
or ora just now	
quest' altro next, coming	

EXERCISE

I

- È in casa la Signorina Conti? No, Signora, è andata fuori.
- Buon giorno, Signora. Mi permetta di presentarle il Signor Orselli.
- Ho piacere di far la Sua conoscenza.
- Dove sono le Sue figlie? Perchè non sono venute con Lei?
- Sono andate in

Francia. Ci resteranno due mesi, e passeranno l'estate in Inghilterra. 6. Dove ha conosciuto il Signor Pisani? A Napoli. Conosco lui e sua sorella. 7. Conosce il nuovo romanzo del Fogazzaro? Desidero di comprarlo. 8. Dove va, Signorina? Vado da mia zia. Spero che sarà in casa. 9. Non ci sarà. L'ho vista or ora in Via Cavour. 10. Andiamo a trovarla. L'incontreremo per la strada. 11. Ha sentito che il Bianchi è andato in Inghilterra? 12. Sono andata questa mattina dalla mia maestra d'inglese. 13. Ci vo il martedì e il venerdì, e pago tre lire la lezione. 14. Come si chiama la regina d'Italia? Si chiama la regina Elena. 15. Ha visto la principessa Vittoria? Ha gli occhi neri, e le mani molto piccole. 16. Andai la settimana scorsa a fare il Natale da mio cognato. 17. L'Italia è la nostra patria. 18. Di giugno si va per il solito in campagna, e si torna di settembre in città. 19. Non si dia pensiero. 20. Leggevo il famoso romanzo del Manzoni quando venne la mia amica a trovarmi. 21. Le do noia se apro la finestra? L'aveva chiusa or ora. 22. Desidera una tazza di caffè e latte?

II

1. We usually came into town in October. 2. America is larger than Europe. 3. Manzoni was a writer of Italy. He was born in Milan. 4. We opened the door, as usual, but they closed it. 5. Orselli has gone to France. He will stay three weeks with Count Costa. 6. Let me introduce you to Princess Porciani. 7. Have the soldiers set fire to our house? 8. I should have opened the window of the compartment, but it would have annoyed one of the passengers. 9. Is Mrs. B. at home? No, miss, she has gone out. 10. Did she go on foot? No, she went on horseback. 11. This news worries us. 12. The children came and said good-morning to their teacher. 13. I wish to read Fogazzaro's best novel. 14. Having read it, I shall talk of it to my friends. 15. Where did you meet Miss C.? I am not acquainted with her. 16. Permit me to introduce to you Mr. B. 17. I am happy to make your acquaintance.

18. We were reading, when they came and said good morning to us. 19. Bring me a glass of milk. 20. Here is my cousin's silk dress. 21. When I go to her house I shall carry it to her. 22. Where are your books, Lauretta? Go and find them.

III

L' ARRIVO IN UNA STAZIONE FERROVIARIA ITALIANA

Si arriva a Firenze. Un lungo fischio, il treno rallenta, poi si ferma alla stazione. State pensando commosso a tutto quello che avete a vedere in questa bellissima città; ma queste emozioni sono interrotte bruscamente dagli altri viaggiatori che cominciano a buttar giù i loro bagagli dalla rete, con gran pericolo di farvi male. Quelli che li hanno già in mano si sporgono allo sportello, chiamando: — Facchino! — Se hanno la fortuna di trovarne uno pronto, lo caricano di tanti sacchi, tante valigie, tante borse, da farlo parere più ciuco che uomo. Vi mena all' uscita dove dovete dare il vostro biglietto all' impiegato, poichè in Italia si deve renderlo non solo all' entrata in treno ma anche all' uscire dalla stazione. È il facchino che vi trova una carrozza, o un legno, come si chiama a Firenze. Ci mette tutta la vostra roba e vi salite anche voi. Poi gli dite di andare nel bagagliaio per ritirarne il vostro baule, dandogli la bolletta. Mentre che lo aspettate, vedete uscire dalla stazione tanta gente frettolosa, affollata, occupata a chiamarsi, a urtarsi, a stringersi la mano, baciandosi sulle gote anche gli uomini, che è un piacere a vederli. Ecco il vostro facchino col baule su un carretto. In un attimo il baule è sulla vettura, e al facchino che sta in aspettativa davanti a voi, si da una mancia che non basta mai. Per quanto generosa sia, egli vi guarderà con una espressione commovente, e vi dirà: — Ma . . . è poco! — Bisogna fare l' orecchio da mercante e tirar via per le strade rumorose, fino al Lungarno dove sta il vostro albergo.

LESSON XXIII

CARDINAL NUMERALS. DATES, TIME, AGE. MONEY.
MEASUREMENT. THE VERB *MORIRE*

150. The Cardinal Numerals are —

1 uno	21 ventuno	100 cento
2 due	22 ventidue	101 centuno
3 tre	23 ventitre	102 centodue
4 quattro	24 ventiquattro	160 centosessanta
5 cinque	25 venticinque	180 centottanta
6 sei	26 ventisei	200 duemila
7 sette	27 ventisette	600 seicento
8 otto	28 ventotto	800 ottocento
9 nove	29 ventinove	1000 mille
10 dieci	30 trenta	1001 mille uno
11 undici	31 trentuno	2000 duemila
12 dodici	32 trentadue	20,000 ventimila
13 tré dici	38 trentotto	
14 quattordici	39 trentanove	
15 quindici	40 quaranta	
16 sedici	50 cinquanta	
17 diciassette	60 sessanta	
18 diciotto	70 settanta	
19 diciannove	80 ottanta	
20 venti	90 novanta	

a. *Uno* has a feminine *una*, and when used adjectively has the forms of the indefinite article (cf. 59, 60).

Uno scopo, *una patria*, *un dio* One purpose, one fatherland, one God

i. With *ventuno*, *trentuno*, etc., used adjectively, the noun should be in the singular when it follows the numeral, in the plural when it precedes, the numeral agreeing in gender only.

Trentun soldato, *soldati trentuno* Thirty-one soldiers

Centuna lira, *lire centuna* One hundred and one lire

b. With **cento** and **mille** the indefinite article is not used.
The plural of **mille** is **mila**.

Cento uōmini e mille cavalli

A hundred men and a thousand
horses

c. 'Eleven hundred,' 'twelve hundred,' etc., must be translated 'one thousand one hundred' etc.

La prima crociata ebbe luogo circa The First Crusade took place about
il millecento 1100

La guerre civile americana in- The American Civil War began
cominciò nel milleottocento in 1861
sessantuno

d. 'Both' = **tutti e due**, **tutt' e due**; 'all three' = **tutti e tre** ;
etc. If a noun follows, it takes the article.

Tutt' e due gli amici Both (the) friends

e. The numerals above twenty may be written as one word or as two except when the digit is one or eight, when they must be written as one.

Ventidue, venti due; quarantuno; sessantotto; trenta sei, trentasęi

***f.** **Cento** may be written **cen** when followed by a numeral not accented upon the first syllable.

Cendiciassette, cęnquaranta; but **çentosęi**, **çentoventi**, **çentosędici**

151. Dates. **a.** For the days of the month, except the first (which takes the ordinal, **primo**), the cardinals are used, preceded by the definite article. Both article and numeral precede the name of the month.

Il quattro gennaio, il 25 giugno January fourth, the 25th of June
Il primo agosto The first of August

i. A more stately form inserts the word **dì** 'day.' (And for the occasional use of the form **li** in dates, cf. 71, **d.**)

Il dì (or addì) sei di marzo The sixth of March

b. The definite article precedes the number of the year (cf. 146, *f*).

Lo Shakespeare morì nel 1616 Shakespeare died in 1616

c. The number of a century expressed in cardinals serves to indicate the century following (cf. 157, *c*). *Mille* is often dropped.

Il trecento, il milletrecento

The fourteenth century — *lit.* the
'three hundreds,' the 'thirteen
hundreds'

Il duecento, l'ottocento

The thirteenth century, the nine-
teenth century

d. 'Ago' is expressed by *fa*, *sono*, or *or sono*, following a measure of time.

Due mesi fa

Two months ago

Anni sono

Years ago

Cento anni or sono

A hundred years ago

***e.** Idiomatic phrases :

Otto giorni

A week

Quindici giorni

A fortnight

Oggi a otto

A week from to-day

Doman l'altro

The day after to-morrow

Ieri l'altro, l'altro ieri

The day before yesterday

Ogni tre giorni

Every three days

Un giorno sì, un giorno no

Every other day

Quanti ne abbiamo del mese?

What day of the month is it?

Quanti ne abbiamo?

A quanti siamo del mese?

Ne abbiamo tre

È il tre

It is the third

Siamo ai tre

Ai tanti del mese

On such a day of the month

A quanti del mese parte?

On what day of the month does
he leave?

Nella prima metà di maggio

In the first half of May

Ai primi di ottobre	In the first days of October
L' anno scorso di luglio	In July of last year
Fra due mesi	Within two months, two months from now
L' ebbe finito in due mesi	He had it finished within two months
Da due anni	For two years past
Anno }	Last year, a year ago
L' altr' anno }	
Oggi è l' anno	A year ago to-day
Anno di là	Year before last
Da qui allora	From now until then

152. **Time of Day.** *a.* With numerals indicating the time of day, the definite article precedes, and both article and verb agree with *ora*, *ore*, understood.

Sono le tre	It is three o'clock
Erano le undici e mezzo	It was half-past eleven
Vada alle cinque	Go at five

b. In time-tables, and increasingly in general usage, the hours after noon are counted from midnight.

Il treno parte alle diciassette e	The train leaves at 5 P.M. and
arriva alle ventidue	arrives at 10 P.M.

c. A.M. and P.M. may be expressed by the adjectives **antermeridiano** and **pomeridiano**, modifying *ore* understood.

Va dalla maestra alle dieci ante-	She goes to her teacher at ten in
meridiane	the morning

c. 'One o'clock' is *il tocco* in good Tuscan usage, though *l' una* is used elsewhere.

Il tocco di notte	One o'clock at night
La colazione si serve al tocco	Luncheon is served at one

d. 'Noon' is **mezzogiorno**, and means twelve o'clock precisely; **mezzanotte** is 'midnight.'

*e. Idiomatic phrases :

Che ore sono?	What time is it?
Sono le cinque passate	It is after five
È la mezza	It is half-past
Suonano le due	It is striking two
Quanto c'è alle nove?	How near is it to nine?
Ci mancano dieci minuti alle nove	It lacks ten minutes to nine
Sono le dodici e mezzo	It is half-past twelve
Di quanto sono passate le dieci?	How long after ten is it?
Le dieci sono passate da tanto	It is some time after ten
A che ora devo venire?	At what time shall I come?
Verso le sette	About seven
Sono le due meno un quarto	It is a quarter before two
Sono le otto e dieci	It is ten minutes past eight
Stamane, stasera	This morning, this evening
Stanotte	Last night (until noon; after noon it means 'to-night')

153. Age. Age is expressed by means of the verb **avere** with **anni**.

Quanti anni hai?	How old are you?
Ho sette anni	I am seven years old

a. In speaking of an infant or an animal, **tempo** replaces **anni**.
 Quanto tempo ha questo bimbo? How old is this baby?

154. Money. The Italian system is decimal, based upon the **lira**, which, like the French franc, is equivalent to nearly 20 cents.

$$\begin{aligned} 5 \text{ centesimi} &= 1 \text{ soldo} = \text{about 1 cent} \\ 100 \text{ centesimi} &= 20 \text{ soldi} = 1 \text{ lira} \end{aligned}$$

***155. Measurement.** Italians use the metric system. The **mètro** equals nearly forty inches, and the **centimetro** is the 100th part of a **mètro**. An inch equals about $2\frac{1}{2}$ **centimetri**. The **chilometro** is a long half-mile; the **chilogramma** (masculine) a generous two pounds; the **litro** about a quart.

Ho pagato questo nastro una lira
il mētro

Queste buste sono lunghe quindici
centimetri

Una stanza della lunghezza di sei
mētri e della larghezza di quattro
mētri

I paid twenty cents a yard for this
ribbon

These envelopes are six inches
long

A room six meters long by four
meters wide

156. The Verb *morire* 'die.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **morire, morēndo, muōio, morrō, morii, mórtō**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

muōio	moriāmo
muōri	morite
muōre	muōiono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

muōia	moriāmo
muōia	moriāte
muōia	muōiano

VOCABULARY

le armi	arms (weapons)
il bimbo	baby
il carbonaro	charcoal-burner
il consigliere	adviser
Cristōforo Colōmbo	Christopher Columbus
il fūlmīne	thunderbolt
il galantuōmo	honest man
l' indipendēnza	<i>f.</i> independence
il mōto	movement
l' ḥōpera	<i>f.</i> task, achievement
Petrarca	Petrarch
il politico	statesman
il rē	king

il segreto	secret
le truppe	troops
Vittōrio Emanuele	Victor Emmanuel
accordarsi	agree (<i>accōrdo</i>)
cacciare	chase, drive out
dirīgere, diressi, diretto	direct
fallire	fail
istituire	found, establish
coprire, copersi, coperto	cover
ardito	bold
dolorosamente	sorrowfully
faticoso	laborious

EXERCISE

1. Quegl'Italiani che per i primi si diedero alla faticosa opera dī cacciare lo straniero erano i più intelligenti, i più buoni e i più arditi d' Italia. 2. Ma erano pochi e senza armi. 3. Bisognava accordarsi in segreto. 4. Istituirono nel 1820 la società segreta,

così detta, dei Carbonari. 5. I primi moti rivoluzionari preparati da questa società cominciarono a Napoli. 6. Ma dolorosamente fallirono! 7. La liberazione d' Italia fu l' opera di moltissimi eroi. 8. Li diressero quattro grandi uomini: uno scrittore, un re, un soldato, e un uomo politico. 9. Il Mazzini, il grande agitatore, nacque nel 1805 e morì nel 1872; aveva 67 anni. 10. Vittorio Emanuele II, il re galantuomo, nacque il 14 marzo, 1820, e morì il 9 gennaio, 1878. 11. Garibaldi, quel fulmine di guerra, nacque nel 1807 e morì nel 1882. 12. Il conte Cavour, il consigliere del re, nacque nel 1810 e morì nel 1861. 13. Vittorio Emanuele, re di Piemonte, fu dichiarato re d' Italia il 18 febbraio, 1861. 14. Le truppe italiane entrarono vittoriosi in Roma il 20 settembre, 1870. 15. In che giorno nacque Dante Alighieri?

II

1. In what year was Petrarch born? In 1304.
2. In what year did he die? In 1374.
3. There is a poor man. If I had forty-one lire, I would give them to him.
4. What day of the month is it today? It is the 17th.
5. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492.
6. They wish me to leave at 7.30 P.M.
7. How old is your father? He is fifty; he was born fifty years ago.
8. How many books have you? I have more than a thousand.
9. At what time to-morrow shall I return to your house? At a quarter past eight in the evening.
10. The Spaniard died last month in Paris. He was born in 1872, and was forty-three years old.
11. Shakespeare was born in 1564 and died in 1616.
12. How old was he when he died? He was fifty-two.
13. What time is it? It is twenty minutes past ten. It lacks ten minutes to eleven.
14. How old is this baby? He is three months old; he was born on the twenty-eighth of March.
15. The author died on the twenty-third of January, 1913, at two o'clock in the morning.
16. On what day did King Victor Emmanuel die?

LESSON XXIV

ORDINALS. COLLECTIVES. MULTIPLICATIVES.
INDETERMINATES. THE VERB *PARERE*

157. Ordinals. The ordinal numerals are—

1st	primo	20th	venteşimo vigēşimo
2d	secondo	21st	ventunęşimo venteşimo primo
3d	terzo	22d	ventidueşimo venteşimo secondo
4th	quarto		<i>etc.</i>
5th	quinto	30th	trenteşimo
6th	sesto	40th	quarantęşimo
7th	sęttimo	50th	cinquanteşimo
8th	ottavo	60th	sessanteşimo
9th	nono	70th	settanteşimo
10th	dēcimo	80th	ottanteşimo
11th	undēcimo undicęşimo dēcimo primo	90th	novanteşimo
12th	duodēcimo dodicęşimo dēcimo secondo	100th	centęşimo
13th	tredicęşimo dēcimo tęrzo	101st	centęşimo primo
14th	quattordicęşimo dēcimo quarto	102d	centęşimo secondo
15th	quindicęşimo dēcimo quinto		<i>etc.</i>
16th	sedicęşimo dēcimo sęsto	130th	centotrenteşimo
17th	diciassettęşimo dēcimo sęttimo	170th	centosettanteşimo
18th	diciottęşimo dēcimo ottavo	200th	dugenteşimo
19th	diciannovęşimo dēcimo nōno	500th	cinquecentęşimo
		600th	secentęşimo
		1000th	millęşimo
		1001st	millęşimo primo
			<i>etc.</i>
		2000th	duemillęşimo
		30,000th	trentamillęşimo
		100,000th	çentomillęşimo

a. The ordinals are adjectives, and agree as such.

La quarantēsima pāgina The fortieth page

b. Fractions above one half are expressed by ordinals.

Cinque miglia e tre quarti Five and three-quarters miles

i. 'Half' is translated as an adjective by *mèzzo*, as a noun by *la metà*. **Mezzo** agrees when it precedes.

Mangiò *mèzza* la péra He ate half the pear

Una *mèzz'* ora A half hour

Sono le trē e *mèzzo* It is half-past three

Ne prese *la metà* He took half of it

c. The number of the century may be expressed by ordinals (cf. 151, *c*).

Il sēcolo dēcimo quarto The fourteenth century

d. Numerical titles of rulers, and of volumes, chapters, etc., are indicated by the ordinals following, without article.

Carlo quinto Charles the Fifth

Luigi dēcimosēsto Louis XVI

Capitolo tērzo Chapter three

e. Ordinals precede cardinals in such phrases as

I primi sei canti The first six cantos

*158. Collectives. *a.* The commonest are —

una coppia a couple *un milione* a million

un paio a pair

un miliardo a billion (U.S.), thousand millions (Eng.)

una decina half a score

un biliōne a trillion (U.S.), billion (Eng.)

una dozzina a dozen

ambedue, entrambi both

una ventina a score

un centinaio about a hundred

un migliaio about a thousand

i. 'About' so many may be indicated by *da* or *un* before a cardinal.

Da seicento About six hundred

Un settanta About seventy

b. Collectives with special meanings :

1. *Games*: **ambo**, **tērno**, **quadērno**, **cinquina**, 'a two,' 'a three,' etc., in the lottery, or certain games of cards.
2. *Paper*: **un quadērno**, **un quintērno**, a packet of four, of five sheets.
3. *Time*: **centenārio** 'centenary'; **trīduo**, **novēna**, **quarantēna**, periods of three, nine, forty days; **bimēstre**, **trimēstre**, **quadrimēstre**, **semēstre**, periods of two, three, four, six months; **biennio**, **triennio**, **quinquēnnio**, **sessēnnio**, **decēnnio**, **centēnnio**, **milēnnio**, periods of two, three, etc. years.
4. *Versification*: **La terzina** or **il terzetto**, **la quartina**, **la sestina**, **l' ottava**, etc., three-, four-, six-, or eight-verses stanzas; **quader-nārio**, **quinārio**, **senārio**, **ottonārio**, etc., four-, five-, six-, or eight-syllabled verses.
5. **Binārio** is used of the two rails of a railway-track.

***159. Multiplicatives.** *a.* Multiplicatives are the adjectives (also used substantively) **dōppio** 'double,' **triplo** 'triple,' **quadruplo** 'quadruple,' **quintuplo** 'fivefold,' **sestuplo** 'sixfold,' **centuplo** 'one hundredfold,' etc. Similar forms may be constructed with **vōlte** 'times.'

Una scātola a **dōppio fondo**

A double-bottomed box

Dōdici è il **triplo di quattro**

Twelve is three times four

La mia parte era **dieci vōlte più grande della sua**

My share was ten times as great
as his

Due alla **vōlta**

Two at a time

1. The similar forms **dūplice**, **trīplice**, etc. are used only as adjectives, and only of abstract things.

La **Trīplice Alleanza**

The Triple Alliance

b. Arithmetical processes :

Cinque via cinque, venticinque	Five times five are twenty-five
Due e due fanno quattro	Two and two make four
Dieci meno cinque, cinque	Ten minus five leaves five

160. Indeterminate Numerals. These are **molto**, **poco**, **troppo**, **tutto**, **tantو**, **quanto**, and **parecchi** (f. **parecchie**) 'several.' When used as adjectives, they agree, and dispense with the article (except **tutto**, cf. **c**). When used substantively, the masculine singular is abstract and neuter in meaning, while the masculine plural refers to persons. For their use as adverbs, cf. **89, b.**

Ho troppo cose da fare	I have too many things to do
Spende poco	He spends little
Parecchie donne avevano paura	Several women were afraid
Molti hanno abbandonato la città	Many have abandoned the city

***a. Molto.** Tuscan usage sanctions **di** before **molto**.

Ha perduto il denaro, e ne aveva	He has lost his money, and he
di molto	had a great deal

b. Poco. Preceded by **un** it means 'a little,' and is often shortened to **po'**; it is used adverbially in this form to mean 'just.' In the plural it means 'few,' 'a few.'

Mi dia un po' di pane	Give me a little bread
Pochi la pensano come me	Few are of my opinion
Dimmi un po'	Just tell me

c. Tutto used adjectively precedes the article and the noun, unless it follows both. The article is required.

Tutti gli uomini	All men, all the men
Gli uccelli tutti	All birds, all the birds

i. In the singular it may mean 'whole.'

Tutto il giorno	All day, the whole day
Tutto un giorno	All one day, a whole day

2. Reinforced by **quanto** it means 'all possible,' 'all there were,' 'all of them,' 'every one of them.'

Tutti quanti fuggirono Every one of them fled

3. Before a relative, **tutto** takes **quello** or **ciò**.

Tutto **quello** che disse fu vero All that he said was true

d. **Poco**, **molto**, **tropo**, **tanto**, and **quanto** are often used as referring to time.

Stette molto a tornare	He was a long time getting back
Ci vorrà troppo	It will take too long
Quanto ci sarà da aspettare?	How long will there be to wait?
Dopo non molto	After a short time
Ogni quanto c' è il tram?	How often does the tram run?
Ogni tanto	Every so often, every little while
Poco fa	A little while ago
Fra poco	In a little while

161. The Verb *parere* 'seem.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **parere**, **parendo**, **paio**, **parrò**, **parvi** or **parsi**,
parso or **paruto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

paio	paiamo
pari	parete
pare	pâiono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

paia	paiamo
paia	paiate
paia	pâiano

VOCABULARY

Borbone *m.* Bourbon

il Lombardo-Veneto Lombardy and Venetia

il ducato duchy

il mestiere trade

le Due Sicilie the Two Sicilies,

la paglia straw

Naples and Sicily

la pêra pear

Enrico Henry

il Piemonte Piedmont

Filippo Philip

il regnante ruler

Giorgio George

il regno kingdom

il granducato grand duchy

la Savoia Savoy

l'impero *m.* empire

il tornaconto advantage	davvero truly, indeed
la Toscana Tuscany	dietro behind
dividere, divisi, diviso divide	faccio <i>I sg. pres. ind. of fare (irr.)</i>
eligiere, elessi, eletto elect	do, make
intendere, intesi, inteso understand	faceva <i>3 sg. past descr. ind. of fare</i>
muovere, mossi, mosso move	nulla anything; <i>with non</i> , nothing
règgere, rëssi, rètto rule	o well, now
	sotto under
	veramente really

EXERCISE

I

PIOPPO DICE LA STORIA

Un signore che visita la scuola domanda a un contadino :

— Come ti chiami ?

— Pippo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— E tuo padre come si chiama ?

— Gasparo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— Che mestiere fa ?

— Il contadino.

— Ti piace il mestiere del contadino ?

— Sissignore.

— Perchè ?

— Perchè si sta sempre all' aria aperta, si lavora di molto e siamo pieni di salute.

— Bravo Pippo ! . . . E . . . dimmi un po': di storia patria ne sai nulla ?

— Sissignore. La so tutta veramente bene.

— O sentiamo. In quale anno incominciarono le guerre per l' indipendenza d' Italia ?

— Nel 1848.

— Va bene ! O dimmi un po', Pippo, in quanti stati si divideva a quel tempo l' Italia ?

— L’ Italia era divisa, a quel tempo, in sette stati: il Piemonte sotto la dinastia di Savoia; il Lombardo-Veneto soggetto all’ impero d’ Austria; il ducato di Parma, quello di Mōdena e il granducato di Toscana, governati da principi i quali non movevano paglia senza il permesso dell’ Austria; il Regno delle due Sicilie retto dai Borboni, che erano i peggio di tutto; e lo stato Pontificio.

— Bravo bambino! E . . . dimmi un po’; nel governo di questi piccoli stati era rappresentato il popolo?

— Non capisco.

— C’ erano le Camere dei deputati eletti dal popolo, i senatori, i ministri?

— Nossignore. Ogni regnante faceva tutto da sè. Ben inteso che dietro c’ era sempre l’ Austria che ordinava, proibiva o approvava, secondo il suo tornaconto.

— Avevi ragione. Bravo Pippo! La sai veramente bene davvero, e ne faccio i miei sinceri elogi a te e al tuo maestro.

II

1. Just tell me, Pippo, how many wars were fought for Italian independence? Three, sir.
2. When began the first? About seventy years ago.
3. And the second? In 1859.
4. And the third? In 1866.
5. Few states of Italy were well governed before the War of Independence.
6. Foreign rulers divided Italy among themselves.
7. Dante was born in the thirteenth century and died in the fourteenth.
8. Louis XIV, Charles IX, Philip II, Henry VIII, and George III were all of them famous rulers.
9. How often does the train for Florence run?
10. It is half past three; it will arrive in a little while.
11. These pears seem good; I will give you half of mine.
12. $24 - 8 = 16$.
- $27 \times 14 = 378$.
- $117 + 54 = 171$.
13. I shall not accompany them to the train. It would take too long.

LESSON XXV

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB FARE

162. The Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is omitted in Italian —

a. Before a predicate noun, unmodified, expressing nationality, or condition in life.

Morì mārtire	He died a martyr
È Italiano	He is an Italian
È professore?	Is he a professor?
Napoleone s'è fatto imperatore	Napoleon became (<i>or</i> made himself) emperor
Quella signora è contessa	That lady is a countess
Vittorio Emanuele II fu un re valoroso	Victor Emanuel II was a valorous king

i. In answer to the question 'Who is he?' as distinguished from 'What is he?' the indefinite article is retained.

Who is he? He is a lawyer	È un avvocato
What is he? (What is his occupation?) He is a lawyer	È avvocato

***2.** If the predicate noun is used metaphorically, the indefinite article is retained.

È un āngelo	He is an angel
-------------	----------------

But, speaking literally,

Non erano passati otto giorni e il bambino era āngelo	In less than a week the child was an angel (i.e. dead)
---	--

b. Before a noun in apposition, when explanatory and not alluding to a familiar fact. (The appositive often precedes.)

Il Gabelli, uomo di pensiero e di studi	Gabelli, a man of thought and studious habits
---	---

Género di Alessandro Manzoni,
amico del d' Azeglio, il Giorgini
fu uno degli últimos testimoni di
quel período della letteratura
italiana

Son-in-law of Alessandro Manzoni,
friend of d' Azeglio, Giorgini
was one of the last witnesses of
that period of Italian literature

The definite article is used in familiar allusion.

Giusèppe Mazzini, il grande agitator
tore

Mazzini the great agitator

c. After **da** in the sense of 'like,' 'in the character of,' or when indicating origin.

Morì da soldato

He died like a soldier

Nacque da padre veneziano e da
madre gréca

He was born of a Venetian father
and a Greek mother

d. Before **cento** and **mille** (cf. 150, *b*).

e. In such phrases as 'that wretch of a,' etc.

Quel monélllo di Gigi

That rascal of a Gigi

Quella civetta di Mirandolina

That coquette of a Mirandolina

f. After **che**, in exclamations.

Che bambina carina, che carina
bambina !

What a pretty child !

g. In fractions, before the name of the thing measured.

Un térgo di miglio

A third of a mile

Mi dia mezzo chilo

Give me half a kilo

163. The Verb *fare* 'make,' 'do.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fare**, **facendo**, **faccio**, **farò**, **feci**, **fatto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

faccio, fo'	facciamo
fai	fate
fa	fanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

faccia	facciamo
faccia	facciate
faccia	facciano

For the imperative, see 130, *e*.

a. **Fare** governs the infinitive directly. In this construction the *active present infinitive* renders the *passive past participle* in such phrases as 'to have a thing done.'

Lo fēcero punire

They had him **punished** (*lit.* they caused to punish him)

Fece preparare una cāmera

He had a room **made ready**

***b.** Idioms with **fare**.

Fare il bagno

To take a bath

Fare i bauli

To pack one's trunks

Far caldo, freddo, etc.

To be hot weather, cold weather,
etc.

Far capolino

To peep out

Fare di cappello

To take off one's hat

Far cašo di

To make account of

Far cōmodo

To come handy

Far complimenti

To stand on ceremony

Far fronte a

To face, oppose

Far fumo

To smoke (of a stove)

Far furore

To make a hit

Fare le fusa

To purr

Far male a

To hurt

Far meglio a

To find it better to

Fare del suo meglio

To do one's best

Fare a meno di

To do without

Fare un mestiere

To ply a trade

Fare a metà

To go halves

Fare una passeggiata

To take a walk

Far piacere a

To do a kindness, give pleasure, to

Far prešto

To be quick

Farsi il ritratto

To have one's picture taken

Far sangue

To bleed

Far sciōpero

To strike; take a holiday

Far sì che

To bring it about; to manage so
that

Fare un sonnellino

To take a nap

Far spēcie a

To surprise

Far strada	To be on the way, progress
Far di suo	To do of one's own accord
Far tardi	To be late
Fare a tempo	To be on time
Far di tutto	To try one's hardest
Fare le veci di	To take the place of
Far vedere	To show
Fare una visita a	To call on
Far vista di	To make pretense of
Sul far del giorno, della notte	At dawn, at dusk
Due giorni fa	Two days ago
Che tempo fa?	What kind of weather is it?
Fa bel tempo	It is fine weather

VOCABULARY

il bagaglio	baggage, luggage
il baule	trunk
il biglietto d' andata e ritorno	round-trip ticket
la carrozza	carriage
il compleanno	birthday
la donna	woman, woman servant
l' onomastico <i>m.</i>	saint's day
la roba (<i>collective</i>)	things
il ventaglio	fan

cōmodo	convenient, comfortable
carino	
grazioso	pretty
cortese	
gentile	kind
educato	polite
pesante	heavy
fare i bauli	pack one's trunks
far cōmodo	come handy

far complimenti	stand on ceremony
fare a meno di	do without
fare una passeggiata	take a walk
far piacere a	do a pleasure to
far strada	be on the way
fare una visita a	call upon
mutar di pensiero	change one's mind
non vedet l' ora di	long to, be hardly able to wait to
pigliare	take
sentire la mancanza di	miss (a person)
di giorno	by day
di notte	by night
poi	then
a portata di mano	within reach of one's hand
posso <i>I sg. pres. ind. of potere</i>	
(irr.)	be able

EXERCISES

I

1. Abbiamo voluto fare una visita alla Signora C. 2. La donna ci ha fatto passare, ma poi ci ha detto che non era in casa la signora. 3. L'abbiamo incontrata più tardi da nostra zia. 4. È vero che va a Vallombrosa, Signorina? 5. Sì, Signora. Non vedo l'ora di partire. 6. Mi piace tanto il viaggiare. 7. Ma pigli un biglietto d'andata e ritorno, per esser sicura di tornar qui. 8. Sentiremo molto la mancanza di Lei. 9. Ha da fare i bauli? 10. Sì, non posso fare a meno di tre bauli per la mia roba. 11. E poi ci sono i bagagli, i quali sono molto pesanti. 12. Mi permetta di darle questo ventaglio, perchè farà comodo se viaggia di giorno. 13. Grazie tante. Che grazioso ventaglio! Ci vuole molta roba per il viaggio, perchè fa caldo prima, e poi fa freddo. 14. A che ora partirà stasera? Ha ordinato la carrozza? 15. Non bisogna ordinarla oggi. Ho mutato di pensiero. Non parto prima di mercoledì. 16. Chi è il forestiere che ha invitato a pranzo? 17. È un professore. È Francese? No, è Americano. 18. È un uomo molto educato. Viene a farmi una visita sempre pel mio compleanno. 19. Quando è il Suo onomastico? Il ventitre giugno.

II

1. What day is your birthday? The 28th of January. And your saint's day? The 18th of July. 2. Will you take a walk with me, to [per] do me a pleasure? 3. Please buy me a round-trip ticket to Florence. 4. When you have bought it, bring it to us. 5. The servant will pack the trunks for them. 6. Let us call upon our friend Mrs. D., and on our way we will buy some things for our mother. 7. They always travel by night, because it is less hot. 8. What a pretty fan! It is prettier than mine. 9. I have put your books on the shelf, within reach of your hand. 10. They will miss us and I shall miss them. 11. I cannot do without my friends.

12. Here is Mrs. C. Sit down, Mrs. C. Do not stand on ceremony. 13. They wish me to pack the trunks, and there are more than four of them. 14. Come at half-past four. Do not change your mind.

DIALOGO

IN UN ALBERGO

Vengono tre signore e una bambina, che domandano del padrone. Lui viene e dice loro :

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano ?

— Desideriamo delle camere. Ne vogliamo due a un letto, comunicanti, e una a due letti perchè la bambina stia colla mamma.

— Benissimo, Signore. Farò Loro vedere quali camere sono libere. Eccone due a un letto, comunicanti, con terrazza. Sono esposte al sole. Ci si sta bene d' inverno. Ecco quest' altra che dà sul giardino ; è grande, con due letti, e se non è a mezzogiorno non c' è male perchè c' è il termosifone.

— Vabbene. Queste camere ci piacciono. Quanto sarebbe la pensione ?

— Se Loro restano almeno tre giorni, sarà di otto lire il giorno.

— Vabbene. Faremo venire i bauli stasera, e verremo prima del pranzo.

LESSON XXVI

IMPERSONAL VERBS. THE VERB *STARE*

164. Impersonal Verbs. *a.* Impersonal verbs have no real subject, and are conjugated only in the third person. What would be the subject in English is often expressed by the dative. They are used to express necessity, convenience, or accident; weather; appearance; satisfaction, dissatisfaction; etc.

Non meritā il conto	It is not worth while
Non importa	It does not matter
Non conviene	It is not proper, not suitable
Me ne rincresce	I am sorry about it
Piove a rovescio	It is raining in torrents
Come le pare?	How does it seem to you? What do you think?

i.* Occasionally **egli (**gli**) or **e'** is used redundantly as subject of an impersonal verb (cf. 100, *g*, 2).

Gli è che siamo in alto mare The truth is we are in deep water

b. Impersonal verbs require the subjunctive if the subject of the dependent clause is not of the same person as the dative pronoun; otherwise they may take the infinitive (cf. 174, *c*).

Bisogna che tutti lavorino	All must work
Bisogna lavorare	It is necessary to work
Mi dispiace che Lei debba partire	I am sorry you must go
Mi dispiace di partire	I am sorry to go

i. These verbs take **di** before a noun object.

Mi dispiace della sua malattia I regret his illness

c. Many verbs not essentially impersonal may be used impersonally.

Sta a lui di farlo	It lies with him to do it
È (di) mestieri }	It is necessary
Fa d'uopo }	
Tocca a me	It is my turn
Pare che abbia molto denaro	He seems to have much money
Va bene	It goes well; very well
Basta	That's enough
Minaccia di nevicare	It threatens to snow
È cessato di piövere	It has stopped raining

d. Many verbs are used only, or mostly, in the third person, but as they have a subject they are not impersonal.

Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Mi dölgono i denti	My teeth ache
Mi piace quel quadro	I like that picture
Mi piacciono le camere	I like the rooms
Mi sémbrano ariose	They seem airy
Mi occorre un lapis	I need a pencil
Mi båstano questi	These are enough for me

i. These verbs when followed by a clause are strictly impersonal.

Mi duole che lo dica	It pains me to have you say it
Mi piace che voglia venire	I am glad you wish to come
Non basta che scriva; deve venire	It is not enough that he write; he must come

2. **Non mi piace**, 'I do not like,' should not be confused with **mi dispiace**, 'I am sorry,' 'I regret.'

Non mi piace questa canzone	I do not like this song
Mi dispiace che Lei abbia ricevuto una brutta notizia	I am sorry you have had bad news

e. For the impersonal use of the reflexive, cf. 106, *b.*

165. Expressions that Describe Weather.

Piöve	It is raining
Nëvica	It is snowing
Tuona	It thunders
Lampeggia, balena	It lightens

Tira vento	The wind blows
Gela, ghiaccia	It is freezing
Sgela, dighiaccia	It is thawing
Fa bel tempo	It is fair weather
Fa cattivo tempo	The weather is bad, disagreeable
Fa caldo, freddo, fresco, umido	It is hot, cold, cool, damp
C'è il fango	It is muddy
C'è la nebbia	It is foggy

166. The Verb *stare* 'be,' 'stay.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *stare, stando, sto, starò, stetti, stato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

sto	stiamo
stai	state
sta	stanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

stia	stiamo
stia	stiate
stia	stiano

a. Special uses of *stare*:

1. With the present participle, or with **a** and the infinitive, to translate the English 'be' (cf. 102).

Sto leggendo	I am reading
Stanno parlando	They are talking
Eravamo stati a guardarsi pochi minuti	We had been looking on a few minutes

2. To mean 'be,' in the sense of to be in a place or a condition.

Non stetti molto a Firenze	I was not long at Florence
Sta bene di salute	He is in good health
Sto di casa in Via Garibaldi	I live on Via Garibaldi

b. Idioms with *stare*.

Stare allegro	To be cheerful
Stare attento	To be attentive
Star bene, male	To be well, ill
Star bene a, star male a	To befit, not to befit
Stare al buio	To be in the dark
Star di casa	To live, reside

Stare in casa	To stay in
Star cōmodo	To be comfortable
Star fērmo	To be still
Stare frēsco	To be sadly off (<i>derisory</i>)
Stare con le mani in mano	To be idle
Star nascōsto	To be hidden
Stare in pensiōro	To be worried
Stare per far una cosa	To be on the point of doing a thing
Stare in piēdi	To stand up
Star vicino, lontano	To be near, far
Star zitto	To be silent
Come sta? Stō bēne	How do you do? I am well

VOCABULARY

la disgrazia misfortune

il fango mud

il ghiaccio ice

la nēbbia fog

il sōle sun

brutto disagreeable, ugly

ricco (-chi, -che) rich

al giorno d' oggi nowadays

non . . . che only, not but, nothing
but

non c' è male pretty well

non c' è rimēdio there is no help
for itnon mi par vēro di I can't believe,
I can't wait to

star di casa live, reside

stare in casa stay in the house

star cōmodo be comfortable

stare in pensiōro worry, be worried

star pēr (w. inf.) be about to

accadēre, accadde, accaduto happen

avvenire (*like venire*) happen

balenare lighten

bastare suffice, be enough

cessare (di) cease (to)

dispiacēre a (*irr.*) make sorry,
cause to regret; mi dispiace I
am sorrydiventare become (*divēnto*)

ghiacciare freeze

minacciare threaten

nevicare snow

occōrrere, occōrse, occōrso be nec-
essary

piōvere, piōvve, piovuto rain

rincrēscere, rincrēbbe, rincresciuto

(a) (*impers.*) make sorry; mi
rincresce I am sorry

tirar vēnto blow

tonare (cf. 110, *d*) thunder

EXERCISE

I

1. Buon giorno, Signore. .Come sta? Non c' è male, grazie.
2. E la Signora Bondi, come sta? Non sta tanto bene. 3. Non va fuori perchè minaccia di nevicare. 4. Starà in casa tutto il giorno.
5. Mi dispiace che non stia bene di salute. 6. Quando sarà cessato di nevicare, farà una passeggiata. 7. Le dica che andrò a prenderla. 8. Dove sta di casa? In Via Cavour. 9. Le rincresce della brutta notizia. 10. Per imparare una lingua, non basta che lo scolare la studi e la legga. 11. Occorre anche la pratica. 12. Rincrebbe loro che non venissimo. 13. Avviene spesso al giorno di oggi che il povero diventi ricco. 14. Che tempo fa? Fa cattivo tempo. 15. Il vento tira forte, ghiaccia, dighiaccia, piove, nevica, tutto a un tempo. Che brutto tempo! 16. Non c' è quest' inverno che il fango, la nebbia e la neve. 17. Allora non andrò fuori. Si sta più comodo in casa. 18. Non mi piace che tiri vento. C' è sole?

II

1. What day of the month is it? 2. It is the 9th. 3. What kind of weather is it? 4. It is very hot. 5. It is lightening, and threatens to thunder. 6. Has it stopped raining? 7. Yes, and the wind does not blow, but there is no sun. 8. I shall stay in the house to-day, but I wish you to go out. 9. Do you think it is raining? 10. It seems to me they do not wish to give it to me. 11. A misfortune has occurred, and we are very sorry. 12. I am about to go to France. 13. They need two trunks. 14. How do you do? I am well, but my mother is ill. 15. I am sorry, but do not be worried. 16. Your mother will be better to-morrow. 17. I hope so [it]. 18. It seems to me I have nothing but misfortunes. 19. She lives in Florence. 20. I live on Via del Casato. 21. One is very comfortable in Via Cavour.

LESSON XXVII

CONJUNCTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT INFINITIVE.
THE VERB POTERE

167. Conjunctive Objects with a Dependent Infinitive.

a. Generally speaking, if a dependent infinitive has a pronoun object (or objects), the latter may either be appended to it (cf. 95, *b*), or precede the main verb.

Manda a prēnderlo	He sends for him
Lo manda a prēndere	
Vorrebbe dirmelo?	Should you be willing to tell it to me?
Me lo vorrebbe dire?	

b. But when the governing verb is impersonal, the object must go with the infinitive.

Non conviene farlo	It is not convenient to do so
Bisogna dārgliela	It is necessary to give it to her

c. Whereas, if the governing verb be *fare*, *lasciare*, *sentire*, *udire*, or *vedere*, the object must precede the main verb. The independent verb, if transitive, becomes passive in meaning.

Lo fēcero fucilare	They had him shot
Ti sento cantare	I hear you singing
Lo lasciarono bātttere	They allowed him to be beaten

i. If the object of either verb be a noun, it usually follows both verbs.

Carletto amava di sentire sonare la banda	Charlie liked to hear the band play
Il generale fece punire il soldato	The general had the soldier punished

OBJECT OF DEPENDENT INFINITIVE §§ 167-168

2. If the main verb also has an object, that object becomes indirect.

Glielo vidi fare	I saw him do it
Per non fare prendere un raffred- dore ai bovi	In order not to let the cattle take cold
Fecero accettare la càrica al gene- rale	They made the general accept the office
La fanno accettare al generale	They make the general accept it

168. The Verb *potere* 'be able.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **potere, potendo, posso, potrò, potei, potuto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

posso	possiamo
puoi	potete
può	pôssono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

pôssa	possiamo
pôssa	possiate
pôssa	pôssano

a. Cf. 132, a, 1.

VOCABULARY

la banda	band	piccino	little, tiny
il caffè	cafè		
il cameriere	waiter	ascoltare	listen, listen to (ascolto)
la finestra	window	condurre	conduco, condurrò, con-
il gelato	ice, ice cream	dussi, condotto	take, conduct
la gioia	joy	figurarsi	imagine
la giratina	little walk	ordinare	order (ordino)
lo spasso	walk, excursion	riunire	unite, assemble
lo statuto	constitution	sonare (110, d)	play (an instrument)
		sorbire	sip
a un tratto	suddenly	spicciarsi	hasten, hurry
fuori (di)	outside (of)	spiegare	explain
fuori di porta	outside the walls	stancarsi	become tired
mentre	while		

EXERCISE

I

PERCHÈ OGGI SUONA LA BANDA?

Quella prima domenica del mese di giugno, Carletto, tutto vestito a festa, fu condotto a spasso dal suo babbo.

Prima essi fecero una giratina fuori di porta, poi ritornarono in paese, dove, nella piazza principale, sonava la banda.

Carletto si stancò a stare in piedi. Allora il suo babbo lo condusse al caffè, lì nella piazza, e gli fece prendere un gelato. Il gelato piaceva tanto a Carletto: figuratevi la sua gioia di poterlo sorbire seduto, mentre ascoltava la banda.

A un tratto egli domandò:

— Babbo, perchè suona oggi la banda, e perchè in molte case ci sono le bandiere alle finestre?

— Perchè oggi è la festa dello Statuto — gli rispose il babbo.

— E che cosa è lo Statuto?

— Ah! tu sei così piccino, non saprei come spiegarlo: ti basti sapere che lo Statuto è la più solenne nostra festa civile, la quale insegna a tutti noi Italiani, adulti e piccini, che siamo liberi e riuniti in una sola grande famiglia.

Allora Carletto, battendo le mani, esclamò: *Viva l'Italia!*

II

1. What day is Constitution Day in Italy? It is the first Sunday of June.
2. Why are there tricolored flags at the windows?
3. Can his father explain it to him?
4. He will explain it to him when he is ten years old.
5. Charlie's father took him to walk.
6. Charlie will become tired standing.
7. His father will take him to the café.
8. Will he give him [have him take] an ice?
9. He cannot have him take it because there is no room.
10. Now they have found a table and they can order it.
11. The waiter will bring it to them.
12. Charlie can hardly wait to sip it.
13. But his father

says : "Wait a moment. Let him bring it to you." 14. The waiter would not make them wait if he could hurry. 15. They like the ice very much. 16. They can sip it while they listen to the band. 17. Charlie's father thinks it is beginning to rain. 18. If it rained, they would leave the café. 19. Charlie does not wish it to rain. 20. He wishes to stay there where he can hear the band play. 21. We should like to hear them sing. 22. If it should thunder and lighten they would not be able to stay there. 23. There is the sun ! It must have stopped raining.

DIÀLOGO

DALLA SARTA

È noioso d' andare dalla sarta, ma le signore ne hanno troppo bisogno.

— Dove sta la sua sarta ? Ho sentito ch' è molto brava.

— Sta all' ultimo piano di una casa in Via Tornabuoni. L' avverto che ci sono molte scale. Vuole che l' accompagni ?

— Mi farebbe un vero piacere. Così mi aiuterà a scègliere il figurino e la stoffa. . . . Vorrei un abito da passeggio.

— Come dev' essere, scuro o chiaro ?

— Siccome sto per fare un lungo viaggio, me ne occorrerebbero due, uno d' inverno e uno di mezza stagione. Ho bisogno anche di un vestito da casa e un vestito scollato da sera.

— Cominciamo col vestito da casa. Lo farei di una stoffa mezza seta, con guarnizione d' un tono più scuro.

— Gli abiti da passeggio li vorrei colla sottana a pieghe, molto semplice, all' inglese, e piuttosto corta, perch' è più pratica. Mi ci metta nella giacchetta una fodera bianca.

— Mi raccomando che la fodera sia forte, perchè quella dell' ultimo vestito che mi fece a me, mi si sciupò subito.

— Quanto al colore, ci penserò e glielo dirò quest' altra volta quando tornerò per la prova del vestito da casa.

LESSON XXVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE VERB *DOLERE*

169. The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses. The subjunctive, generally speaking, is used to express uncertainty, or at most something less than certainty. It is required in dependent clauses,

a. After verbs of causation or prevention, desire or emotion, concession, doubt, opinion, or ignorance.

Il generale ha dato ordine che non smontino il campo	The general has given orders not to break camp
Impediranno che il nemico s' avvicini	They will prevent the enemy from approaching
Pregava che fossero generosi	He begged them to be generous
Si messe in testa che l' avessero fatto a posta	He took it into his head that they had done it on purpose
Credei d' indovinare che cercasse di morire	I fancied I had guessed that he sought to die
Di dove esca, dove vada, non lo so	Where he comes from, whither he is going, I do not know
Mi fa piacere che vivano lieti	I am glad they are living happily
Temo che il mio figliuolo sia ammalato	I am afraid my little boy is ill

1. Pleonastic **non** is commonly used in subordinate clauses after **temere**, **badare**, **mancar poco**, **non dubitare**, **non c' è dubbio**, and similar expressions.

Temo che il viaggio non sia troppo lungo	I am afraid the journey will be too long
Poco mancò che non cadesse	He came near falling (It lacked little that he should fall)
Non dubbito che non sia vero	I do not doubt that it is true

b. After a verb used negatively or interrogatively.

Non è vero che i ricchi siano sempre felici	It is not true that the rich are always happy
Di rado avviene che un forestiere parli italiano speditamente	It rarely happens that a foreigner speaks Italian fluently
Chi direbbe che fossero Inglesi?	Who would say they were English?

c. After conjunctions of time (before which), concession, and purpose (not yet accomplished), and those meaning 'as if,' 'whenever,' 'wherever,' 'without.' (Cf. 230, *a*.)

Glielo dirò prima che vengano	I shall tell you before they come
Purchè guarisca, non importa dell' altro	Provided he recovers, nothing else matters
Benchè lo dica lui stesso, non lo credo	Though he says so himself, I don't believe it
Tentò di comprare un vagabondo, perchè facesse una testimonianza falsa	He tried to pay a vagabond to give false testimony
Stava in pensiero, come se temesse qualche disgrazia	He was in anxiety, as if he feared some misfortune
Dovunque sia, lo troveremo	Wherever it is, we shall find it
Passarono diversi minuti senza che desse un segno di vita	Several minutes passed, without his giving a sign of life

d. In conditions contrary to fact or probability (cf. 93, *a*).

Se rimanesse, farebbe piacere a sua madre	If he should remain, he would please his mother
--	---

e. After impersonal verbs or expressions.

Si può dire che l'uomo abbia due nature	It may be said that man has two natures
Occorrerebbe che andasse via subito	It would be necessary for him to go away at once

*₁. When the subordinate verb in the subjunctive has a subject, the order is often such as to make that subject appear to belong with the impersonal main verb.

Tutto il paesaggio pareva che dicesse la tranquillità

La battaglia era venuta a quel punto in cui la direzione bisogna che sia supplita dal senno

All the landscape seemed to express tranquillity

The battle had reached the point where it is necessary that authority be replaced by judgment

f. After superlatives, and 'only.'

Lavora il più che sia possibile

La più bella città ch' io abbia mai vista

He works the most he can

The most beautiful city I have ever seen

**i.* Sometimes, for vivacity or emphasis, after comparatives.

Il brigandaggio è molto meno frequente che non lo fosse

Brigandage is much less frequent than it was

g. In an attributive clause which predicates of the antecedent something doubtful, limited, or not yet accomplished.

Un Americano che vada in Italia e studi il movimento politico

An American who should go to Italy and study the political situation (would find, etc.)

Cerca degli orecchini che accompagnino la collana

She is looking for earrings to match the necklace

Non c' è uno su dieci che la pensi come lui

There is not one in ten who is of his opinion

h. After indefinites.

Chi ci avesse visti dal basso, ci avrebbe presi per due pazzi

Any one who had seen us from below would have taken us for two madmen

Per quanto patisse, non si lagnò

No matter how much he suffered, he did not complain

Chiunque venga, non sarà ricevuto

Whoever may come, he will not be received

i. In indirect questions.

Tutti sanno quale famoso cacciatore egli fosse

Everybody knows what a famous hunter he was

Pagherei sapere quello che faccia

I wonder what he does

Sentì **quanta fosse** la grandezza di quell' uomo He realized how great was the nobility of that man

NOTE 1. For the subjunctive may usually be substituted the future, when it relates to future time. It is always future, when the matter is certain.

NOTE 2. **Che** is not infrequently omitted.

Una sera sembrò dicesse avessi dato retta ai suoi consigli! One evening it seemed that he said that if only I had given heed to his advice —!

170. Sequence of Tenses. *a.* A principal verb in the present, imperative, future, or present perfect is followed by the present or present perfect subjunctive.

Non vuole ch' io rimanga?	Do you not wish me to remain?
Dille che venga	Tell her to come
Non crederà che sia venuto	He will not believe I have come
Non ho richiesto che vada	I have not demanded that he go

b. A principal verb in any other past tense will be followed by the past or past perfect subjunctive.

Si diceva che avesse dei parenti poveri	It was said that he had some poor relatives
Bisognerebbe che partissi	I should have to leave
Non dicemmo che fosse morto	We did not say he had died

i. The past tenses of the subjunctive may, of course, follow a present tense of the main verb, where the sense requires it.

Crediamo che fossero partiti prima che noi ne avessimo notizia	We believe they had gone before we had news of it
--	---

171. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses. The subjunctive is used in the independent clause,

a. To supply the missing third person of the imperative (cf. 92, *a*).

Sia detto ad onor del vero	Be it said out of respect for the truth
----------------------------	---

b. In the past tense to express an augury or imprecation, usually unlikely of fulfillment.

Ho due canarini. Tu vedessi come I have two canaries. If you could
son graziosi! only see how pretty they are!

172. The Verb *dolere* 'grieve,' 'pain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: Dolere, dolendo, dolgo, dorrò, dolsi, doluto

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dolgo (döglio)	dogliamo (dolghiamo)	dolgà (döglia)	dogliamo (dolghiamo)
duoli	dolete	dolgà	dogliate
duole	dölgono (döglicheno)	dolgà	dölgano (döglicheno)

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

VOCABULARY

la difesa	defense	sebbene	although
il dovere	duty	accrēscere	increase
la faccia	face	alterare	alter
la salvezza	safety	comandare	command
lo scopo	purpose	deprimere, depresso	depress
lo spirito	spirit	press, lower	
militare	military	dimostrare	show, demonstrate
mite	mild, gentle	esitare	hesitate
selvaggio	savage, wild	espōre, esponendo, espōngo, espōsi,	
umano	human	espōsto	expose
vile	cowardly	impedire	prevent
contro	against	importare (impers.)	be important
finchè	as long as	lanciare	hurl
finchè . . . non (<i>w. subj.</i>)	until	punire	punish
qualora	whenever	richiedere, richiesi, richiesto	de-
qualunque (<i>adj.</i>)	whatever	mand	mand
		sembrare	seem (sembro)
		sparire	disappear

EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Lo scopo supremo delle istituzioni militari è la difesa del paese. 2. A questo scopo importa soprattutto che non sia depresso lo spirito militare. 3. Giuseppe Garibaldi ha sempre comandato forze troppo piccole perchè ci possa fornire insigni esempi di organizzazione; ma ha vinto. 4. Noi Americani possiamo dire sinceramente che non siamo militaristi; ma ci sembrerebbe un vile l'uomo che parlasse contro il dovere di esporre la vita, qualora sia necessario, per la patria. 5. Il nostro Lincoln era l'uomo più mite, più antimilitarista che sia stato al mondo. 6. Ma dimostrò che egli non avrebbe esitato un momento a lanciare il suo paese in una guerra tremenda, se la salvezza del paese stesso l'avesse richiesto. 7. Le guerre sono una cosa terribile, uno spettacolo selvaggio; speriamo che col tempo finiscano per sparire della faccia del terra. 8. Finchè il mondo rimane quello che è, bisognerebbe alterare profondamente la natura umana per impedire che la coscienza della superiorità nazionale non accresca le energie individue, in qualunque direzione esse vengano applicate.

II

1. Let us hope that wars may disappear from the face of the earth. 2. As long as the world remains what it is, it is important that men should know how to fight for their country. 3. In whatever direction they are going, they wish the soldiers to follow them. 4. Do you think that the supreme purpose of military institutions is the defense of the country? 5. The general gave orders that his soldiers should not expose their lives that day. 6. We wish to prevent the military spirit from increasing. 7. It grieves us that you should speak of it. 8. It seems to us that the defense of the country is important above all. 9. Although he was a mild man, the safety of the country demanded that he should

fight. 10. They would talk against a soldier who should hesitate to expose his life. 11. We are afraid that he will seem a coward, although he has done his duty. 12. The general had him punished, although he had shown the military spirit. 13. He exposed his life whenever the safety of the country demanded it. 14. We must alter the world before wars can disappear. 15. He seems the greatest general that has ever commanded our soldiers. 16. If we could reduce the military spirit, we should prevent wars from increasing. 17. The general ordered us to follow him in order not to expose his soldiers.

LESSON XXIX

THE INFINITIVE. THE VERB *DIRE*

173. The Infinitive. The infinitive may be used —

a. As a substantive, in all cases ; it often best translates the English gerund in -*ing* (cf. 193, d).

Mi duole il dirlo	It pains me to say it
Non è assurdo lo sperare che si possa rinunziare alla guerra	It is not absurd to hope that war may be given up
La produzione dell' Inghilterra è lungi dal bastare ai suoi bisogni	The production of England is far from sufficing for its needs
Le arti giovanano al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà	The arts are helpful to a country in its movement toward civilization
Stimava il ridere essere medicina sicura	He thought that laughing was a sure remedy
Al primo entrare	On first entering
Fu imprigionato per aver congiurato	He was imprisoned because of having conspired

b. As a verb, governing objects etc., being substituted very often, especially where the subject is identical, for a dependent clause (usually in the subjunctive) of time, cause,

command, purpose, result, condition or concession, or indirect discourse or question.

Le donne, a vederci passare, pian- gēvano	The women, as they saw us pass, were weeping
Mi telēfoni prima di venire	Telephone me before you come
Ditegli di scrīvermi	Tell him to write me
Ha promesso di mutar vita	He has promised to change his way of life
Chi è posto tanto in alto da non temere di cadere?	Who is so high that he need fear no fall?
L'ha detto in modo da farsi crēdere	He said it in such a way as to make them believe him
A sentirlo parlare, si direbbe che fosse Francese	If you heard him speak, you would say he was a Frenchman
Lo lasciarono partire, a patto di tornare l'indomani	They let him go, provided he should return next day
Credo di doverlo fare	I think I have to do it
Cercava qualche luogo ove fare il suo deposito	He was looking for some place where he might make his deposit

i. Or it may be at once substantive and verb, governing an object while itself an object.

Si propose di far un viaggio	He intended to make a journey
------------------------------	-------------------------------

c. Elliptically.

E poi da capo a parlare inglese	Then they began all over again to talk English
Ecco venire frettoloso un volontario	Here came up hastily a volunteer
Qui, il Griso a proporre, don Ro- drigo a discutere finchè ebbero concertata la maniera di con- durre a fine l'impresa	Hereupon Griso began to propose and Don Rodrigo to discuss, until they had arranged a method for bringing the enterprise to a conclusion
Che fare?	What is to be done?
Piuttosto morire che fare una tal cosa	I would rather die than do such a thing

174. Government of the Infinitive. The infinitive may depend upon —

a. A noun, by means of **da** or **di**.

Mācchina da scrivere	Typewriter
Ha intenzione di farlo	He intends to do it

b. An adjective.

1. By means of **a**.

Il coltello è adatto a tagliare	The knife is useful for cutting
Siamo pronti a partire	We are ready to leave
Fu il primo a entrare	He was the first to enter
Cose leggiadre a riguardare	Things lovely to look at

2. By means of **da**.

Il suolo è ripido da doverci posare i piedi ben pari	The ground is so steep that we must plant our feet very evenly
--	---

3. By means of **di**.

Siamo felici di vederlo	We are happy to see him
--------------------------------	-------------------------

c. A verb.

1. Directly, upon the following :

ardire dare	occōrrere be necessary
bastare suffice	osare dare
bisognare be necessary	parere appear
convenire be suitable	potere be able
dovere owe, must, ought	sapere know how
essere d' uopo, essere (di) mestieri, be necessary	sentire hear, feel
fare make, cause, have done	udire hear
lasciare allow, let	vedere see
	volere wish, will

2. By means of **a**. Verbs of motion or rest, and many verbs signifying the source, beginning, continuance, or promotion of an action, take **a** before the infinitive.

Andò à chiamarla	He went to call her
Si misero a discōrrere in italiano	They began to talk in Italian

Stette a sentire con aria di curiosità	He stood listening with an air of curiosity
Seguitavo a leggere ad alta voce	I went on reading aloud

3. By means of **di**. All other verbs govern the infinitive by means of **di**.

Mi par di averlo veduto	It seems to me I have seen him
Promette di venire	He promises to come
M' ha scritto di mandarglielo	He has written me to send it to him
Dimostra di avere gran ricchezza	He appears to have great wealth

4. In special senses, by means of **per** and **da**. The infinitive with **per** expresses purpose; with **da** it expresses obligation, or propriety, and usually has passive force.

O anima che vai per esser lieta	O spirit who goest to (in order to) be joyful
Che resta da fare?	What remains to be done?
Ci sarà molto da aspettare?	Will there be long to wait?
Le costruzioni francesi sono da evitarsi	French constructions should be avoided

175. The Verb *dire* 'say,' 'tell.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Dire, dicendo, dico, dirò, dissi, detto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dico	diciamo
dici	dite
dice	dicono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dica	diciamo
dica	diciate
dica	dícano

VOCABULARY

il bilancio	balance, account
la civiltà	civilization
la coscienza	consciousness
l'esercito	<i>m.</i> army
il danno	damage
l'evenienza	<i>f.</i> occurrence
l'onda	<i>f.</i> wave

l'ordinamento	<i>m.</i> arrangement
la povertà	poverty
il sostegno	support
la spesa	expense
assurdo	absurd
civile	civilized, civil
fiacco	weak

appartenere belong
 diffondere, diffusi, diffuso scatter
 figurare figure
 rinunziare a give up (*sometimes di before an inf.*)

trattarsi di be a question of
 eroicamente heroically
 forse perhaps
 in quanto a as for
 verso towards

EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Non è da dimenticare che in Italia lo spirito militare è molto fiacco.
2. Naturalmente, in quanto a spese militari, la miglior cosa sarebbe che se ne potesse fare a meno.
3. Forse potrà venire un giorno in cui queste spese non figureranno più nei bilanci delle nazioni civili.
4. Ma è assurdo il credere che una nazione possa rinunziare a tenersi pronta per ogni evenienza.
5. La relativa povertà dell’ Italia moderna dipende soprattutto, come credo d’ aver dimostrato, dai suoi cattivi ordinamenti amministrativi, ordinamenti che non servono di sostegno al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà.
6. Questa onda di sentimento, che si cerca di diffondere nel popolo italiano, contraria a tutto ciò che sa di vita militare, finirà per esser di grave danno al paese.
7. Non si tratta di fare del militarismo, ma di far sì che ogni buon figlio d’ Italia abbia la coscienza d’ appartenere a un grande popolo, e sia determinato a fare eroicamente il suo dovere.
8. Non sarebbe difficile far combattere i soldati quando l’ esercito fosse condotto da buoni generali.

II

1. We think we have shown that it is not a question of the military spirit.
2. We must not give up holding ourselves in readiness to defend our country.
3. It is to be hoped that war will vanish from the face of the earth.
4. We wished to go to France, although the expenses of the journey would be great.
5. It is absurd to think that the army is not led by good generals.
6. We are happy to know that they are talking against everything that smacks of war.

7. It is important that we should be ready to leave. 8. They ended by giving up following the army. 9. They would have told me to write them about it if they had wished to know. 10. He hesitates to leave, and we are trying to prevent him from leaving. 11. Would it be difficult to make the army leave before the general returns? 12. It pains us to see that he cannot write. 13. It pleases us to belong to a great people. 14. They have several letters to write. 15. They are glad to write them. 16. We cannot hear them sing.

LESSON XXX

NUMBER IN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. THE VERB *PIACERE*

176. Invariables. All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in a consonant, an accented vowel, *u*, *i*, or *ie* (except *moglie*), do not change for the plural.

il re the king; i re
 il lapis the pencil; i lapis
 la libertà liberty; le libertà
 il chiù the cue-owl; i chiù
 la crisi the crisis; le crisi
 la sèrie the series; le sèrie

177. Feminine Plurals. *a.* Feminine nouns, and feminine forms of adjectives, ending in unaccented *a*, change *a* to *e* in the plural.

la spazzola the brush; le spazzole

1. Those in *-ca* and *-ga* form the plural respectively in *-che* and *-ghe*, inserting the *h* to preserve the hard sound of *c* and *g*.

la barca the boat; le barche
 la bottega the shop; le botteghe
 la mano bianca the white hand; le mani bianche

2. Nouns (but not adjectives) in unaccented **-cia** and **-gia** preceded by a consonant drop **i** before the **e** of the plural.

la provincia the province; **le province**

la piaggia the beach; **le piagge**

But

la nostalgia homesickness; **le nostalgie**

la sottana grigia the gray shirt; **le sottane grigie**

3. Feminine nouns in **o** and **e** (not **ie**) form their plural in **i**.

la mano the hand; **le mani**

la lite the lawsuit; **le liti**

178. Masculine Plurals. *a.* Masculine nouns in **a**, **o**, **e** (not **ie**), and masculine forms of adjectives in **o** or **e**, form their plural in **i**.

il papa the pope; **i papi**

il problema the problem; **i problemi**

il socialista the socialist; **i socialisti**

il buono Inglese the good Englishman; **i buoni Inglesi**

l' Italiano intelligente the intelligent Italian; **gl' Italiani intelligenti**

1. Those in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural respectively in **-chi** and **-ghi**.

il duca the duke; **i duchi**

il collega the colleague; **i colleghi**

Except Bèlga 'Belgian,' of common gender, which has a masculine plural **Bèlgî**, and a feminine **Bèlghe**.

2. Those in unaccented **-io** change **io** to **i** (often written **i**, **j**, or **ii**). Where the **i** is accented, the plural is always **ii**.

lo studio the study; **gli studi**

il foglio the sheet of paper; **i fogli**

But

l' oblio forgetfulness; **gli oblii**

3. When a noun in **-ista** refers to a woman and takes the feminine gender, its plural ends in **e**.

la socialista the woman socialist; **le socialiste**

b. Those in *-go* form their plural in *-ghi*.

I' albergo the hotel; *gli alberghi*

i. But those in unaccented *-fago*, and those in unaccented *-logo* when referring to scientists, form the plural in *-gi*.

antropōfago man-eating; *antropōfagi*
il filōlogo the philologist; *i filōlogi*

But

il diālogo dialogue; *i diāloghi*

2. **Mago** has two plurals, differing according to meaning: **maghi** 'magicians' and **magi** 'Magi.'

c. Those in *-co* form their plural in *-chi* if the penult is accented; otherwise in *-ci*.

il mēdico ricco the rich physician; *i mēdici* ricchi
il fuōco māgico the magic fire; *i fuōchi māgici*
il ciēco stanco the tired blind man; *i ciēchi stanchi*
il mōnaco austriaco the Austrian monk; *i mōnaci austriaci*

i. The following words, though the penult is accented, form their plurals in *-ci*:

<i>amico</i> friend	<i>grēco</i> Greek
<i>nemico, inimico</i> enemy	<i>pōrco</i> pig

NOTE. Greco has a regular plural in the phrase *vini grechi* 'Greek wines.'

2. The following words, although the penult is unaccented, form their plural in *-chi*:

<i>cārico</i> loaded	<i>mānico</i> handle	<i>strāscico</i> train of gown
<i>dimēntico</i> neglectful	<i>pārroco</i> parish priest	<i>tōssico</i> poison
<i>fōndaco</i> warehouse	<i>stōmaco</i> stomach	<i>trāffico</i> traffic
<i>lāstrico</i> pavement	<i>stōrico</i> historic	

NOTE. There are further exceptions under **b**, **i**, and **c**, **2**, but the words are obsolete or rare.

179. Irregular Plurals. *a.* Certain masculine nouns in **o** have an irregular plural in **a** with change of gender. These are

- un centinaio about a hundred; **delle centinaia**
- un migliaio about a thousand; **delle migliaia**
- il miglio mile; **le miglia**
- il paio pair; **le paia**
- l'uovo egg; **le uova**

b. Many others have this feminine plural in **a** in addition to a regular masculine one in **i**. For most of the following words the form in **a** is very common; especially for those referring to parts of the body when taken collectively:

- l'anello ring; **gli anelli, le anella**
- il budello bowel; **i budelli, le budella**
- il calcagno heel; **i calcagni, le calcagna**
- il castello castle; **i castelli, le castella**
- il dito finger; **i diti, le dita**
- il ginocchio knee; **i ginocchi, le ginocchia**
- il grido cry; **i gridi, le grida**
- il labbro lip; **i labbri, le labbra**
- l'osso bone; **gli ossi, le ossa**
- il pugno fist; **i pugni, le pugna**
- lo strido shriek; **gli stridi, le strida**

i.* In the following nouns the plural in **a has a different or more restricted meaning, usually more literal:

il braccio, i bracci, arm	le braccia arms <i>of the body</i>
il carro, i carri, wagon	il carro, le carra, wagon-load
il cervello, i cervelli, brain	le cervella brains <i>in the physical sense</i>
il ciglio, i cigli, visage	il ciglio, le ciglia, eyebrow
il coltello, i coltelli, knife	le coltella large knives
il corno, i corni, horn	le corna horns <i>of an animal</i>
il cuoio, i cuoi, leather	le cuoia hides, whole skins
il filo, i fili, thread	le fila collective
il fondamento, i fondamenti, foundation	le fondamenta foundations <i>of a building</i>

il frutto, i frutti, fruit
 il fuso, i fusi, spindle
 il g \ddot{e} sto, i g \ddot{e} sti, gesture
 il g \ddot{o} mito, i g \ddot{o} miti, elbow
 il l \acute{e} gno, i l \acute{e} gni, wood
 il lenzuolo, i lenzuoli, sheet
 il m \acute{e} mbro, i m \acute{e} mbri, member
 il muro, i muri, wall
 il riso, i risi, rice
 il sacco, i sacchi, sack
 lo staio, gli stai, barrel
 il suolo, i suoli, ground, pavement
 l' urlo, gli urli, cry

le frutta fruit *served on the table*
 le fusa purring
 il g \ddot{e} sto, le g \ddot{e} sta, exploit
 le g \ddot{o} mita elbows, *part of the body*
 le l \acute{e} gna wood *to burn*
 le lenzuola pair of sheets
 le m \acute{e} mbra parts of the body, *collectively*
 le mura all the walls of a building
 or city, *collectively*
 il riso, le risa, laughter
 il sacco, le sacca, sackful
 lo staio, le staia, barrelful
 il suolo, le suola, sole of a shoe
 le urla human cries

*2. The following have the *feminine plural in **a** only in poetry :

il fato	fate	il pomo	apple
il peccato	sin	il vestigio	trace, footprint

c. Plurals wholly irregular.

l' ala wing; le ali (le ale)
 il bue ox; i buoi
 il dio god; gli dei

la moglie wife; le mogli
 l' uomo man; gli uomini

*180. Plurals of Proper Names. **a.** Given names form their plurals according to the regular rules, except that masculines in **a** and feminines in **o** are invariable.

I Carli	The Charleses
I Gerem \ddot{a}	The Jeremias
L' Elene	The Helens
Le Clio	The Clios

b. Family names are invariable, unless ending in **o** and not compound.

Il Galile \ddot{o} , i Galile \ddot{i}	Galileo, the Galileos
Il Buondelmonte, i Buondelmonte	Buondelmonte, the Buondelmonte family
Il d \acute{e} lla Robbia, i d \acute{e} lla Robbia	Della Robbia, the Della Robbins

181. Plural of Compound Nouns. Compound nouns form their plural in one of four ways:

a. The second member only is variable.

il gentiluomo gentleman; i gentiluomini
il lavamano washstand; i lavamani

b. The first member only is variable.

il capopolo head of the popular party; i capipoli

c. Both members are variable.

la buonamano tip, fee; le buonemani
il palcoscenico proscenium arch; i palchiscenici

d. Both members are invariable.

il lustrascarpe bootblack; i lustrascarpe
il portavoce megaphone; i portavoce

***182. Defective Nouns.** *a.* The following nouns have no singular:

gli annali annals	le forbici scissors	gli occhiali spectacles
le busse beating	i maccheroni macaroni	le tenebre darkness
le esequie obsequies	le nozze wedding	etc.

b. The following have no plural:

la calvizie baldness	la fame hunger	la sete thirst
la canizie white hairs	la mane morning	etc.
la copia plenty	il pepe pepper	

Many names of metals, and many abstract nouns.

c. Many nouns, though not strictly defective, are used almost exclusively in either the singular or the plural. Such are

la progénie, la prole, la stirpe, race, progeny	i rüderi ruins
i pósteri posterity	gli spinaci spinach

d. Some nouns have a different meaning in the plural.

la molta spring, catch	le molle tongs
il rostro beak	i rostri tribune, rostrum
il vezzo custom	i vezzi caresses

*183. **Collectives.** Collective nouns which are plural in meaning but singular in form take a verb or adjective in the singular.

Sono gente che non viaggia mai They are people who never travel
 Avevo lasciato tutta la mia röba a I had left all my things in Paris
 Parigi

*184. **Distributive Singular.** The singular is used in Italian, of nouns referring to parts of the body or to clothing, to mean 'one each,' where the plural would be used in English.

Alzarono la mano destra They raised their right hands
 Si levarono il cappello They took off their hats

But

Fece tagliar loro le mani He had their hands cut off (both hands of each)

a. Yet the adjective in such cases agrees in the plural.

L'idea d' uscirne sani e salvi non The idea of getting out safe and sound never entered their heads
 passò per il capo a nessuno

185. The Verb *piacere* 'please,' 'be pleasing.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Piacere, piacendo, piaccio, piacerò, piaci, piaciuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

piaccio	piacciono
piaci	piacete
piace	piacciono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

piaccia	piacciamo
piaccia	piacciate
piaccia	piacciono

VOCABULARY

l' albergo <i>m.</i> hotel	la bottega shop
l' antologìa <i>f.</i> anthology	il chirurgo surgeon
l' arancio <i>m.</i> orange-tree	la città city
la barca boat	il diàlogo dialogue
il Belga Belgian	il dito finger

il domēstico	domestic	l' uovo	<i>m.</i>	egg
le fōrbici	scissors	la virtù		virtue, power
il frutto	fruit			
il fungo	mushroom	antico		ancient
la gente	folk, people	austriaco		Austrian
il ginōcchio	knee	bēlico		pertaining to war, of warfare
Giulio Cēsare	Julius Cæsar	bellico		warlike
la guancia	cheek	britānnico		Britannic
il labbro	lip	caduco		weak
il lapis	pencil	cārico		loaded
il lavamano	washstand	cięco		blind
il legno	wood	clāssico		classic
la letteratura	literature	etrusco		Etruscan
il luogo	place, location	filosōfico		philosophical
il lustrascarpe	bootblack	forzato		forced
la macchia	brambles, thicket	grēco		Greek
la marcia	march	lāico		laic, layman
la metrōpoli	metropolis	ricco		rich
la moglie	wife	scārico		run down, free, unloaded
la molla	spring, mainspring	simpātico		nice, congenial
le molle	tongs	stanco		tired
il muro	wall	tīpico		typical
il nemico	enemy	ubriaco		drunk
il paio	pair			
il pārroco	parish priest	accendere,		accesi, acceso, light,
il soprābito	overcoat			kindle
la spēcie	kind, sort	caricare		load, wind up
lo stivale	boot	lustrare		black, polish
il tacco	heel	rōmpere,		ruppi, rōtto break
la tēsta	head	tagliare		cut

EXERCISE

I

1. They have their boots blacked. 2. The Britannic kings were old. 3. The watches are run down, both of them. 4. They must be wound up. 5. The mainspring is broken. 6. The Greek boot-blacks had little shops in all the great metropolises. 7. Bring me

some wood for the fires. 8. Let us take a walk outside the walls. 9. The Etruscan cities have been dead for centuries. 10. She has burnt her fingers. 11. The philosophical Greeks studied political institutions. 12. Julius Cæsar tells us that the ancient Belgians were a warlike people. 13. I have lost two pairs of scissors, and all my pencils. 14. Her lips and cheeks are red. 15. The Austrian surgeons are very rich. 16. There are orange-trees in our garden. 17. Oranges are the fruit of the orange-tree. 18. The soldiers are not drunk but tired ; they have made many forced marches. 19. Scissors are adapted to cutting. 20. The fires were kindled by hostile soldiers.

II

1. The ancient Greeks were a very civilized people. 2. The boats are loaded. 3. Monks and laics are all enemies of the army. 4. Please give me the tongs. 5. The doctors finished their studies in two Austrian cities. 6. The old servants are not rich ; they are blind. 7. It is difficult to find mushrooms. 8. They will search for them in the woods and other places. 9. My friends have some anthologies of Greek and Italian literature. 10. The rich politicians have taken off their overcoats. 11. In the hotels of French cities one is very comfortable. 12. The classic literatures were very congenial to him. 13. The Etruscan kings had domestic wives. 14. He had their heads cut off. 15. The virtues of the ancient Greeks were many. 16. He brought me several packages of fruit. 17. They are typical Englishmen. 18. By [with] dialogues one learns the spoken language. 19. I like Mrs. B., I think she is very nice. 20. Send me six eggs and three kinds of fruit. 21. My Greek friends will arrive to-morrow. 22. They seem typical parish priests. 23. It is absurd to say the ancient civilizations were not great. 24. The French are an agreeable people. 25. They are people who think the military spirit is an evil. 26. Her Austrian friends (*f.*) are very nice. 27. Surgeons and doctors become tired because of working too much. 28. Guns are instruments of warfare.

LESSON XXXI

MODAL AUXILIARIES. THE VERB DOVERE

186. Modal Auxiliaries. *a.* The modal auxiliaries are **volere** 'wish,' 'will,' **potere** 'be able,' **dovere** 'be obliged,' expressing what *must*, *may*, *should*, *ought to*, or *is to* happen.

b. As these verbs are not defective like their English equivalents, **potere** and **dovere** may as auxiliaries be conjugated in the compound tenses. The dependent infinitive remains in the present tense, whereas in English it must be thrown into the compound past tense.

Avrebbe dovuto farlo	He ought to have done it
Non avrebbe potuto venire	He could not have come
Non ha potuto andarvi oggi	He has not been able to go there to-day

i. But cf. 140, *c*, 2.

c. These verbs follow the regular rules for the agreement of the past participle (cf. 194, *b*).

Ci sarebbero voluti pochi soldi	It would have taken but a few cents
Tali sono oggi, quali li hai potuti vedere	Such they are to-day as you have been able to see (them)

d. When governing an infinitive, these verbs may take the auxiliary of the dependent verb.

Non era voluto partire	He had not wished to leave
Non hanno potuto lavorare	They could not work
Sarebbe dovuto venire	He ought to have come
È cominciato a ammalare	He began to be taken ill

**i.* When the infinitive is passive, the modal auxiliary may be thrown into the passive and the infinitive remain active.

Non potè esser portato	} He could not be carried
Non fu potuto portare	

2. Used absolutely, without infinitive, the auxiliary is **avere**.

Ha voluto ma non ha potuto He wished to but could not

187. Special Uses of the Modal Auxiliaries.

a. Special uses of **volere**.

1. The conditional means 'should like,' 'want.'

Vorrei visitare la città I should like to see the sights of
the city

2. 'Will you?' unless it means 'Do you wish?' 'Should you like?' is often best translated not by **volere** but by the present tense of the verb.

Mi fa il piacere di indicarmi la strada? Will you do me the kindness to show me the way?

3. Cf. 133, a, 1 and 2.

b. Special uses of **potere**.

1. It translates 'may' or 'might' in independent clauses (the subjunctive translates them in dependent ones).

Si può dire che tutti i Tedeschi sappiano cantare It may be said that all Germans know how to sing.

Potrebbe darsi It might be, it might be the case

Potevano essere le due It might have been two o'clock

2. Non poter a meno di means 'not be able to help.'

Non potei a meno di ridere I could not help laughing

3. Poter su 'have power over,' 'influence.'

Sortì da natura fortissimo ingegno e animo fiero. I casi della vita molto poterono sull' uno e sull' altro

He had by nature a powerful genius and an intrepid spirit. The chances of life had great influence upon both (*lit.* had much power over the one and the other)

4. Cf. 132, a, 1.

c. Special uses of *dovere*.

1. In the conditional it means 'ought'; in the other tenses, 'must,' 'have to,' 'is to,' etc.

Dovrebbe pagarlo subito He ought to pay it at once

Deve pagarlo subito He must pay it at once

Doveva passare l'inverno a Nizza He was to pass the winter at Nice

2. For the 'must' or 'must have' of probability is substituted the future or future perfect of the dependent verb (cf. 141, *a*, 1).

3. In the first person singular present indicative it translates 'Shall I?' in the sense of 'Do you wish me to?'

Dèvo fare i bauli? Shall I pack the trunks? (Do you wish me, is it time, to pack the trunks?)

188. The Verb *dovere*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dovere*, *dovendo*, *dovrà*, *dèvo* or *dèbbo*, *dovéi*, *dovuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dèvo, *dèbbo*, (*dèggio*) *dobbiamo*

dèvi, *dèi* *dovete*

dève, (*dèbbe*), *dèe* *dèvono*, *dèbbono*, (*dèggiono*)

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dèva, *dèbba*, (*dèggia*) *dobbiamo*

dèva, *dèbba*, (*dèggia*) *dobbiate*

dèva, *dèbba*, (*dèggia*) *dèvano*, *dèbbano*, (*dèggiano*)

Imperative wanting.

VOCABULARY

il chilo kilogram

di là on that side

il conto bill, account

di qua on this side

la corsa run, course

nemmeno not even

il fornaio baker

però however

la moneta coin, piece

soltanto only

il resto change

stretto tight, narrow

il servizio little service

tra within, between

difilato straight ahead

costare	cost	rifare	make again rebuild
dubitare	doubt	ripetere	repeat
mormorare	murmur	rivoltare	turn back
osservare	observe	sbagliare	make a mistake
ricontare	count over, recount	voltarsi	turn

EXERCISE

I

— Egisto, va' qui dal fornaio a comprare mezzo chilo di pane, di quello da trenta centesimi il chilo. Eccoti una lira, sta' attento, fatti dare il resto. E mi raccomando, non ti fermare per la strada, eh? —

Queste parole erano dette a Egisto dalla mamma. Il bambino a cui non pareva vero di fare i servizini a sua madre, andò difilato dal fornaio; prese il pane e il resto della lira, e via verso casa, senza nemmeno voltarsi di qua o di là.

Quando fu a mezza strada ebbe un' idea: quella di ricontare i denari del resto; erano sei monete da dieci centesimi e due da un soldo, dunque il conto non tornava.

— Facciamolo meglio — mormorò tra sè Egisto — se un chilo di pane costa 30 centesimi, mezzo chilo costa 15. Il fornaio doveva darmi 85 centesimi di resto, invece me ne ha dati soltanto 70. —

Egisto non stette più a pensare; rivoltò, e tornò di corsa dal fornaio, e gli disse:

— Sa, Lei ha sbagliato, mi ha dato tre soldi meno di resto; guardi.

— Proprio, bambino? — rispose il fornaio — Li avrai persi per la strada.

— No, no, — ripetè il ragazzo con vivacità; — li tenevo stretti stretti in questa mano.

Il fornaio lo guardò; e gli lesse in viso un' aria tale di sincerità, che non dubitò più. Gli ridiede i soldi, ma gli osservò:

— Ho sbagliato, e lo riconosco; però un'altra volta sta' attento, e il conto rifallo subito qui in presenza mia.

II

1. We must always count our money. 2. She could not do without bread. 3. He would not have been able to help losing his way. 4. Egisto's mother told him not to stop on the way. 5. She says to him: "Here are two lire for you. Don't forget to bring me the change." 6. Go to the baker's, hurry, and be careful. 7. He ought to have brought it to her. 8. Shall I light the fire in all the rooms? 9. The boy ought to have brought two lire; it might be that he had lost them on the way. 10. His mother told him to hurry, that he might bring her the bread before lunch. 11. He was not able to start before eleven, he could not have brought it to her in time. 12. He had the change given him. 13. It must be ten o'clock. 14. He had in his pocket three ten-centesimo pieces and four one-cent pieces. 15. I do not doubt that it is to happen. 16. He had to return at once to the baker's. 17. Egisto was not to stop on the way. 18. His mother feared, if he did not hurry, that he might lose his way. 19. They have not been able to rebuild the walls of those cities. 20. It would have taken ten years. 21. They ought to have told us so before beginning the work. 22. Bakers make bread. 23. It was twelve o'clock before he returned. 24. His mother thinks he has lost his way. 25. The baker might have made a mistake. 26. He might have given me two cents too little. 27. No, he has given me three cents too much.

DIALOGO

DAL SARTO

— Vuol venire con me dal sarto? Mi devo provare un abito da passeggio.

— Volentieri. Dev' essere pronto anche il soprabito che ho fatto pulire. Com' è il nuovo abito?

— È fatto di una stoffa di lana leggiéra, a quadrettini neri e bigi. È un color pratico.

— Eccoci arrivati. Il sarto sta al terzo piano.

— Buon giorno, Signori. Sono venuti per la prova? Tutt'è pronto. Aspettino un momento che venga il giovane. Ecco. Come le piace?

— Mi pare che i calzoni siano un pochettino troppo lunghi. E la giubba non mi sta bene sulle spalle; è troppo attillata. Che ne pensa?

— Le maniche mi sembra che siano un po' troppo corte e anche larghe.

— Come crede, Signore. Lasci fare a me. Siamo in tempo a cambiar tutto facilmente. E Lei, Signore, non le occorre niente?

— Per dir la verità, ho proprio bisogno di una nuova *redingote*. Siccome non mi piace la roba bell'e fatta, devo ordinarlo. Può farmelo fra tre giorni? Sto per far un viaggio.

— Altro! Glielo farò trovare in casa giovedì sera. Ma ci vuole la misura. Prendiamola subito.

— Vabbene. Si deve pagare anticipatamente o dopo?

— Ma che Le pare! Un amico del Signor B! Mi pagherà quando Le converrà. Non ha bisogno di nient'altro?

— No, grazie. Andiamo dunque, e al ritorno devo far delle compre, mi occorre tanta roba da vestiario: delle scarpe basse colorate, un cappello sqdo, e un altro a cencio, da viaggio. Il cilindro non lo prendo. Poi delle ciarpette di seta, chiare e scure.

— Come le piacciono le cravatte, rigate o scozzesi?

— Nè l' une nè l' altre. Le porto sempre liscie.

— Ecco una bottega che ha per insegnna: *Novità da uomini*. Entriamoci.

LESSON XXXII

RELATIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE
PRONOUNS. THE VERB *UDIRE*

189. The Relative Pronoun. *a.* For the forms, see 114.

b. Special uses of *che*:

1. It is often used elliptically, without preposition, in adverbial or descriptive clauses.

Paeše *che* vai uşanza che trövi

Whatever country you go to, [follow]
whatever customs you find.

(In Rome, do as the Romans do)
He came at the moment when I
was eating

È venuto nel momento *che* stavo
mangiando

A woman of whom every one did
nothing but say how good she
was

Una donna *che* tutti non facevano
altro che dire che l' era tanto
buona

2. When its antecedent is a phrase, it must take the article.

Avevamo il largo e profondo fosso
alle spalle con solo uno stretto
ponte per passo, *il che* rendeva
difficile la ritirata

We had behind us the wide, deep
ditch, with only a narrow bridge
for crossing, which fact made
retreat difficult

c. *Cui*, which is usually used after prepositions, may be used as a direct object, where *che* (which may be either subject or object) might cause ambiguity.

E caddi come l'uom *cui* sonno
piglia And I fell like one whom sleep
overtakes

d. *Il quale*, which is either adjective or pronoun, is used (because declinable) to avoid ambiguity, and it seems rather to be preferred for general use, especially with a plural antecedent.

Quelli non ērano tempi nei quali un presidente di Consiglio potesse agevolmente venir mutato

Non ci maravigliamo che la scena de' *Promessi Sposi* sia stata posta dall' autore in quel di Lecco, nei luoghi ove lo riportavano le prime e le più care sue reminiscenze, dai quali egli si era dovuto staccare per sempre con un vivo dolore

Those were not times in which a President of Council could easily be changed

We do not wonder that the scene of "The Betrothed" was laid by the author in the territory of Lecco, in the places whither his earliest and dearest recollections bore him, from which he had to sever himself with sharp grief. (The masculine form *quali* can evidently refer only to *luoghi*)

190. The Demonstrative Pronoun. a. *Questo*, *quello*, *cotesto*.

1. For the forms of *questo* and *quello*, see 86; *cotesto*, *codesto*, is inflected like *questo*.

2. **Questo** refers to what is near the speaker; **cotesto**, **codesto**, to what is near the person addressed; **quello**, to what is more or less removed from both.

Che ne pēnsa di **questo** cavallo?
Come si chiāmano **quelle** colline?
M' è piaciuto parecchio **codesto**
abito

What do you think of **this** horse?
What is the name of **those** hills?
I greatly liked your costume, **that**
costume of yours

3. **Quello** and **questo** mean respectively 'the former' and 'the latter'; but **questo**, 'the latter,' is always mentioned first.

Il cavallo e il bove sono tutt' e due utilissimi all' uomo, ma si affeziona meno a **questo** che a **quello**

The horse and the ox are both extremely useful to man, but we have **more** affection for **the former** than for **the latter**

4. To mean 'this one' and 'that one' when speaking of things, **questo** and **quello** are usually reinforced by **altro**.

Questo libro nōn l' hō letto. Hō letto *quell'* altro

This book I have not read. I have read **that** one

5. Special uses of *quello*:

a. *Quel che* = 'what' when it can be resolved into 'that which.'

Non credè quel ché gli dissi He did not believe what I told him

b. Before *di* or a relative, it means 'the one,' 'that one.'

Ho prestato loro il mio cavallo e quello di mio fratello I have lent them my own horse and my brother's

Quelli che vede non sono i Colli Euganei The ones you see are not the Euganean Hills

c. Elliptically.

In quel (territorio) di Milano In the country round about Milan

Tu non sei più quello (medesimo, or di prima) You are no longer the same person

In quella (ora) At that moment

b. *Questi, quegli, (quei, que')*. These forms are invariable masculine singulars, applicable to persons only, and used only as subject. *Questi* = 'this one,' 'this man'; and *quegli* = 'that one,' 'that man.'

Questi, l'orme di cui pestar mi vedi This man in whose footsteps you see me tread

c. *Costui, colui*. These have the same meaning as *questi* and *quegli*, but are completely inflected and are used in all cases.

i. Forms:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
costui	costoro
costei	

SINGULAR	PLURAL
colui	coloro
colei	

2. 'He who' is expressed by *colui che*, or preferably by *chi*.

Colui che guadagna ha il diritto di spendere He who earns has the right to spend

Il mondo è di chi se lo piglia The world belongs to him who takes it

Chi dice soldato, dice obbedienza Who says soldier, says obedience

a.* In this use, **chi is sometimes equivalent to 'if one.'

Chi è entrato nella vita politica, **If one** enters political life, it is not
non conviene che cerchi di arric- fitting that he seek to enrich
chirsi himself

NOTE. These demonstratives referring to persons only all end in the singular in **i**.

d. Ciò. **Ciò** is a neuter of rather general meaning, referring not to a person or a thing, but to a whole idea, meaning 'this' or 'that.'

Gl' Italiani sognavano libertà, ma The Italians dreamed of liberty,
ciò dispiaceva agli Austriaci but that displeased the Austrians

e. Desso, stesso, medesimo. These words all mean 'same,' 'selfsame,' 'that very,' etc. **Desso** is used only substantively, as a predicate complement, and for the most part of persons. **Stesso** and **medesimo** are either substantives or adjectives, and refer to either persons or things.

Questi è desso , e non favella	This is he, and he speaks not
Il re stesso l' ha fatto	The king did it himself
La fortuna medesima è il nostro	Fortune itself is our foe
nemico	

191. The Interrogative Pronoun. The interrogatives are—
chi? who? whom?

che? **che cosa?** what? what thing? (*pronoun*), what kind of? (*adjective*)

quale? (*inflected*) what? which? (*adjective or pronoun*)

di chi? whose?

quanto? (*inflected*) how much? how many?

come? what did you say?

Chi lo sa?

Who knows?

Che cosa ha detto?

What has he said?

Che libro legge?

What kind of a book are you reading?

Quale desidera?

Which (one) do you wish?

Di chi sono questi fiori?

Whose are these flowers?

Quanti ne vuole?

How many do you wish?

a. 'What a,' 'what,' in exclamations, is expressed by **che** without article (cf. 162, f.).

Chè panorama stupendo! What a magnificent view!

***b.** The interrogatives may be reinforced by **mai**.

Chi mai l' avrebbe creduto?	Who would ever have believed it?
Come mai l' ha fatto?	How did you ever do it?

***c.** **Cosa?** for **che cosa?** is frequent in familiar speech, but is not elegant.

Cos' hai fatto? What have you been doing?

192. The Verb *udire* 'hear.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Udire, udendo, qdo, udirò (udrò), udii, udito**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

qdo	udiamo
qdi	udite
qde	qdono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

qda	udiamo
qda	udiate
qda	qdano

VOCABULARY

il cārcere	prison	l' ufficiale	<i>m.</i> officer
la cōsta	coast	la vēla	sail; far vēla set sail
il cuōre	heart	la vergogna	shame
il dōsso	back	attēndere, attēsi, attēso	await
l' erōe	<i>m.</i> hero	avviarsi	take one's way, start
la fucilazione	execution, shooting	cavare	take out
l' inganno	<i>m.</i> deceit	corrispōndere	(like rispondere) correspond
l' išola	<i>f.</i> island	effettuare	effect
la marina	navy	fuggire	flee
il pōrto	port	sbarcare	land
lo sbarco	disembarkation	scuōtere, scōssi, scōsso	shake
la scintilla	spark	assai	much, very, rather
la strage	butchery	veneziano	Venetian
il supplizio	punishment, torture		
il tradimento	treachery, betrayal		

EXERCISE

I

I FRATELLI BANDIERA

I fratelli Attilio ed Emilio Bandiera, figli di nobile famiglia veneziana, erano ufficiali nella marina austriaca. Cuori generosi come quelli, al servizio dello straniero! — Vada la nostra vita, ma scuotiamoci da dosso tanta vergogna — devono aver pensato quei due giovani eroi. E fuggirono. Fuggirono in Grecia, nell' isola di Corfù. Di là, corrispondendo coi loro amici d' Italia, pensarono di effettuare uno sbarco sulle coste della Calabria, per accendere la prima scintilla di guerra in quel di Napoli. Fecero vela con pochi compagni, e sbarcarono al porto di Cotrone.

Ma l' inganno e il tradimento li aspettavano su quella terra; furono presto arrestati e immediatamente condannati alla fucilazione. La strage fu consumata nella città di Cosenza. Attesero calmi l' ora fatale, sentendo in cuore la gioia di dare il loro sangue alla patria. E quando i soldati del Borbone vennero a cavarli dal carcere per condurli a morte, essi e sette loro compagni si avviarono al luogo del supplizio, cantando serenamente: *Chi per la patria muor, vissuto è assai.*

II

1. The Bandiera brothers, who were officers in the Austrian navy, wished to shake from their backs the shame of being in the service of the foreigner.
2. What awaited them in the territory of Venice?
3. Deceit and treachery awaited those brothers in the land of the Bourbon.
4. That is not what they hoped.
5. Who knows how many men have given their lives for their country?
6. He who reads the history of Italy must admire her heroes.
7. What a beautiful history!
8. What do you think of it?
9. What I have read of it pleases me very much.
10. Which of the Bandiera brothers was the older?
11. We sang as we took our

way to the place of punishment. 12. What did you sing? 13. We sang, "He who dies for his country, has lived enough." 14. They were arrested, and what is worse, sentenced to be shot. 15. The officers had them punished, which was not to be expected. 16. They do not believe that what you tell them is true. 17. We have sold our house, and that of our brother. 18. I have taken my new dresses out of the box. 19. I do not like this one; I think the other one is more beautiful.

LESSON XXXIII

PARTICIPLES. THE VERB *PORRE*

193. The Present Participle. The present participle has two forms: a form in *-ante*, *-ente*, which Italian grammar recognizes as the participle, and one in *-ando*, *-endo*, which Italian grammar calls the "gerundive."

a. The form in *-ante*, *-ente*, has the character of adjective, substantive, or verb, and is inflected like an adjective in e.

1. As adjective it is in frequent use.

Il grillo parlante	The talking cricket
I principi regnanti	The reigning princes

2. Any present participle with an article before it becomes a substantive, as **l' amante** 'the lover.'

3. As verb it is perhaps less common than the form in *-ando*, *-endo*, and rarely takes an object. It is used, with object, of the verbs **avere**, **contenere**, **fare**, **formare**, **indicare**, **rappresentare**, **tenere**, etc.

I treni a venti wagoni-letto	Trains having sleeping-cars
------------------------------	-----------------------------

b. The form in *-ando*, *-endo*, has the character of verb or adverb, and is invariable.

1. As a verb it may replace a clause of time, cause, concession, condition, or simple explanation, and may always govern an object.

Andando insieme al teatro, chiac-

While they were going to the thea-
ter they chatted of many things

Trovāndomi quell' autunno a casa,
e ricordāndomi di quel vecchio,
andava spesso a visitarlo

As I happened to be at home that
fall, and to remember the old
man, I went often to visit him

Sentēndosi incapace di muoversi,
disse nonostante queste parole
audaci

Knowing that he was incapable of
a movement, he yet spoke these
audacious words

Rimproverāndolo, potrà forse per-
suaderlo a mutar vita

If you reprove him, you will per-
haps be able to persuade him to
change his way of life

c. To translate the English present participle,

1. With the verb 'to be,' cf. 102.

2. When standing alone or with object after a noun, it is often best to use a simple relative clause.

There is a lady **waiting**

C' è una signora che aspetta

And like a wasp **withdrawing** its
sting

E come vespa che ritragge l' ago

3. After a verb of sensation use the infinitive.

They saw us **coming**

Ci videro venire

I heard her **singing**

La sentii cantare

d. To translate the English gerund,

1. In general, use the infinitive.

Smoking is forbidden

È vietato di fumare

Working is praying

Lavorare è pregare

2. After a preposition, use the form in **-ando**, **-endo**, without preposition, unless the latter be essential to the sense; when the preposition is essential to the sense, retain it, and translate the participle by the infinitive.

On recognizing him, I hastened to
overtake him

Riconoscēndolo, mi spicciai per
raggiungerlo

One cannot make progress without studying	Non si può far progressi senza studiare
We talk of waging war	Parlamo di muover guerra

194. The Past Participle. *a.* The past participle may be used as adjective, noun, or verb.

Tutte le cose narrate si erano succedute con una rapidità maravigliosa	All the things narrated had succeeded each other with a marvelous rapidity
Il condannato era un pôvero Veneziano	The condemned man was a poor Venetian
Finita la messa	Mass being over

b. Agreement. As noun, as adjective, or when used without auxiliary, the past participle is always inflected. With auxiliary, it agrees —

1. After **essere**, in intransitive and passive verbs (cf. 99).
2. After **avere** (cf. 122).

a. But it is usually invariable —

- (1) When the object is part of a set phrase.

Ci ha dato fede	He has pledged his faith to it
Ho avuto fame	I was hungry

- (2) When the participle has a dependent infinitive governing a noun object.

Non ho voluto comprare quelle scarpe	I did not wish to buy those shoes
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

- (3) When **fatto** is substituted for the repetition of some other participle.

Certo negli ultimi venti anni si sono salite più montagne, che non s'era fatto in venti secoli	Certainly in the last twenty years more mountains have been scaled than in the preceding twenty centuries
--	---

b. Whereas it must usually agree —

(1) When the direct object is a personal pronoun or **ne**.

Dove li hanno veduti?	Where did they see them?
Mi hai portato (or portati) dei fiori?	Have you brought me any flowers?
Te ne ho portati molti!	I have brought you a great many!

(2) This is true even when the pronoun object belongs with a dependent infinitive.

Li avreste potuti vedere	You might have seen them
--------------------------	--------------------------

3. With reflexives (cf. 104, *c*, 1).

a. With impersonal forms, the participle agrees if the verb is normally conjugated with **essere**; if it is regularly conjugated with **avere**, there is no agreement.

Si è vissuti troppo	We have lived too long
Si è comprato molti cavalli per la cavalleria	Many horses were bought for the cavalry

b. When the pronoun is a dative "of reference or concern" (cf. 105, *b*, 3) it is not a true reflexive.

c. Inversion. In temporal clauses the past participle and its auxiliary are often inverted, **che** then taking the place of **quando**, **appena**, etc.

Liberato che fu	When he was liberated, as soon as he was liberated
Vinto che l' abbia, lo divora	When [as soon as] he has conquered it, he devours it

195. Absolute Constructions. These are extremely common in Italian, and may take the place of almost any kind of clause.

Detto fatto	No sooner said than done
Giunto tardi a casa, ed acceso il lume, si accorse subito del furto	Arriving home late, and having lighted the lamp, he at once noticed the theft

Dopo occupato l' altipiano, gl' Italiani cominciarono a tirare After occupying the elevation, the Italians began to fire

a. Cf. 136, *h*; 145, *d*.

196. The verb *porre* 'place.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Porre, ponendo, pongo, porrò, posì, posto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pongo	poniamo, ponghiamo
poni	ponete
pone	pōngono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ponga	poniamo, ponghiamo
ponga	poniate
ponga	pōngano

VOCABULARY

il bāvero	coat-collar	il Turco	Turk
il benefīzio	benefit	la vēndita	sale
il cannōne	cannon		
il cittadino	citizen		
la giacchetta	jacket	acquistare	acquire
la giovanetta	young girl	andārsene	go away
il giovanetto	boy, young man	appuntare	pin
il gruppo	group	dare il buon anno	wish a Happy New Year
l' incasso <i>m.</i>	receipts	formicolare	swarm
il metallo	metal	offrire, offrìsi, offerto	offer
il nastrino	little ribbon	puntare	aim
il pētto	breast	sparare	fire, shoot
lo scudo	shield		
la somma	sum	ciascuno	each, every one

EXERCISE

I

IL PICCOLO SCUDO

- Era il primo giorno dell' anno 1912, l' anno della nostra guerra contro i Turchi.
- La gente formicolava per le strade e si salutava dandosi il buon anno.
- Qua e là le persone, che passavano per le vie, erano fermate da gruppi di giovanetti e giovanette

che offrivano, a chi voleva comprarli, dei piccoli scudi di metallo bianco, portanti un nastrino coi tre colori della bandiera nazionale.

4. Su ogni scudo si vedeva un soldato che sparava, e un altro che puntava il cannone. 5. Gli scudetti erano venduti da quei giovani a benefizio dei nostri soldati che combattevano in Libia. 6. Costavano non meno di due soldi, ma ciascuno, prendendoli, poteva offrire quello che voleva. 7. E tutti i cittadini li acquistavano volentieri, con entusiasmo, e se li mettevano al bavero della giacchetta. 8. Li compravano anche le donne, e se li appuntavano sul vestito. 9. Quasi tutti ebbero ben presto sul petto questi piccoli scudi col nastrino tricolore. 10. L'incasso della loro vendita dette una somma considerevole.

II

1. The soldiers, while fighting in Libya, were led by the officers.
2. The combatants gave up firing, the cannon having been taken by the enemy.
3. That lady will pin the little shield upon her dress.
4. People flocking through the street and saluting each other wished each other a Happy New Year.
5. Having put the little ribbon on the collar of his coat, that citizen gave no less than three lire.
6. On New Year's Day of the year 1912, shields were sold for the benefit of the Italian soldiers.
7. As we entered the room, we found there a young girl singing.
8. We stayed, because we liked to hear her singing.
9. Having told us not to wait for them, they went away without speaking to him.
10. The shields bought, all soon had them at their breasts.
11. Little shields, on which was seen a soldier shooting, were offered by groups of young girls.
12. Do not go home before speaking to her.
13. Whoever wished to buy one, would pay not less than two cents.
14. By giving her two lire he won the approval of [made himself praised by] all the young people.
15. Have you bought a shield as you passed along the streets?
16. My brothers being both in Libya, I have bought two of them.
17. Having bought them, I shall give you one.

DIALOGO

DAL CALZOLAIO

— Ho da farmi fare un paio di scarpe. Andiamo in quella bottega di calzolaio ch' è sull' angolo di Via Parione. Ho sentito che quello lavora molto bene.

— Lo conosco di nome. Fa sempre le scarpe di lusso a una signora di mia conoscenza.

— Ecco il suo negozio. È davvero troppo grande ed elegante da chiamarlo bottega.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano?

— Io vorrei ordinare un paio di scarpe bianche, alte.

— Alte non si fanno le bianche, Signora. Ne ho viste delle signore americane che le portano, ma qui in Italia non si trovano mai. Però, potrei fargliene un paio su misura. Ma bisognerebbe prima fare delle forme. Prendiamo la misura del suo piede. Ecco presa la misura. Come le vuole? Di pelle?

— No, di tela, di buona qualità. Le porterò domani una mia scarpa per confrontarla colla forma. Ho sempre paura quando vado per la prima volta da un calzolaio, che mi faccia le scarpe troppo larghe e troppo corte.

— Non dubiti, Signora. Colle forme ben fatte non si può sbagliare.

— Mi dia due paia di stringhe, e faccia attenzione che non scricchiolino le scarpe. Questo paio che ho fu bagnato dalla pioggia la settimana scorsa, e d' allora scricchiolano ch' è un orrore.

— Ci baderò, Signora. E i tacchi come li vuole? Di tela?

— No, di cuoio, e piuttosto bassi. I tacchi alti sciupano i piedi.

— Baderò a tutto, Signora. Sono sicuro che rimarrà soddisfatta. Quanto al prezzo, ci accomoderemo quando saprò quanto tempo ci vuole per far le forme. Farò un prezzo discreto da venti a venti-cinque lire.

— Vabbene. Buon giorno.

— Arrivedella, Signora.

LESSON XXXIV

GENDER OF NOUNS. THE VERB *USCIRE*

197. Gender Determined by Form. *a.* Cf. 80, *b.*

b. Feminine are the nouns ending in *ie*, *si* (*except* *il brîndîši* 'toast'), and accented *ice*; and abstract nouns when accented on the last syllable: *la spècie* 'kind,' *la radice* 'root,' *la libertà* 'liberty.'

198. Gender Determined by Meaning. *a.* Cf. 80, *a.* Masculine are also—

1. Names of lakes; of mountains, *except* *le Alpi*, *le Ande*, *la Sierra Nevada*, and a few others; of rivers, unless ending in *a* (cf. *b*, 2); of empires, kingdoms, and provinces, unless ending in *a* or *de* (*except* *il Bengala*).

2. Names of trees, *except* *la quercia* 'oak,' *la palma* 'palm,' and *la vite* 'grapevine,' which are feminine, and *l' elce* 'ilex,' of common gender.

3. Names of metals, *except* *la latta* 'tin.'

4. Names of months, and of all days *except* *domenica*.

5. Other parts of speech used substantively.

b. Cf. 80, *a.* Feminine are also—

1. Names of fruits, which usually correspond to the names of the trees. If the latter end in *o*, *o* changes to *a*; if in *e*, there is merely a change of gender.

*Il pêspo, la pêsca
Il noce, la noçcê*

The peach-tree, the peach
The walnut-tree, the walnut

EXCEPTIONS. The following names, of masculine gender, are identical for tree and fruit :

l' ananasso pineapple	il limone lemon
il cedro lime	il pistacchio pistachio nut
il dàttero date	il pomo apple
il fico fig	il ribes currant

2. Names of cities, except **il Cairo** 'Cairo'; and of rivers ending in **a**, except **il Niagara**, **il Vòlga**, and a few others.

la Lòira the Loire	il Danubio the Danube
--------------------	-----------------------

199. Nouns having Two Genders with Different Meanings :

il cárccere imprisonment, prison	la cárccere, oftener le cárceri, prison
il dramma drama	la dramma dram
il fine purpose	la fine (il fine) end
il pianeta planet	la pianeta priest's cope
il prigione prisoner	la prigione prison
il tema theme	la tema fear

a. Some nouns, such as **fonte** 'spring,' **fòlgore** 'thunderbolt,' **trave** 'beam,' etc., are of common gender without change of meaning.

200. Gender of Names of Animals. a. Of such as change their form with change of gender, those ending in **o** change **o** to **a**, and those in **e** change **e** to **essa**, rarely **a** :

cavallo, cavalla; horse	gatto, gatta, cat
cignale, cignala, wild boar	leóne, leonessa, lion
colombo, colomba, dove	lupo, lupa, wolf
elefante, elefantessa, elephant	pavone, pavona, pavonessa, peacock

1. Irregular are —

cane, cagna, dog	gâmbero, gamberessa, crawfish
gallo, gallina, cock, hen	and others

2. Defective are —

toro, vacca	bull, cow
montone, arête ; pêcora	ram ; (sheep), ewe
vèrre ; tröia or scröfa	boar ; sow

b. Some of those ending in **e** or **u** are of common gender, and distinguished only by the article.

il serpe, la serpe, serpent il gru, la gru, crane.

c. Others have but one gender for both sexes.

1. Masculine are —

il coniglio rabbit	il serpente serpent
il delfino dolphin	il sōrcio mouse
il luccio pike	il topo rat
lo scarafaggio beetle	il tōrdo thrush

2. Feminine are —

l' āquila eagle	la rōndine swallow
la balena whale	la scīmmia monkey
la formica ant	la tōrtora turtle-dove
la lucērtola lizard	la vīpera viper
la mōsca fly	la volpe fox
la pantera panther	

201. Names denoting Sex in Human Beings :

maschio, fēmmina, male, female
 padre, madre, father, mother
 figlio, figlia, son, daughter
 fratello, sorēlla, brother, sister
 nōnno, nōnna, grandfather, grand-mother
 il nipote, la nipote, grandson, granddaughter; nephew, niece
 zio, zia, uncle, aunt
 cugino, cugina, cousin
 suōcero, suōcera, father-in-law, mother-in-law

gēnero, nuqra, son-in-law, daughter-in-law
 cognato, cognata, brother-in-law, sister-in-law; step-brother, step-sister
 patrigno, matrigna, stepfather, stepmother
 figliastro, figliastra, stepson, step-daughter
 compare, madrina, godfather, god-mother
 figlioccio, figlioccia, godson, god-daughter

202. Masculines in **a**. The following nouns, though ending in **a**, are of masculine gender :

Il boia 'executioner,' il duca 'duke,' il monarca 'monarch,' il poēta 'poet,' qualçosa 'something'; nouns in -ista denoting the

professions, sects, etc., when referring to men; **il colera** 'cholera,' **lo scià** 'shah,' **il sofà** 'sofa,' and some other words of foreign origin; **l' enigma** 'enigma,' **il problema** 'problem,' and other words from the Greek in **-ma**; and many geographical names.

203. Feminine Forms of Words Expressing Professions, Rank, or Character.

- abate** abbot, **abbadessa** or **badessa** abbess
- barone** baron, **baronessa** baroness
- camerière** waiter, **cameriéra** waitress, chambermaid, stewardess
- canônico** canon, **canonichessa** canoness
- cantore** singer, **cantante** (**cantatrice**)
- capitano** captain, **capitanessa** (*burl.*), captain's wife
- conte** count, **contessa** countess
- diavolo** devil, **diavolessa**
- dio** god, **dëa**, **diva**, goddess
- dottore** doctor, learned person, **dottora**, **dottoressa** (*often burl.*)
- duca** duke, **duchessa** duchess
- erçe** hero, **eroïna** heroine
- fante** page, **fantesca** maid-servant
- fattore** steward, (**fattora**), **fattoressa**, steward's wife
- filôsofo** philosopher, **filôsofa** (*burl.*), **filosofessa**
- forestiere** foreigner, **forestiera**
- governatore** governor, **governatrice**; **governatòra** governor's wife
- imperatore** emperor, **imperatrice** empress
- istitutore** teacher, tutor, **istitutrice** teacher, governess
- marchese** marquis, **marchesa** marchioness
- mêdico** physician, **medichessa**
- padrone** master, **padrona** mistress
- papa** pope, **papessa**
- patriarca** patriarch, **patriarchessa**
- pittore** painter, **pittrice**
- principe** prince, **principessa** princess
- priore** prior, **priora**, **prioressa**, prioress
- professore** professor, **professoressa**
- profeta** prophet, **profetessa** prophetess
- rë** king, **regina** queen

sacerdōte priest, sacerdotessa priestess
 scolare scholar, pupil, scolara
 sērvo servant, sērva
 stiratōre launderer, stiratōra, stiratrice laundress
 traditōre traitor, traditōra, traditrice traitress
 uditōre auditor, uditrice

204. The Verb *uscire* 'go out.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *uscire, uscēndo, ęscō, uscirō, uscii, uscito*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
ęscō	usciamo	ęsca	usciamo		usciamo
ęsci	uscite	ęsca	usciate	ęsci	uscite
ęscē	ęscono	ęsca	ęscano	ęsca	ęscano

VOCABULARY

acciaio	steel	rame	copper
argento	silver	Rēno	Rhine
fērro	iron	scarafaggio	beetle
fico	fig	Sēnna	Seine
gallina	hen	socialista	socialist
gēnero	son-in-law	suōcero, -a	father-in-law, mother-in-law
gru	crane	Tamigi	Thames
istitutore, -trice	teacher	tēma	theme
latta	tin	Tēvere	Tiber
limōne	lemon	traditōre, -tōra	traitor, traitress
pēcora	sheep	uva	grape
nōce	walnut-tree	vacca	cow
nuōra	daughter-in-law	vite	grapevine
olmo	elm	cōgliere, cōgliendo, cōlgo, cōglierō,	
qro	gold	cōlsi, cōlto	gather
padrōne	landlord, proprietor	uscire di	go out of
pero	pear-tree	generalmente	
pēsco	peach-tree	usually	
problēma	problem		
quērcia	oak		

EXERCISE**I**

1. Beetles are usually black.
2. The grape is the fruit of the vine.
3. He has bought himself three cows and some hens.
4. Gold and silver are precious metals.
5. It is said that figs are not gathered from brambles.
6. My father-in-law and mother-in-law, having risen early, left this morning at seven.
7. The Spaniard aimed the gun at the cranes.
8. Grapes are gathered from grapevines, peaches from peach-trees, pears from pear-trees, and walnuts from walnut-trees.
9. His theme was the problem of the socialists.
10. The cows are hungry.
11. What kind of fruit is there on the table? There are figs and lemons.
12. Sheep and cows are usually bought at the village.

II

1. Iron, steel, tin and copper are not precious metals.
2. My son-in-law, having gathered some walnuts and having given us some, has carried the rest home in his basket.
3. As I went out of the house, I saw them returning.
4. At the end of the year 1870 the hostile soldiers came out of Rome.
5. Having gone away before half past ten, I did not hear them talking about it.
6. Hurry, sir, if you wish to arrive before the train leaves.
7. Here are some grapes; let us gather some.
8. I do not doubt the proprietor will permit us to carry some home.
9. Traitors and traitresses are to be punished in whatever places they are found.
10. Elms and oaks are found in America.
11. The Rhine, the Thames, the Seine, and the Tiber are rivers of Europe.

LESSON XXXV

INDEFINITES. THE VERB *SCEGLIERE*

205. Alphabetical List of Indefinites.

alcuno, -i, -a, -e 'some,' 'any.' (Adj. or pron., used often with **non** to mean 'not any.')
altrettanto, -i, -a, -e (pron. or adj.) 'as much more,' 'as many more'
altri (pron.) 'another,' used of persons
altri . . . altri (pron.) 'some . . . others,' used of persons (also sing.)
altro (pron.) 'something else,' 'anything else'
altrui (pron.) 'to, of, *or* for another,' or 'others,' used of persons, and never in the nominative
certuni, -e (pron.) 'certain ones,' used of persons
checcchè, checchessia (pron.) 'whatever,' 'anything whatever'
chi . . . chi (pron.) 'some . . . others,' 'one . . . another'
chicchessia, chiunque (pron.) 'whoever,' 'any one whatever'
ciascuno, -a, ciascheduno, -a (pron.) 'each one,' used of persons
cosiffatto, -a, -i, -e (adj.) 'such'
nessuno, -a, niuno, -a (pron. or adj.) 'not one,' 'no one'
ogni (adj.) 'every'
ognuno, -a (pron.) 'every one,' used of persons
parecchi, -ie (pron. or adj.) 'several'
per quanto (adv.) 'however'
i più (pron.) 'most,' 'most people'
qualche (adj.) 'some'
qualcheduno, -a, qualcuno, -a (pron.) 'some one'
qualsiasi (pron.) 'something'
qualsiasi, qualsisia, qualsivoglia (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' never used in the nominative
qualunque (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever'
tale, -i (adj. or pron.) 'such'
tale . . . quale 'such . . . as'
tanto, -i, -a, -e 'so much,' 'so many'
tanto . . . quanto 'as much . . . as'
uno, -a (pron.) 'one'; (adj.) 'one,' 'a single'

un che, un non so che 'a something,' 'something or other'
 una cosa 'something,' clear in the speaker's mind
 un tale (adj.) 'such a'; (pron.) 'so-and-so,' 'such a one'
 l' uno e l' altro 'both'
 nè l' uno nè l' altro 'neither'
 l' uno o l' altro 'either'
 veruno, -a 'no one,' 'any one,' used in negative or doubtful sentences or expressions of doubt

a. An indefinite followed by an adjective requires **di**.

Niente di nuovo	Nothing new
Qualcosa di bello	Something beautiful

206. **Alcuno**, etc., 'some,' 'any.' **a.** **Alcuno** is either adjective or pronoun. In affirmative sentences its use is confined chiefly to the plural.

Alcuni lo dicono	Some say so
Ho alcuni libri russi	I have some Russian books

1. With **non**, **alcuno** in the singular regularly means 'none,' 'not any,' and follows the noun.

Nella regione devastata dal terremoto, non rimane più casa alcuna	In the region devastated by the earthquake, there is not a house remaining
---	--

2. 'Anything,' 'anybody,' in questions, are translated by the negative indefinites (cf. 210) **nulla**, **nessuno**, etc.

È venuto nessuno?	Has any one come?
Di quest' affare ne sa nulla?	Do you know anything of this matter?

3. 'Any one else' is **ogni altro**.

Ha fatto più di ogni altro	He has done more than any one else
----------------------------	------------------------------------

4. For the translation of 'any' as pronoun, cf. 124.

b. Qualcuno, qualcheduno, are singular substantive forms, meaning 'some one,' commonly preferred to alcuno in affirmative sentences.

C'è qualcuno che vorrebbe parlarle There is some one who would like to speak to you

Scelga qualcuno di questi quadri Choose some one of these pictures

c. Qualche, certo, are adjectives meaning 'some,' 'certain,' 'a certain.'

1. Qualche is used only in the singular, even when the idea is plural.

A quel pōvero si deve qualche That poor man should have some aiuto help

Vi stēttero qualche giorno They stayed there some days

2. Certo requires un in the singular.

Certe abitūdini sono da riprovarsi Certain habits are blameworthy
Un certo Ciceruacchio menò i A certain Ciceruacchio led the Romani alla rivolta Romans to revolt

d. Qualcosa, meaning 'something,' is always used substantively.

Mi hanno detto che ha qualcosa They tell me you have something per me for me

1. When referring to something in the mind, 'something' is translated una cosa.

Mi permetta di dirle una cosa Allow me to tell you something

2. In an abstract sense, it is translated un che, un non so che, un certo che.

Nella sua prosa c'è sempre un che In his prose there is always something di artificio In his prose there is always something artificial

In questo paesaggio trovo un non I find something picturesque in so che di pittoresco this landscape

e. 'Some . . . others' is translated by **alcuni . . . altri, altri . . . altri, gli uni . . . gli altri, chi . . . chi**, and sometimes **quale . . . quale**. **Chi** and **quale** take the verb in the singular.

Alcuni combattēvano sēmpre, altri la dāvano vinta Some continued to fight, others gave up

Chi lo compiangeva, chi lo derideva Some pitied him, others laughed at him

Qual fior cadea sul lembo, qual sulle trecce bionde Some flowers fell on her robe's hem, some on her blond tresses

207. Uno 'one,' etc. **a.** The pronoun 'one,' in the general sense of 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' is translated by **uno**, or by the third person of the reflexive (cf. 106, **b**).

Quand' uno si trōva in un paese straniéro, deve studiarne i costumi When one is in a foreign country, he should study its customs

Dove si entra? Where does one enter?

b. Before a proper name, **un** is equivalent to **un certo**:

Fu il tērzo triūmviro un Carlo Armellini The third triumvir was a certain Carlo Armellini

c. **Uno** sometimes means 'one single,' 'one and the same.'

La pōvera vecchia non ha un soldo The poor old woman has not a (single) penny

Amore e'l cor gentil son una cosa Love and the gentle heart are one same thing [ROSSETTI]

i. In the feminine singular it modifies some word like **azione** 'action' or **truffa** 'trick,' understood. Cf. 146, **k**, **i.**

Ce ne ha fatta una He has played us one of his tricks

d. 'The . . . one,' with an adjective between, often takes a demonstrative where it would not be needed in English; the word 'one' is omitted in translation.

Non mi piace quest' ombrellino.	I do not like this parasol. I shall
Prèndo quello scuro	take the dark one
Codesta pèra non è buona; prènda quell' altra	This pear is not good; take the other one
Mi piacciono quelle belle	I like those pretty ones (<i>f.</i>)

e. 'Each one,' 'every one,' are translated by *ciascuno*, *ciascheduno*, and *ognuno*, pronoun. *Ogni*, 'each,' 'every,' is an adjective. For *tutti*, 'everybody,' *tutto*, 'everything,' cf. 160.

Ciascuno di quei príncipi fu degno d' onore	Each of those princes was worthy of honor
Ogni casa aveva un giardinetto	Each house had a little garden
In ogni caço	In any case
Ognuno agisce come crede	Every one acts as he thinks best

1. 'Apiece' is translated by *per uno*, *per ciascuno*.

Diède loro sei lire per uno	He gave them six lire apiece
-----------------------------	------------------------------

f. Uno correlative with altro.

Saper l' un dell' altro	To know one from the other
L' uno e l' altro	Both
L' un lito e l' altro vidi infin la Spagna	Both shores I saw as far as Spain
Nè l' uno nè l' altro	Neither
L' uno o l' altro	Either
Gli uni . . . gli altri	Some . . . others

Used reciprocally, cf. 104, b.

i. Except in the phrase *gli uni . . . gli altri*, *uno* has no plural. Its plural is supplied by *alcuni*.

208. Altro 'other,' etc. a. **Altri** is a singular pronoun, referring to persons; it means 'another,' 'some one else,' and is often used in contrast.

Nè tu nè altri	Neither you nor any one else
----------------	------------------------------

b. *Altrui* is like *altri*, except that it may have a plural meaning, and is never nominative.

Non si deve bramare i beni **altrui** One should not covet the goods of others

c. *Altro* as pronoun refers only to things, and means 'something else,' 'anything else,' 'else.'

Ci vuole altro? Is something else needed?

Nient' altro Nothing else

Che altro? What else?

Non desidero altro I do not wish anything else

1. With the article, or in the plural, it refers to persons.

L' altra è colei che s' ancise
amorosa The other is she who killed herself for love

Un altro, che forata avea la gola Another, who had his throat pierced

2. With numbers, *altro* usually precedes.

Altri quattro Four others

d. *Altro* as adjective means 'other,' and has some special uses.

1. With **noi** and **voi** it is reënforcing.

Noi altri Russi We Russians

Voi altri Inglesi You English

2. In the partitive construction it means 'some more.'

Desidera dell' altro vino? Do you wish some more wine?

Dell' altr' acqua calda, per piacere Some more hot water, please

Le piacciono le susine? Si serva
delle altre Do you like the plums? Take some more

3. Expressions of time.

L' altro anno Last year

Quest' altra settimana Next week

4. For its use correlatively and reciprocally, cf. 207, f.

5. For its adverbial use, cf. 215, e; 216, f.

e. *Altrettanto*, a pronoun referring to things, means 'as much *or* as many more.'

Diède cinque soldi al ragazzo e
altrettanti alla sua sorellina

She gave five pennies to the boy,
and **as many more** to his little
sister

Legò tre mila lire a lui, e **altret-**
tanto a me

He left three thousand lire to him,
and **as much more** to me

Le auguro cento di questi giorni.
Grazie, **altrettanto a Lei**

I wish you many happy returns of
the day. Thank you, **the same**
to you

209. Some More General Indefinites. *a.* Tale 'such,' tanto 'so much,' etc.

1. *Tale, un tale*, means 'one,' 'a certain one.'

Tal si partì da cantare alleluia

One left off singing alleluia

Quel tal Sandro, autor d' un ro-
manzetto.

A certain Sandro, author of a tale

2. 'Such a' is translated *un tale*.

Non potēvano continuare a com-
battēre dopo **una tale** sconfitta

They could not continue fighting
after **such a** defeat

3. *Tal quale* may mean 'a kind of' or 'like.'

Questi uccelli prodūcono **una tal**
qual armonia che piace

These birds produce **a kind of**
pleasing harmony

Come gli somiglia il suo gemello.
È **tal quale**!

How much his twin brother re-
sembles him! He is **exactly** like

4. *Tale . . . quale* means 'such . . . as,' and in long poetic com-
parisons *quale* often precedes.

Tal mi fec' io quai son color che
stanno, Per non intēnder quel
ch' è lor risposto

I became **as those** who stand still
because of not understanding
what is replied to them

Qual è quel cane ch' abbaiendo
agugna . . . Cotai si fecer quelle
facce lorde

Like the dog which barking craves

. . . **such** those foul faces became

5. *Tanto . . . quanto* are similarly correlative, and mean 'as much . . . as.'

Quanto gli prestai, tanto mi restituì He returned me as much as I lent him

6. Special uses of tanto.

Ai tanti del mese On such a day of the month
Un tanto la settimana So much per week
Visitò la Turchia agli ottanta tanti He visited Turkey in the eighties

b. Chiunque, qualunque, etc., 'whoever,' 'whatever,' 'any
whatever,' etc.

1. **Chiunque** and **chicchessia** are pronouns referring to persons; **chicchessia** and **checclesia** are not used in the nominative. **Checchè** is preferred to **checclesia**.

Non lo farò, chiunque me lo consigli **Whoever advises it, I shall not do it**

Non lo darei a **chi** **chessia** I should not give it to **anybody**
at all

Checchè avvenga, non abbandoneranno la posizione **Whatever happens, they will not abandon the position**

2. Qualunque, qualsivoglia, and qualsiasi are adjectives.

Garibaldi ritirāndosi da Roma, si sarebbe rifugiato in qualsiasi paesetto Garibaldi, when retreating from Rome, would have taken refuge in any village whatever

Qualunque ne sia il motivo, è **Whatever** may be its motive, it is
un'azione indegna an unworthy action

3. **Per quanto** is an adverb, meaning 'however.'

Per quanto il capitano fosse magnanimo, non poté perdonare un tale insulto.

However magnanimous the captain might be, he could not forgive such an insult.

c. Cf. 169, h.

210. Negative Indefinites. *a.* **Nessuno**, **niuno**, **veruno**, are pronouns or adjectives referring to persons or things. **Nessuno** is the most common.

Nessun erœ fu mai più valoroso	No hero was ever braver than
di Orlando	Roland
Nessuno ci si mosse	No one stirred

i. **Nulla**, **niente**, are pronouns meaning 'nothing.'

Non c' è nulla da mangiare	There is nothing to eat
Non voglio nulla	I wish nothing
Di niente	Not at all, don't mention it

2. When one of these negatives follows the verb, **non** must precede. If the negative precede, **non** is not required.

Non fa niente	Never mind
Non ci si vede niente	There is nothing to be seen
Nessuno era arrivato prima delle sette	No one had arrived before seven
Non c' è nessuno de' miei	Not one of my relatives is here

3. Used absolutely, without verb, these words are negative in meaning.

Chi c' è? Nessuno	Who is there? No one
---------------------------------	----------------------

4. Cf. 206, *a*, 1.

211. The Verb *scegliere* 'choose.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Scégliere**, **scegliendo**, **scelgo**, **sceglierò**, **scelsi**, **scelto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

scelgo	scegliamo, scelghiamo
scegli	scegliete
sceglie	scélgoно

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

scelga	scegliamo
scelga	scegliate
scelga	scélgoно

VOCABULARY

la carezza	caress	accōrgersi, accōrsi, accōrto	perceive
la chicca	sweetmeat	avvezzare	accustom
la cōllera	anger	corrēggere, corressi,	corrētto correct
la colpa	fault, blame	corrēggersi	di un difetto correct a fault
il difetto	defect, fault	durare	last, hold out
la fēde	faith	principiare	begin
i genitori	parents	rimproverare	reprove (rimprōvero)
il nipotino	little nephew	riuscire (<i>like uscire</i>)	succeed; non mi riesce I can't
la pace	peace	tornar cōnto	be of advantage
il rimprōvero	reproof	alcuno, -i, -a, -e	some, any
il sēgno	sign	altrettanto	as much more
allora	then	nessuno	no, not any, no one
dentro di	within, inside of	nientе	nothing
dovunque	wherever		
spesso	often		

EXERCISE

I

DAL GIORNALE DI GIGI

Tutte le volte che ho da fare qualche cosa di nuovo, dico subito dentro di me — Non mi riesce! — e trovo gran fatica a principiare. Ma appena ho cominciato, spesso mi accorgo che quello che mi pareva impossibile è possibilissimo, e che, qualche volta, è anche facile. Ho poco fede nelle mie forze, e voglio correggermi di questo difetto.

Tutti mi rimproverano perchè sono troppo facile a lasciarmi prendere dalla collera. Se tutti mi dicono questo, è segno che deve esser vero. Specialmente la mamma non mi dà mai pace coi suoi rimproveri. Ma la mamma la voglio contentarla, e ora che son grande mi voglio correggere.

Questa è una cosa che non la sa nessuno; ma io la so. Una gran parte di quelle carezze che faccio ai nonni e ai miei genitori,

le faccio perchè mi torna conto. Ma io non ci ho colpa. Mi ci devono avere avvezzato da piccino, e più di tutti mi ci deve avere avvezzato la povera zia Francesca, buon' anima, che mi diceva sempre — Se mi dai un bacio, ti do una chicca. — E io, allora, duravo a dargliene finchè ci eran chicche; ma quando le chicche della zia Francesca eran finite, finivano subito i baci del nipotino Gigi.

II

1. Whenever one has something new to do, one should not say "I can't do it."
2. No one could make me begin it.
3. Do not say it to any one.
4. In this book there is nothing good.
5. My parents gave my little brother three cents, and they gave me as many more.
6. Wherever you go, you will find no one who loves you as they do [like them].
7. Everybody reproved him for being easily made angry.
8. Has any one spoken of it to you? No one.
9. However bad your defects may be, you can correct them.
10. Do you wish anything else? Nothing else.
11. I had already perceived it last year.
12. I was not speaking of this book, but of the new one.
13. Let us try to correct our faults.
14. Some praised him for accustoming himself to working; others reproved him for not correcting his faults.
15. They will never give you peace as long as you let yourself become angry easily.
16. But it is not your fault.
17. Have you any nuts? Let me give you some more.
18. No, thank you, but I should like some more coffee.
19. Come with us, gentlemen; have you noticed what time it is?
20. However difficult those lessons are, he will have them learned within a few days.

III

L' AUTOMOBILE

Il mio amico Giacomo ha comprato un' automobile. Siccome non sa ancora troppo bene condurla, gli capita di quando in quando qualche malanno. La prima volta ch'è rimasto in panna, fu per mancanza di benzina, il che può succedere anche agli automobilisti

esperti. Un'altra volta una persona sul marciapiede gli fece segno che uno dei copertoni delle rote era consumato. Era sgonfio. Immediatamente dopo, uno schianto come un tuono lo avvertì che un altro pneumātico era scoppiato. Si dovè fermare dieci minuti a pompare. Poi tirò via, sonando la cornetta da svegliare i Sette Dormienti. Poco dopo gli è successo un accidente, di quelli gravi. Fu così: Il māntice, che generalmente lo teneva giù, era stato alzato per la pioggia; perciò non poteva vedere bene come al sōlito. A un tratto s'accorse che un bambino gli traversava la strada proprio davanti. Cercando di evitarlo, dette il freno, ma il freno, per la prima volta, non andava. Allora cercò di sterzare più presto che poteva, ma nell'eccitamento girò un po' troppo il volante; e l'automobile, che stava in cima alla salita, svoltò improvvisamente a destra, andando a sbatttere su quel po' di muricciuolo all'orlo della strada, il quale cedette, e l'automobile slittò giù fino al fiume. Si fermò per fortuna proprio sull'orlo del torrente, e benchè tutti fossero spaventati da morirne, non ci fu nessuna disgrazia.

LESSON XXXVI

ADVERBS. THE VERB *VALERE*

212. Position of Adverbs. *a.* Rules for position are not very strict, but most adverbs, except *non*, follow the verb.

Non lo trovò

He did not find it

Lo trovò **immediatamente**

He found it immediately

b. An adverb modifying an adjective, another adverb, or a phrase, usually precedes.

È troppo difficile

It is too difficult

Riuscì singolarmente bene

He succeeded singularly well

Viaggiando, specialmente con un compagno simpātico, se ne gode moltissimo

When one travels, especially with a congenial companion, one has much enjoyment

213. Comparison of Adverbs. Cf. 115, 116, 117.

214. Adverbs of Manner. *a.* These are almost all formed by adding *-mente* to the feminine of the adjective.

Premuroso 'eager,' premurosamente 'eagerly'

1. If the feminine of the adjective ends in *-le* or *-re*, the *-e* is dropped before *-mente*.

Facile, facilmente; particolare, particolarmente

2. Certain adverbs ending in *-one*, *-oni*, indicate the posture of the body.

Bocconi 'flat on one's face,' carpioni 'on all fours'

b. A few adverbs end in *-i* or *-e*; as altrimenti 'otherwise,' bene 'well,' volentieri 'willingly,' etc.

c. Certain adjectives in *-o* are used as adverbs; as alto 'high,' presto 'quick,' sicuro 'sure,' subito 'sudden.'

1. Certain others, when so used, continue to agree with their noun. Such are caro, grande, mezzo, solo, tutto, primo, and ultimo.

Mezza morta

Half dead

Desidero due sole paia

I wish only two pairs

Questa catena l' ho pagata cara

I paid dear for this chain

2. Bello is used adverbially along with the past participle.

La roba bell' e fatta

Ready-made goods

Lo scorpione era bell' e morto

The scorpion was good and dead

3. Certain adverbial phrases are used adjectively to modify nouns.

Il piede di dietro

The hind foot

Un uomo per bene

An honorable man

Una cosa da nulla

A trifle

215. Adverbs of Affirmation. *a.* Sì is 'yes' in answer to a question.

Verrà stasera? Sì

Shall you come this evening? Yes

b. **Già** is 'yes' in simple confirmation or agreement.

Piove a diritto. **Già** It is pouring. Yes, it is

i. In such confirmatory phrases as 'I think so,' 'I hope so,' 'so' is expressed by **lo** (cf. 100, *e*, 1).

Lo spέro I hope so

c. **Pure** adds emphasis, and is equivalent to 'do,' 'pray do.'

Venga pure Do come

d. **Pur troppo** assents with regret, meaning 'only too much,' 'only too well,' 'yes, unfortunately.'

Lo conosce? **Pur troppo** Do you know him? Only too well

e. The following are emphatic affirmatives:

Altro!	By all means!
Appunto	Exactly
Davvero	It is true. Really?
Certo, sicuro, sì bene	Yes, indeed
Lo credo!	I believe you!

f. **Ma sì** affirms while contradicting.

Non è mai stato in America, credo. You have never been in America,
Ma sì, più volte I think. O yes, several times

g. **Altro che** not only answers in the affirmative, but adds something not implied in the question.

Non s'è visto ancora il mēdico? Nothing has been seen yet of the
Altro che visto! C'è! doctor? Better than that! He's here!

Conosce quella signorina? **Altro che** conōscerla! È mia sorella! Do you know that young lady?
 Rather! She is my sister!

h. **Signora sì** and **Signor no** are equally admissible with **Sì** Signora and **No** Signore, though less usual.

216. Adverbs of Negation. *a.* Non immediately precedes the verb, or the object pronoun if there be one.

Non voglio I will not, I refuse

Non lo trovò He did not find it

b. Non . . . che means 'not but,' 'only.'

Non ne desidero che due I wish **only** two of them

i. In the locutions non . . . che, non . . . mai, the verb stands between.

Non lo fece mai He never did it

Non chiede che un po' di pane She asks only a bit of bread

c. 'Neither . . . nor' is nè . . . nè.

Nè più nè meno Neither more nor less

d. No is 'no' spoken in reply to a question, and is used instead of non in the phrases o no 'or not,' se no 'if not,' and sometimes in antithetical phrases, where a part only of the proposition is contradicted.

Verrò domani, o no? Shall I come to-morrow or not?

Se no, verrò domani l'altro If not, I will come day after to-morrow

Prendo il bianco e il marrone, ma non il rosso I'll take the white one and the brown, but not the red one

Vengo volentieri al teatro, ma in platea no I will go to the theater gladly, but not in the orchestra seats

i. Di is required with the adverbs of affirmation or negation in such expressions as the following:

Credo di no I think **not**

Rispose di sì He said **yes**

e. For the negatives 'nothing,' 'nobody,' etc., cf. 210.

i. Niente is often used adjectively in conversation to mean 'not any.'

Niente frutta, grazie No fruit, thank you

f. The principal adverbs of negation are

- nō no, not
- nōn not
- nōn . . . mai, non . . . giammai never
- nōn . . . più no longer, never again
- nōn . . . punto, non . . . mica (*contradicting*) not at all
- niènte affatto nothing at all, not at all
- per niènte not in the least
- tutt' altro by no means, on the contrary

Non lo farò più	I shall never do it again
Non lavora più	He is no longer working
Suo zio non le legò niènte affatto	Her uncle left her nothing at all
Ma non c' è nulla, proprio nulla	But there is nothing there, nothing at all
Pensa insomma di farlo? Per niènte!	You <i>are</i> thinking of doing it after all? Not for anything
Le dò noia se apro la finestra?	Will it disturb you if I open the window? On the contrary, it is
Tutt' altro; ci fa caldo	too warm here

1. **Mai** and **punto**, used absolutely and without verb, have negative value; but **mai** alone in comparative or interrogative sentences means 'ever.'

Le piace questo paesaggio? Punto	Do you like this view? Not at all
Il migliore ch'io abbia mai visto	The best I ever saw
Ha mai visitato la Cina? Mai	Have you ever visited China? Never

217. Adverbs of Place. *a.* 'Here,' 'there,' etc., when at all emphatic, are expressed by the following adverbs, which are to be carefully distinguished according to whether the place indicated is near the speaker, near the person spoken to, or remote from either.

1. **Near the speaker:** **qua** means 'here,' 'here in this room or place'; **qui** means 'here by me'; **quaggiù**, **quassù**, mean respectively 'down here,' 'up here.'

2. Near the person addressed: *costì, costà*, 'there where you are'; *costaggiù* 'down there where you are'; *costassù* 'up there where you are.'

3. Remote from either: *là, colà, lì, ivi, quivi*, 'there' (*là* and *colà* being further removed than *lì*); *laggiù* 'down there' and *lassù* 'up there'; *indi, quindi*, 'thence.'

4. Special uses: *di qua, quaggiù*, mean 'here below,' 'on this earth'; *di là, costà, quassù*, 'above,' 'in the other world.'

<i>Essere più di là che di qua</i>	To be more dead than alive
<i>Di lì a due giorni</i>	Two days from then
<i>Stare lì lì per far una cosa</i>	To be on the very point of doing a thing
<i>Essere in là cogli anni</i>	To be well on in years

b. When not emphatic, or when referring to a place already mentioned, 'here,' 'there,' and 'thence' are expressed respectively by *ci, vi, ne* (cf. 126).

i. Special uses of *ci*. *Ci* is used very often with apparent redundancy, as if to reinforce or enrich the meaning of the verb.

<i>Non ci sento niente</i>	I hear nothing
<i>Ci ho due mila lire</i>	I have two thousand lire (in the house, on my person)
<i>Iddio c' è</i>	God is

c. 'Here is,' 'there is,' when demonstrative, are translated by *ecco* (cf. 100, a); when not demonstrative, by *c' è, ci sono, v' è, vi sono*. *Ecco* answers 'where?' *c' è* etc., 'what?'

<i>Ecco una farfalla!</i>	There is a butterfly
<i>Ci sono tanti olivi sulle colline</i>	There are many olive-trees on the hillsides

d. *Altrove, altronde*, are adverbs of place meaning 'elsewhere.'

e. *Dove* and *quando* are used correlatively: *dove . . . dove* meaning 'here . . . there,' and *quando . . . quando* 'now . . . now.'

218. Adverbs of Quantity. *a.* Cf. 160.

b. *Troppò* is followed by *da* (or *per*) to mean 'too much . . . to.'

È *trop poco buono da farlo* He is too kind to do it

c. *Troppò* followed by *più* has the meaning of *molto*.

È *trop poco più difficile che non crede* It is **much** more difficult than you think

c. 'The more . . . the more' is translated by *più . . . e più*.

Più *vò innanzi cogli anni e più amo i giovanì* The older I grow the more I love the young

219. Lists of Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases. (Cf. 227.)

a. Adverbs of Manner.

Adagio	With ease, slowly, softly
Ad alta voce	Aloud
All' aperto, al fresco	In the open
A bell' agio	At ease, conveniently, comfortably
A braccetto	Arm in arm
Alla buona	In a familiar way, after a fashion
Alla carlona	Carelessly
A suo cōmodo	At one's convenience
Alla deriva	Adrift, to leeward
Affatto	Entirely, at all (<i>usually negative</i>)
A galla	Afloat
A gara	In competition
All' improvviso	Unexpectedly
Alla lunga	Long drawn out
A lutto	In mourning
Alla macchia	In secret
A malincuore	Against one's will
Alla meglio	For the best, as best one can
Alla peggiro	The worst possible, very badly
Al possibile	The most possible
A quattr' occhi	Tête-à-tête
Alla rinfusa	Helter-skelter; abundantly
A rovescio	Upside down, wrong end to

Alla sfuggita	On the fly, at a glance
Al sōlito, come al sōlito	As usual
A soquadro	Topsy-turvy
Alla stracca	Listlessly, unwillingly
Alla švēta	Cursorily, hastily
Alla švogliata	Heedlessly, indifferently
All' ūltimo	At last
A un tratto	Suddenly, at once
A vicēnda	In turn ; mutually
Da capo	Over again
Da senno	In earnest
Di nascosto	Secretly
Di nuovo	Again
Del rēsto	For the rest, in other respects
Di sōlito	As a rule
Del tutto	Altogether
Forse	Perhaps
In complesso	Everything considered
Indarno	In vain
Infatti	In fact
In fine	In short
In fretta	In haste
In ogni cašo	Anyway, in any case
In pūbblico	In public
In tanto	After all, meanwhile
In vano	In vain
Piano	Softly, gently, slowly
Per altro	In other respects, for that matter
Per dispetto	For spite
Senz' altro	Without delay ; purely and simply
Senza dubbio	Without doubt
Sì e no	Approximately
Sotto sopra	Upside down, helter-skelter
Sul serio	Seriously, in good earnest
Suo malgrado	In spite of him
Bocconi	Flat on one's face
Carponi	On all fours
Ciondoloni	Dangling

In ginocchio <i>ni</i>	On one's knees
Penzoloni	Hanging
Ruzzoloni	Head over heels
Tastoni	Gropingly, feeling one's way

b. Adverbs of Place.

Abbasso	Downstairs, down
Accanto	Next, next door
Al di dentro	Inside
Al di fuori	Outside
A dritto	Straight ahead
All' indietro	Backward
All' in giù	Downward
All' in su	Upward
Da ciascuna parte	On each side
Dappertutto	Everywhere
Davanti	Ahead, in front
Di contro }	Opposite
Di faccia }	
Di dentro	Inside
Difilato	Straight ahead without stopping
Diritto	Straight ahead
Di fuori	Outside
Di là	On that side, that way
Di qua	On this side, this way
Di qua e di là	On both sides
Di sopra	Upstairs, above
Di sotto	Below, down
Fin dove?	How far?
Fuori di porta	Outside the walls
Giù	Down, below
In giù	Downward
Innanzi	Ahead
In su	Upward
Intorno	Around
Per ogni dove	Everywhere
Qua e là	Here and there

Su	Up, above, upstairs
Su e giù	Up and down
Su per giù	Roughly, approximately

c. Adverbs of Time.

Alla fine	At last
A giorni	At times
Al giorno di oggi	Nowadays
A momenti	In a moment, presently
Appena	No sooner, hardly
A tempo	On time
A volte	At times, sometimes
Da mane a sera	From morning till night
Da oggi in poi	
Da qui innanzi	Henceforth, from now on
D' ora innanzi	
Da qui ad un mese	A month from now
Da un momento all' altro	At any moment
Da un pezzo	For some time past
Dianzi	Before, a little while ago
Di buon' ora	Early
Di quando in quando	Now and then
Di rado	Seldom
Di recente	Recently
Delle volte	Sometimes
Fino a quando?	Until when?
Fin dal principio	From the first
Fra breve	In a little while
Fra giorni	In a few days
Fra quanto?	How soon?
In giornata	In the course of the day
In men che non si dice	In no time
In oggi	Nowadays
In principio	At first
In quel mentre, in questo mentre	In the meanwhile
In seguito	Afterwards, in the future
In un batter d' occhio	In a flash
Nel fratttempo	Meanwhile

Ogni quanto?	How often?
Ogni tanto	Every so often
Or ora	Just now
Per ora	For the present
Per tempo	Early
Più qua	Later
Poc' anzi	A little while ago
Prima o poi	Sooner or later
Quanto prima	As soon as possible
Su due piedi	Then and there, on the instant
Sull' ultimo	At the last moment
Talvolta	Sometimes
Tempo fa	A while ago
Tempo indietro	Before this, in the past, some time ago
Una volta ogni tanto	Once every so often

220. The Verb *valere* 'be worth.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *valere*, *valendo*, *valgo*, *varrò*, *valsi*, *valuto* or *valso*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

valgo	valiamo, valghiamo
vali	valete
vale	vālgono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

valga (vaglia)	valghiamo (vagliamo)
valga (vaglia)	valghiate (vagliate)
valga (vaglia)	vālgano (vagliano)

VOCABULARY

il boia	executioner
Ciro	Cyrus
la fedeltà	fidelity
Francesco	Francis
l' ingegno	<i>m.</i> talent
il marito	husband
il mārtire	martyr
la māschera	mask
il mostro	monster
scellerato	criminal, wicked
buttare	throw away

giurare	swear
impiccare	hang
intravvedere	glimpse
salvare	save
šbarazzare	rid, disembarrass
tradire	betray
valersi di	avail oneself of
abbasso	down, downstairs
alla fine	at last
all' improvviso	suddenly, unexpectedly

a lutto	in mourning	di nuovo	again, once more
a momenti	in a moment	di rado	seldom
a quattr' occhi	tête-à-tête	di recente	recently
a tempo	on time	fin dal principio	from the beginning
bocconi	flat on one's face	fin dove?	how far?
carponi	on all fours	ginocchioni	on one's knees
da mane a sera	from morning till night	infatti	in fact
dappertutto	everywhere	in ogni caso	in any case
di nascosto	secretly	quanto prima	as soon as possible
		sul serio	seriously

EXERCISE

I

CIRO MENOTTI

Ecco un' altra vittima illustre della tirannia straniera, un altro martire, tradito, imprigionato e impiccato da quel ridicolo mostro che fu Francesco IV, duca di Modena. La sua elevata posizione sociale, il suo ingegno, il suo cuore, l' essere marito e padre, nulla gli valse per salvarlo. Conoscendo quanto fosse ambizioso quel Duca scellerato, gli fece intravvedere la possibilità, se si fosse messo alla testa del movimento rivoluzionario, di diventar lui il Re della nuova Italia. E il Duca si mise alla testa dei rivoluzionari modenesi e giurò fedeltà. Ma questo forse egli fece per conoscer meglio gli uomini dei quali avrebbe dovuto sbarazzarsi. Infatti, colto il momento opportuno, buttò via la maschera, li fece tutti arrestare, e nel medesimo tempo scrisse al Governatore austriaco di Reggio: *Mandatemi il boia.*

II

1. Duke Francis availed himself of the mask of fidelity, in order to rid himself of the revolutionists. 2. The wicked man sought secretly, from morning till night, to rid himself of them. 3. At last, suddenly, he had them taken, and had the executioner come

as soon as possible. 4. He had the martyrs of Italian independence hanged, and many Italian women dressed once more in mourning. 5. After the battle the soldiers were found not seldom on their knees, on all fours, or flat on their faces. 6. One easily sees that you have studied seriously. 7. Was Duke Francis of Modena born in 1779? Yes. 8. Here it is said that Prince Louis is a monster; what do they say of him up there where you are? 9. How far shall we follow this road before turning to the left? 10. In any case we must start early, because it has rained recently. 11. Are you too tired to accompany me? On the contrary, I should like to go. 12. Ciro Menotti died a martyr. Yes. 13. Do you like Mrs. C.? Not at all. She is not at all congenial. 14. Shall we take a walk in the public gardens? By all means!

LESSON XXXVII

PREPOSITIONS

221. The Simple Prepositions. *a.* The simple prepositions **a**, **con**, **da**, **di**, **in**, and **per** should as a rule be repeated before every noun or pronoun which they govern.

Ne ha dato a Giovanni e a Luigi	He gave some to John and Louis
Parlarono di te e di me	They spoke of you and me

b. The prepositions **contro**, **dentro**, **dopo**, **oltre**, **presso**, **senza**, **sopra**, **sotto**, **su**, **verso**, and sometimes **fra**, take **di** before a personal pronoun.

Non parta senza di me	Do not leave without me
Arrivai dopo di lui	I arrived after him

222. Compound Prepositions. The great majority of Italian prepositions are compound, being composed usually of an

adverb and a preposition, but sometimes of two prepositions together: *fuori di* 'outside,' *intorno a* 'around.'

Su per le vie	Up and down the streets
Al di dentro	Inside

a. The prepositions compounded with **a**, when governing a pronoun, drop **a**; the pronoun (cf. 136, **a**) becomes conjunctive in the dative case.

Mi vidi innanzi una sentinella (<i>not vidi innanzi a me</i>)	I saw in front of me a sentinel
--	---------------------------------

Gli andai incontro (<i>not incontro a lui</i>)	I went to meet him
---	--------------------

Due battaglioni gli vengono sopra Cadēvagli poco discosto Torquato Ci fa segno di andargli dietro	Two battalions came upon him Torquato fell not far from him He makes a sign to us to follow him
--	--

b. *Lungi, lontano, discosto*, meaning 'far,' which usually are compounded with *da*, take *di* before an adverb.

Lungi di qui	Far from here
Lontano di là	Far from there

But

Lontano dal centro	Far from the center
---------------------------	---------------------

223. The Preposition with Adjectives. **a.** Many adjectives take *di* before a noun of material, characteristic, etc.

Una catinella piena d' acqua	A basin full of water
I monti neri di pini	The mountains black with pines
Il sentiero ingombro di sassi	The path cumbered with stones

Others, which would not take 'of' in English, are

abbondante (di) abundant (in)	pôvero (di) poor (in)
ammalato (di) ill (with)	ricco (di) rich (in)
contento } (di) contented (with)	soddisfatto (di) satisfied (with)
pago }	vestito (di) clothed (in)

b. Many, such as *fedele* 'loyal,' *pericoloso* 'dangerous,' *pronto* 'ready,' *simile* 'similar,' *utile* 'useful,' take *a*, as their English equivalents 'to.'

c. A few, such as *alieno* 'foreign,' 'averse (to),' *diverso* 'different (from),' *indipendente* 'independent (of),' take *da*.

224. The Preposition with Verbs. **a.** For the use of prepositions before infinitives, cf. 174.

b. Many verbs which in English are transitive, in Italian require a preposition before their object, and the reverse is equally true. Those verbs which take *a* take the conjunctive in the dative; when the object is a thing, the pronoun is *ci*. *Ne* is used as the pronoun object of the verbs that take *di*.

Ubbidisce <i>al</i> padre	She obeys her father
Il principe successe <i>al</i> re	The prince succeeded the king
Giocare <i>alla</i> pallacorda	To play tennis
Se <i>ne</i> accorse subito	He perceived it immediately
Ci devo rinunziare	I must give it up
Cambierà <i>d'</i> opinione	He will change his mind
Domandi <i>a</i> Margherita	Ask Margaret
Lo cerco	I am looking <i>for</i> it
La guardano	They are looking <i>at</i> her
Ascoltano la musica	They are listening <i>to</i> the music
Non lo ammette	It does not admit <i>of</i> it
Ho sognato <i>te</i>	I dreamed <i>of</i> you

1. Sometimes the preposition is merely different.

Domandano <i>di</i> Lei	They are asking <i>for</i> you
Pensare <i>a</i> una cosa	To think <i>of</i> a thing
Ci penso	I am thinking <i>of</i> it
Ridere <i>di</i> una cosa	To laugh <i>at</i> a thing
Ne ridevano tanto	They laughed <i>at</i> it a great deal

225. Compound Nouns. English compound nouns are usually translated by means of a prepositional phrase.

a. If the modifying member of the compound be merely descriptive, the preposition is **di**, sometimes **a**.

biglietto di visita	visiting-card
galleria di quadri	picture-gallery
libro di scuola	schoolbook
libro di testo	textbook
a prova di bomba	bomb-proof
orologio a sveglia	alarm clock
schioppo a due canne	double-barreled gun

b. If it indicates means, the preposition is **a**.

barca a vela	sailboat
máchina a vapore	steam-engine

c. If it indicates purpose, the preposition is **da**.

cani da caccia	hunting-dogs
tazza da caffè. (But 'tazza di caffè' is 'cup of coffee')	coffee-cup
máchina da cucire	sewing-machine
carta da lettere	letter-paper
servizio da té	tea-service

d. For the formation and pluralizing of Italian compound nouns, cf. 181.

226. List of Prepositions. **a.** English-Italian.

about, approximately	<i>circa, presso a poco</i>
about, around	<i>intorno a, dintorno a, attorno a, per</i>
about, concerning	<i>di</i>
above	<i>sopra</i>
according to	<i>secondo</i>
across	<i>a traverso</i>
after	<i>dopo; before an infinitive</i> <i>dopo di</i>
against	<i>contra, contro</i>
along	<i>lungo</i>
among	<i>fra, tra</i>
as far as	<i>fino a, sino a</i>

as for *per*, in quanto a
 as to in riguardo a, in rispetto a
 at a
 at the rate of a ragione di
 because of a causa di, a motivo di, per motivo di, a ragione di
 before, in front of davanti a, innanzi
 before (*time*) prima di, innanzi
 behind dietro
 below, beneath sotto
 beside, besides, in addition to oltre (a or di)
 beside, next to accanto a
 between fra, tra
 beyond oltre, al di là di, di là da
 by (*agent*) da
 by (*instrument or means*) di
 by, beside accanto a
 by dint of a forza di
 by means of per mezzo di
 during durante
 except eccetto, fuori di, tranne
 for per
 for (*with measure of time*) da
 from da
 from (*used of abstract things*, 'from that time,' 'from the beginning')
 fin da
 in in; after a superlative di or fra
 inside of dentro di
 instead of invece di
 in the midst of in mezzo a
 into in
 near vicino a, presso a
 of di
 on su (sur), sopra
 on this side of al di qua di
 on the other side of al di là di
 opposite to dirimpetto a, in faccia a
 outside of fuori di
 over sopra

through **per**, attraverso

to a; before the name of a country in; before that of a person **da**, a
toward verso

under sotto

until fino a, sino a

with con

within, inside of dentro (di or a)

within, in the course of (time) fra

without senza

without, outside of fuori di

b. Italian-English.

a, ad at, to

a benefizio di for the benefit of

a causa di because of

accanto a } beside, next to
accosto a }

addosso a on, on top of, on the back of

a dispetto di in spite of

ad onore di in honor of

ad onta di in spite of

a favore di in favor of

a forza di by dint of

al di là di beyond

al di qua di on this side of

allato a by the side of

all'infuori di outside of

a malgrado di notwithstanding

appetto a facing, opposite

appiè di at the foot of

a prò di to the advantage of

a ragione di because of; at the rate of

attorno a around, round about

attraverso a across, through

con with

contra, contro (a or di) against

da by, from

davanti a before, in front of

dentro a (*or di*) within, inside of
di of
dietro (a or di) behind
di là da on the other side of
dinanzi a in front of
dintorno a around
di qua da on this side of
dirimpetto a opposite, facing
discosto a away from
dopo, dopo di after
durante during
eccetto except
entro a within (*time*)
fin da from (*time*)
fino a until, up to
fra between, among ; within (*time*)
fuori di outside of
giusta according to, conformably to
in in, into
in cambio di in exchange for
in capo a (di) at the end of, at the head of
in cima a at the summit of
incontro a against
in faccia a opposite, facing
in fondo a at the end of, at the back of, at the bottom of
in luogo di instead of
in mezzo a in the midst of
innanzi a in front of
in quanto a as to
in riguardo a } with respect to
in rispetto a } with respect to
insieme a (con) together with
intorno a around
invéce di instead of
lontano da (di) far from
lungi da (di) far from
lungo along
malgrado in spite of

mediante	by means of
mercè	thanks to
oltre a	beyond
per	through, for
per mezzo di	by means of
per motivo di	because of
presso a	near
prima di	before (<i>time</i>)
raşente a	close to, grazing
salvo	except
secondo	according to
senza	without
sino a	up to
sopra (a)	above
sotto (a)	below
su (sur)	on
tra	between, among
tranne	except
vèrso	towards
vicino a	near

227. Idiomatic Use of Prepositions. The correct use of prepositions is one of the most delicate and difficult things in the study of any foreign language. The uses of a given preposition overlap, and it is not easy to determine the limits of each. 'To' and 'from,' for example, may each be translated variously, according to the shade of meaning, by *a*, *di*, or *da*. No rules can be formulated in this matter, practice and observation being the only guides. A careful reading and rereading of the examples assembled below will, however, show which is the preposition to be used in a good many typical cases.

a. Phrases with *a*, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'on,' 'to,' 'with,' 'within.'

A bocca aperta	With open mouth
A bordo	On board
A1 buio	In the dark
A capo chino	With bowed head
A che cosa pènsa?	Of what are you thinking?
A1 chiaro di luna	By moonlight
A contanti	In cash
A còttimo	By the piece, piecework
A danaro sonante	In cash
Alla dèstra, alla sinistra	To the right, to the left
A due per due	Two by two

A due per volta	Two at a time
A giornata	By the day
Alla giornata, vivere	To live from day to day, from hand to mouth
All' ingrosso	At wholesale
A macchina	By machine
A mano	By hand
Al mare	By the sea
A mente	By heart
A migliaia	By thousands
A minuto	At retail
A modo suo	In one's own way
A nolo, prendere or dare	To rent or let
A olio	In oils
A ora	By the hour
A orecchio	By ear
Alla pioggia	In the rain
A portata di mano	Within reach of one's hand
A posta	On purpose
A che pro?	To what end?
Al sole	In the sun
A volo	On the wing
A volta di corriere	By return mail
La morte lo rapiva alla famiglia	Death took him from his family
La riconosco alla voce, al color dei capelli	I recognize her by her voice, by the color of her hair
L' ho sentito dire a degli altri	I have heard it said by others
Ai tempi di cui parlo	At the time of which I am speaking
La minestra sembra buona all' odore	The soup seems good by the odor of it

b. Phrases with **da**, meaning 'as,' 'at,' 'at the house of,' 'by,' 'characteristic of,' 'for,' 'from,' 'like,' 'on,' 'such as to,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Da padre	Like a father
Dalla parte nostra	On our side
Lettere da casa	Letters from home

Materiale da costruzione	Construction materials
Vini da pasto	Table wines
Ha una famiglia da mantenere	He has a family to maintain
Vede il bambino dai capelli ricciuti?	Do you see the child with curly hair?
Dimora da nostro cugino	He lives at our cousin's
Passi dalla posta	Stop at the post office
Non vuol essere da meno degli altri	He does not wish to be inferior to others
Si crede da più degli altri	He thinks himself superior to others
La chiesa ha tutto da guadagnare, nulla da perdere	The church has everything to gain and nothing to lose
Non dipende da lui	It does not depend on him
Fa da interprete	He acts as interpreter
Abbiamo sostenuto da soli una dura guerra	We have carried on by ourselves a hard war
Non è da dimenticare	It is not to be forgotten
È organizzato in modo da stimolare le energie individuali	It is organized in a manner to stimulate individual efforts
Non sembra cosa da vergognarsi	It does not seem to be a thing to be ashamed of
Lo guardano dall'alto in basso	They look down on him
Va da sè	It goes without saying
Non mi sento da tanto	I do not feel equal to so much
Non è da tutti	Not every one is capable of it
Dei francobolli da dieci centesimi	Some ten-centime postage stamps

c. Phrases with **di**, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Di corsa	At a run, on the run
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di giorno in giorno	From day to day
D'estate	In summer
Di gennaio	In January
Fuori d'uso	Out of date
Più lungo di due metri	Longer by two meters
Prendere di mira	To take aim at
Di seconda mano	At second hand

La strada di Firènze	The road to Florence
Rideva di gioia	She laughed for joy
Fu punito di morte	He was punished with death
Che facesti delle fòrbici?	What did you do with the scissors?

d. Phrases with **in**, **per**, and **su**.

In capelli	Bare-headed
In casa	At home
In chiesa	To church
In mare	At sea
In punta di piedi	On tiptoe
Andare in Francia	To go to France
Tenere in poco conto	To consider of small importance
Per mare, per terra	By land, by sea
Per la posta	By mail
Per la strada	In the street, on the way
Lo sceglie per amico	He chooses him as a friend
Sui libri, sui giornali	In books, in the newspapers
Tre metri su sei	Three meters by six
Su misura	To order
Due su tre	Two out of three
La cāmera guarda sul davanti	The room is on the front

1. Notice that 'to' before the name of a person is **da** (or **a**); before that of a country, **in**; and before that of any other place, **a**.

Va da María, in Italia, alla posta	He goes to Mary's, to Italy, to the post-office
Va a María	He goes to Mary

2. 'From,' with a word referring to a place, is **di** when the limits of the place are more strictly conceived, otherwise **da**. If the article is present, **da** is required.

Esce di chiesa	He is coming out of church
Vengo da chiesa	I am coming from church
Viene di Firènze	He comes from Florence (from within the very walls)
Viene da Firènze	He comes from Florence, or its vicinity

Morì di fame, dalla fame

He died from hunger

Viene di Germania or da Germania

He comes from Germany

But

Viene dall' Alta Bretagna

He comes from Upper Brittany

(because the modifying word requires the article, and the article requires *da*).

VOCABULARY

l' ambizione *f.* ambition

addosso a on the back of, on the top of

Aristōtile Aristotle

dentro di within, inside of

il duomo cathedral

dietro a behind

la gōndola gondola

di là da beyond, on the other side of

il lago lake

diananzi a before, in front of

l' operaio *m.* workman

di qua da on this side of

la parte side, share

discosto a away from

il piattino da tazza saucer

fin da from (time)

il remo oar

fino a up to, until

la sarta dressmaker

in faccia a opposite

la scala a chiōcciola winding stair

in fondo a at the back of, at the bottom of, at the end of

la scala a piuqli ladder

in mezzo a in the middle of

lo spedale hospital

lontano da far from

il tè tea

a capo chino with bowed head

l' unità *f.* union, unity

a contanti in cash

adriātico Adriatic

a cōttimo by the piece

drammātico dramatic

a giornata by the day

fino fine

a mano by hand

occidentale western, west

al mare by the sea

pieno full

di seconda mano at second hand

cadere, cadrò, caddi, caduto fall

in mare at sea

rīdere, risi, riso laugh

indarno in vain

salire, salgo (salghiamo), salii or

salsi, salito climb, go up

EXERCISE

I

1. Bring me a teacup, child, and two saucers.
2. They both work : she has a sewing-machine and works at home, and he works by the day at the baker's.
3. The Spaniard was coming behind us, with his head bowed.
4. See how fine this lace is ! It is made by hand.
5. They are all against me.
6. Where is the cathedral ? We were near it just now. Now we are two miles away from it.
7. Are we far from the walls ? No, the walls are not far from here.
8. They will not be able to do without us.
9. At first the Italians dreamed in vain of independence and unity.
10. You will arrive after us.
11. His theme was the dramatic unities of Aristotle.
12. Winding stairs are easier to climb than ladders.
13. Here there is nothing to sell.
14. Sailboats, steamboats and rowboats were following the gondolas.
15. Who are the gentleman with the white hair and the lady with the blue eyes ?
16. The soldiers were falling on top of us.
17. On which side of the lake do you live ?
18. We live on the other side of the lake.
19. I prefer to live on this side of it.
20. Are you acquainted with the hospital for children ? Our house is opposite it.
21. How long shall you stay ? From the first of April to the eleventh of May.
22. The dressmaker is in the middle of the city, at the end of Via Roma.
23. By dint of money one can do much.

II

1. They live outside the gates. I thought they lived inside.
2. As we were coming out of church, they passed us, coming from home.
3. We spent two months by the sea, near one of the Adriatic ports.
4. That is a thing to remember.
5. We were not able to have the criminal imprisoned.
6. I bought these books at second hand ; I shall pay for them to-morrow in cash.
7. Wait for us inside the church.
8. Children obey their parents.
9. Come

to our house, all of you, at twenty minutes before five. 10. He spoke these terrible words before her and me. 11. Do not look at these pictures; they are ugly. 12. He will change his mind and renounce his ambitions. 13. Instead of sending it to us now, he will bring it to us when he comes to Florence. 14. Those workmen are working by the piece. 15. Look for us outside the cathedral, on the west side. 16. The lakes are full of water at this season. 17. The prisoner stood before him. 18. You cannot do without it. 19. They were laughing at us. 20. We were two weeks at sea. 21. I have received by mail some letters from home. 22. Some ladies are here who are asking for you. 23. You cannot give it up. 24. We always spend a month by the sea in summer.

DIALOGO

DALLA MODISTA

- Vuol accompagnarmi dalla modista?
- Volentieri. Dove sta?
- Vicino, a due passi. Nella prima via a destra, numero 20.
- Già vedo il suo cartello: *Sorelle Chiarini. Cappelli da Signore.* Entriamo.
- Buon giorno, Signore. Che cosa mi comandano?
- Io non voglio niente, ma questa signora desidera un cappello da viaggio. Non è pratica di Firenze e le ho detto che Lei la servirà bene.
- Grazie, Signora. Proverò di meritare la Sua raccomandazione.
- Ci faccia vedere dei figurini.
- Siamo a mezza stagione. Lo desidera di paglia o di feltro?
- Di feltro, di forma piccola.
- Le mostrerò prima dei fondini. Eccone uno. Proviamolo.
- Non mi piace. La tesa è troppo larga e il capino troppo tondo. Mi stringe alla fronte, mi darà mal di testa.

— Questo Le starebbe bene, mi pare.

— Mi sta bene, davvero. Solo sarebbe un po' sfacciato per il colore. Per il viaggio ci vuole qualcosa di più modesto.

— Ecco la stessa forma di un colore più scuro.

— Benissimo. E la guarnizione?

— Per guarnizione, Signora, io direi un fiocco di nastro di seta nera, ovvero una piccola fantasia. Con questa forma non sta bene la piuma.

— Preferisco il fiocco. Quando sarà finito?

— Per domani.

— Vabbene. Badi di non mancare, io parto alle sette della mattina seguente.

— Non abbia paura. L'avrà senza fallo. A rivederla, Signora.

LESSON XXXVIII

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

228. Augmentatives and Diminutives. Terminations modifying the meaning of nouns and adjectives are very common in Italian, and with nouns may take the place of the corresponding adjective at the will of the speaker, unless the idea of size is to be emphasized. These terminations are augmentative or diminutive, caressing or disparaging, most diminutives combining with the idea of small size that of affection or disparagement.

a. The most important augmentatives are **-one**, **-a**, **-otto**, and **-occio**.

1. **-One** means 'very large,' and it may be masculine even when added to a feminine noun; but it has a feminine form in adjectives,

abstract nouns, and those describing persons as to age or human relationship.

Una donna ; un donnone (<i>burl.</i>)	A woman; an enormous woman
Un uomo ; un omone	A man; a large man
Una strada ; uno stradone	A road; a highway
Una figlia ; una figliolina	A little daughter; a tall, or overgrown, little daughter
Una vecchia ; una vecchiona	An old woman; a very tall old woman

2. **-Otto**, **-occio**, mean 'rather large' with nouns, and with adjectives modify the meaning like 'rather.' With names of animals, **-otto** is a diminutive meaning the young of the species.

Una casa ; un casotto	A house; a somewhat large house
Grasso ; grassotto or grassoccio	Fat; plump
La tigre ; il tigrotto	The tiger; the tiger's cub

b. The most important diminutives are **-ino** (-*cino*, -*cino*, -*olino*), meaning diminutiveness, charm, and affection; **-etto** and **-ello** (-*cetto*, -*erello*, -*icello*), implying compassion or indulgence in addition to the idea of small size; **-uccio**, **-uzzo**, -*uzzolo*, **-uolo** (-*olo*), which imply endearment when applied to persons and disparagement when applied to things; and **-accio**, **-astro**, and **-azzo**, which are terms of unqualified dislike and disparagement.

La mano ; la manina	The hand; the pretty little hand
La povera ; la poverina	The poor woman; the poor dear woman, the poor thing
La casa ; la casuccia	The house; the poor little house
La viola ; il violino	The viol; the violin
Il figlio ; il figliuolo	The son; the young son
Cantare ; cantarellare	To sing; to warble
Bello ; bellino	Beautiful; pretty
Caro ; carino	Dear; charming
Un medico ; un medicastro	A doctor; a poor, unskillful doctor

Il cavallo; il cavallaccio	The horse; the bad-tempered, wretched horse
L' asino; l' asinello	The donkey; the small, or young, donkey

229. Rules of Formation. These terminations cannot be used indiscriminately, but must be chosen in accordance with precedent and euphony. The ear is a sufficient guide in this matter to the Italian, but the foreigner must use great discretion and will find it safest to confine himself to forms he has met with.

a. If the normal ending of a word chance to be one of these terminations, then not that one but some other must be chosen as diminutive or augmentative.

Il ruscello; il ruscelletto	The brook; the small brook
L' uccello; l' uccellino	The bird; the young bird
La cugina; la cuginetta	The cousin; the attractive little cousin

b. If the word end in *-one*, the terminations *-one*, *-ino*, and *-ello* become respectively *-cione*, *-cino*, and *-cello*.

Il bastone; il bastoncione	The stick; the great stick
Il padrone; il padroncino	The master; the young master
Il violone; il violoncello	The bass viol; the violoncello

c. These terminations may be combined.

Un pochino, un pochettino	A little bit
Un figliuolo; un figliolino	A little son; a dear little son

d. The augmentative or diminutive sometimes loses its character of termination, and the modification becomes a permanent new word.

L' acqua; l' acquerello	Water; the water-color
La suora; la sorella	The nun; the sister
Il frate; il fratello	The friar; the brother
Il cavallo; il cavalletto	The horse; the saw-horse or easel

VOCABULARY

il bastone	cane, stick	grasso	fat
il cane	dog	ignorante	ignorant
la facoltà	division of university	sapiēnte	wise, sapient
il salotto	sitting-room	annoverare	enumerate, count
la scala	stairs	pōrgere, pōrsi, pōrto	hold out
lo scalino	step of stair	presūmere,	presunsi, presunto assume
Tommaso	Thomas	oramai	now, in view of this
l'università <i>f.</i>	university	in salvo	in safety

EXERCISE

I

1. In Italia lo studio della medicina dura sei anni; a New York, tre o, al più, quattro. 2. Quali sapientoni di medici devono uscire dalle università americane! 3. Ma in Italia i due primi anni della Facoltà medica sono esclusivamente dedicati allo studio delle scienze naturali. 4. Nelle università americane, invece, si presume che il giovane che vuole entrare in una Facoltà di medicina abbia già di queste materie quelle nozioni che oramai fanno quasi parte della cultura generale. 5. In Italia non trovate una cittaduzza di diecimila abitanti che non abbia l'onore di annoverare entro le sue mura qualche dozzina di avvocantucci e di medicastri. 6. La famiglia reale ha dovuto fuggire, per mettere in salvo i principini. 7. Un grand' artista fiorentino, il quale morì giovane, è conosciuto ai pōsteri sotto il nome di Masaccio, cioè, Cattivo Tommaso! 8. Non si può confrontare la mia casuccia con quel palazzo! 9. Come sta, amico mio? Benone! 10. I canini giuocano coi gattini. 11. Ho comprato qualche cosuccia per la bambina.

II

1. As one enters the hall, there is a stairway which leads upstairs to the drawing-room, with a sitting-room next it. 2. The steps of the stairs are rather high. 3. The young man has a cane, and

his little brother has a little cane. 4. Her father is fat, and she is already plump. 5. We shall take the big dog with us, and leave the puppies at home. 6. Unskillful poets are not to be praised. 7. The little peasant boy carries a great stick. 8. These horrid big books are heavy to carry. 9. She has small hands. 10. My little son, you will one day be a big man like me. 11. We live near the great gate. 12. The baby put out its little hands to us. 13. In the Italian universities are found many students.

DIALOGO

SI FANNO LE COMPRE

— Vuol venire con me fino al centro? Ho tante commissioni da fare.

— Volentieri.

— Strada facendo, ci fermeremo dal gioielliere, dove ho lasciato il mio orologio per farlo riparare. Non va bene. Un giorno va troppo avanti, un altro giorno troppo indietro. Non va mai giusto. In questo momento fa cinque minuti il giorno.

— Anch' io voglio andarci. Devo lasciare il mio fermaglio da raccommodare. Non si chiude bene, e la pietra non è incassata a dovere.

— Poi andremo dal merciaio, dove ho bisogno di comprare tante cosine. Prima vorrei un metro di seta uguale a questo campione. Poi occorre tutta la roba da cucire, per un astuccio da viaggio che voglio preparare per un' amica. Comprerò un paio di forbicini, degli aghi di diverse grossezze, dei rocchetti di cotone e di seta, un ditale, e degli spilli e dei ganci. È tanto comodo viaggiando di poter trovare tutto l' occorrente in caso di bisogno.

— Al ritorno passiamo dal cartolaio, per prendere della carta protocollo della quale mi servo per copiare.

— Io ho bisogno dell' inchiostro per la penna a serbatoio, della carta da lettere, e della cartasuga.

— La carta come la compra? Sciolta o in scatola?

— Sempre sciolta. Non mi piace quella in scatola; ce ne danno meno, e non è sempre di buon gusto. Mi occorre anche un pacchetto di buste assortite colla carta, e non ci sarà altro da fare.

LESSON XXXIX

CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS

230. Conjunctions. The conjunctions, like the prepositions, are frequently compound. The following lists are offered for ready reference in translation. The Italian-English list is much the longer, the English-Italian being confined to the more common conjunctions which the student will find useful. Those which require the subjunctive are indicated.

a. List of Conjunctions, English-Italian.

after dopo che

also anche, pure

although benchè, sebbene (*w. subj.*)

and e

as, since poichè, siccome

as (after tanto) quanto; (after tale) quale; (after così) come

as if come se, quasi, quasi che (*w. subj.*)

as fast as via via che

as long as tanto che, fintantochè

as well as come anco

because perchè, perciocchè

before avanti che, prima che (*w. subj.*)

both . . . and e . . . e

but ma; but if che se

but rather, but indeed bensì

either . . . or o . . . o

even if anche se; ancorchè, quando anche (*w. subj.*)

except that *sé non ché*, *tranne ché* (*w. subj.*)
 for *ché*, *poichè*
 granting that *dato ché*, *sempre ché* (*w. subj.*)
 however, nevertheless *però*, *pure*, *tuttavia*
 however (*before adj. or adv.*) *per quanto*, *quantunque* (*w. subj.*)
 if *sé*
 if only *solo ché*, *purchè* (*w. subj.*)
 in case *caso mai*, *nel caso ché* (*w. subj.*)
 in order that *acciocchè*, *affinchè*, *perchè* (*w. subj.*)
 in spite of the fact that *malgrado ché* (*w. subj.*)
 much less *non ché* (*w. subj.*)
 neither . . . nor *nè . . . nè*
 nevertheless *però*, *tuttavia*, *nondimeno*, *ciò nonostante*
 nor . . . either *nemmeno*, *neppure*
 nor even *neanche*, *neppure*
 not to say . . . but even *non ché . . . ma*
 notwithstanding that *nonostante ché*, *malgrado ché* (*w. subj.*)
 on condition that *a patto ché*, *a condizione ché* (*w. subj.*)
 or *o*
 or else *oppure*, *ossia* (*equivalence*), *ovvero* (*difference*)
 provided that *purchè* (*w. subj.*)
 rather than *piuttosto ché*
 since (*causal*) *poichè*, *siccome*, *giacchè*
 since (*temporal*) *dacchè*
 so, so then *dunque*
 so that, in order that *perchè*, *affinchè*, *acciocchè* (*w. subj.*)
 so that (*result*) *di modo ché*, *sicchè*
 supposing that *posto ché*, *supposto ché* (*w. subj.*)
 than *ché*, *ché non*, *di quel ché* (*cf. 115, b, c, d*)
 that *ché*
 that, in order that *perchè* (*w. subj.*)
 that is *cioè*
 the more as, the more that *tanto più ché*
 then, accordingly *dunque*
 therefore *perciò*, *però*, *dunque*, *adunque*
 though *see* although
 too *anche*, *pure*
 unless *senza ché*, *a meno ché non* (*w. subj.*)

until *finchè* *non*
 when *quando*
 whence *dunque*
 where *dove*, *là dove*, *ove*
 whereas *considerando che*
 wherefore *onde* (*w. subj.*), *per lo che*
 wherever *dovunque* (*w. subj.*)
 whether *sé*, *sia*, *sia che*
 while *mentre*, *mentre che*
 yet *nondimeno*, *tuttavia*, *però*, *pure*, *nulladimeno*

b. List of Conjunctions, Italian-English.

acciò, *acciocchè* (*w. subj.*) so that, in order that
a condizione che (*w. subj.*) on condition that
adunque then, so then
affinchè (*w. subj.*) in order that
a mano a mano che proportionately as, as fast as
a meno che non (*w. subj.*) unless
anche also
anche se even if
ancora yet, still, again
ancorchè (*w. subj.*) even if, although
anzi che rather than
a patto che (*w. subj.*) on condition that
avanti che (*w. subj.*) before
avvegna che (*w. subj.*) although
benchè (*w. subj.*) although
bensì but rather, nay indeed
caso, caso mai (*w. subj.*) in case
che that
che, che non than
chè for
cioè that is
ciò nonostante notwithstanding
come as, as it were
come anco as well as
come se (*w. subj.*) as if
conciossiachè although

considerando chè whereas
 con questo chè (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
 così as (*after come*)
 dacchè since (*temporal*)
 dato chè (*w. subj.*) granting that
 di modo chè so that (*result*)
 donde whence
 dopo che after
 dovunque (*w. subj.*) wherever
 dunque then, so then
 e and
 e . . . e both . . . and
 eccetto chè (*w. subj.*) unless
 finchè as long as
 finchè non until
 fintantochè as long as
 fuorchè (*w. subj.*) except that
 giacchè since (*causal*)
 in guisa chè so as to
 là dove where
 laonde wherefore
 ma but
 malgrado chè (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
 mentre, mentre chè while
 nè nor
 nè . . . nè neither . . . nor
 nel caso chè (*w. subj.*) in case
 nemmeno nor, nor . . . either
 neppure nor, nor . . . either
 non chè (*w. subj.*) much less
 non chè . . . ma not to say . . . but even
 nondimeno, non perciò, nulladimeno nevertheless
 nonostante chè (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
 non solo . . . ma not only . . . but
 o or
 o . . . o either . . . or
 onde (*w. subj.*) wherefore, because of which, so as to
 oppure, ossia, ovvero or else

perchè because; (*w. subj.*) in order that
perciò therefore
perciocchè because
per lò chè wherefore, because of which
però however
perocchè because
per quanto (*w. subj.*) however (*before adj.*)
piuttosto chè rather than
poichè since (*causal*)
póscia chè after
pósto che (*w. subj.*) supposing that
prima chè (*w. subj.*) before
purchè (*w. subj.*) provided that
pure however, also
quale as (*after tale*)
qualora (*w. subj.*) whenever, as often as
quando when
quando anche (*w. subj.*) even if
quanto as (*after tanto*)
quantunque (*w. subj.*) whenever
quasi, quasi chè (*w. subj.*) as if
sé if
sebbene (*w. subj.*) although
secondochè according as
semprechè (*w. subj.*) granting that
sé non chè except that
senza chè (*w. subj.*) unless
sé pure (*w. subj.*) if only
sia, sia chè whether
sicchè so that (*result*)
siccome as, since
solo chè (*w. subj.*) if only
supposto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that
tanto chè as long as
tanto più chè the more that
tranne chè (*w. subj.*) except that
tuttavia however, anyway
via via chè as fast as

1. Certain conjunctions, as **anche se**, **di modo che**, etc., which are usually followed by the indicative, are sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

2. Questions and exclamations are introduced sometimes, for greater vivacity, by **o** or **che**, used pleonastically.

Dimmi, Santino, **che** ti piace più la frutta fresca o quella secca? Tell me, Santino, do you like fresh fruit better, or dried?

O provatevi anche voi! È tanto facile Try it yourself! It is very easy

O credete chi ci fosse? Now who do you think was there?

3. A clause is introduced sometimes by **sì che**, as a strengthening or contrasting form.

E **sì che** di amministrazioni libere agli uomini di stato italiani non mancavano esempi!

Se, per esempio, il giovane leggesse un' orazione di Cicerone, alcune odi di Orazio, un libro di Virgilio . . . allora **sì che** egli avrebbe un' idea, tutt' altro che completa, ma almeno rispettabile, della letteratura classica

Tell me, Santino, do you like fresh fruit better, or dried?

Try it yourself! It is very easy

Now who do you think was there?

And yet Italian statesmen did not lack for examples of liberal administration!

If, for example, the youth should read a speech of Cicero, a few odes of Horace, a book of Virgil . . . then he would indeed have an idea, far from complete, but at least tolerable, of classic literature

4. The conjunction **che** is often used alone in familiar speech to mean 'so that,' 'such that.'

Cantavano ch' era un piacere

They sang so that it was a delight
(to listen)

Parlava italiano ch' era un orrore

He spoke Italian horribly

231. Interjections. The following are the more frequent interjections in Italian :

a. Expressing joy, admiration, enthusiasm, and the like :

Bene!

Well! Good!

Bravo! Brava!

Well done! Good for him (*or her*)!

Oh gioia!	What joy! How delightful!
Viva! Evviva!	Hurrah!
Beato tè!	Happy you!

b. Grief, pain, compassion, anger, and the like:

Ahi! Ohi! Deh! Ahimè! Ohimè!	Alas!
Guai!	Woe! Beware!
Peccato! Che peccato!	What a pity! What a shame!
Pôvero a mè!	Poor me
Oh, poverino!	Oh, the poor thing!
Pietà!	Mercy!
Dio ci aiuti!	Heaven help us!
Oibò! Vergogna!	Shame!
Maledetto! Diâvolo!	Zounds! The deuce!

c. Surprise:

Diâmine! Per bacco!	Is it possible! Of course!
Oh bella! Curioso!	How strange!
Mah! Ma chè!	But —! How absurd!
Come mai!	How in the world? How can it possibly be?

d. Encouragement:

Pazienza!	Have patience! Resignation!
Speriamo!	Let us hope so!
Coraggio! Animo!	Courage!
Orsù!	Come now!
Su!	Here! Come!

e. Miscellaneous:

Ecco!	There! Exactly!
Via!	Come, come! Oh, come now!
Ben venuto! Ben venuta!	Welcome!
Largo!	Make way!
Magari!	Rather! Would to God!
Zitto!	Hush!
Chi lo sa!	Who knows!
Piano!	Softly! Gently!

Basta !	Enough !
Al ladro !	Stop thief !
All' armi !	To arms !
Abbasso la tirannide !	Down with tyranny !
Viva l' Italia !	Long live Italy !

VOCABULARY

I' álbero <i>m.</i> tree, mast	a meno che unless
la bréccia breach	a patto che on condition that
la cima summit	a vicenda in turn; mutually
la ferita wound	caso mai in case
la finzione pretense	dacchè since (<i>time</i>)
Livorno Leghorn	in cima a on the top of
il marinaio sailor	malgrado che notwithstanding that
la pólvere powder	neppure not even
il rískio risk	nondimeno nevertheless
il sepolcroto cemetery	piuttosto che rather than
il sogno dream	poichè since (<i>cause</i>)
lo strapazzo abuse, neglect	prima che before
avverare fulfill	purchè provided that
deplorare regret	siccome as
gridare shout	tranne che except that
redimere, redensi, redento redeem	irredento unredeemed
saltare in aria be blown up	

EXERCISE

I

ULTIMI ANNI DELLA GUERRA

Nel 1866, alla battaglia navale di Lissa, Alfredo Cappellini livornese, un eroe da paragonarsi ai più grandi dell' antichità, piuttosto che veder cadere nelle mani dei nemici la sua nave, 'Palestro', dette fuoco alle polveri e saltò in aria con tutti i suoi marinai, i quali morirono gridando dalle cime degli alberi: *Viva l'Italia!*

A Villa Gloria cade Enrico Cairoli, e vi resta malamente ferito Giovanni Cairoli, il quale morì poi, nel 1869. Nomi di una famiglia

sacra alla patria, di una famiglia che per questa patria dette la vita di quattro sopra cinque che erano i suoi figli generosi. Ernesto muore combattendo a Varese; Luigi muore a Napoli per gli strapazzi della guerra del 1860; Benedetto solo, carico di ferite, sopravvive dopo tanti rischi a conforto della madre. Onore alla memoria di Adelaide Cairoli, di questa fortissima donna, che dorme ora nel sepolcro di Groppello, in mezzo a quei figli, che, educati da lei, seppero dare tanta gloria al loro nome e all' Italia.

Oggi, al fine, dopo tante fatiche, tanti sacrifici, e tanti martiri, eccoci arrivati alla nostra capitale, ecco finalmente avverato il sogno di tanti secoli! Ci saremmo dovuti entrare senza le armi, ma le armi ci vollero. Il 20 settembre, 1870, i cannoni dell' esercito italiano tuonavano dinanzi alle mura di Porta Pia. Breve fu la funzione di resistenza da parte dei soldati che la difendevano, e una larga breccia aprì il passo nella città eterna al trionfo dell' Italia redenta.

Viva Roma capitale d' Italia! Ci siamo e ci resteremo!

II

1. The sailors, on top of the masts, were awaiting death.
2. Alfred Cappellini of Leghorn preferred to set fire to the powder and be blown up, rather than let his ship be taken.
3. Since I have been in Italy, the great war has begun.
4. Since they are to arrive so soon, let us not go away before they come.
5. Of the sailors of the ship 'Palestro' not one was left [remained] alive.
6. They were all blown up.
7. Benedetto Cairoli saw his four brothers die in the war.
8. Only he survived them.
9. Unless many men know how to die for their country, Italy can never be united.
10. The Italian soldiers may say: Italy's dream of so many centuries could not have been fulfilled without us.
11. Nevertheless, it is to be regretted that arms were necessary.
12. Enrico was glad to die fighting, provided that Italy might be free and united.
13. The soldiers opened several breaches in the walls of the city.
14. Few

cities have survived longer than [more than] Rome. 15. She has survived in spite of governments having been changed and wars having been fought [in spite of (the fact) that, notwithstanding that, governments have been, etc.]. 16. Italian soldiers and sailors were glad to fight to capture Rome, on condition that their sons should know how to defend it. 17. For many years this country which you see was called by the Italians "Unredeemed Italy." 18. Here we are arrived in that part of Italy of which we have so often thought. 19. The physicians ought to have visited the soldiers in the hospital before their wounds became so dangerous. 20. Although they were covered with wounds, the soldiers opened the way into the Eternal City, crying, "Long live Italy!"

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS (CF. 96, 120, 130)

<i>accēndere, light, kindle</i>	<i>accēsi</i>	<i>acceso</i>
<i>acclūdere, inclose</i>	<i>accluṣi</i>	<i>accluſo</i>
<i>accōrgersi, be aware</i>	<i>mi accōrsi</i>	<i>accōrtosi</i>
<i>addurre, produce, convey</i>	<i>adduco, adducēndo</i>	<i>addotto</i>
	<i>addussi, addurrō</i>	
<i>afflīggere, afflict</i>	<i>afflissi</i>	<i>afflitto</i>
<i>ālgere, be cold</i>	<i>alsi</i>	<i>Defective. Rare</i>
<i>allūdere, allude</i>	<i>alluṣi</i>	<i>alluso</i>
<i>andare, go</i>	<i>Ind. pres. vō or vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno. Fut. anderō, andrō. Past fut. anderēi or andrei. Subj. vada etc., andiamo, andiate, vādano. Imp. va', andate</i>	
<i>annēttere, combine</i>	<i>Past abs. annettēi or annēssi, annettē or annēsse, etc. Past part. annesso</i>	
<i>apparire, appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres. apparisco or appaio, apparisci or appari, apparisce or appare; (appariamo), apparite, appariscono or appāiono. Past abs. apparii, apparvi, apparsi, etc. Subj. apparisca or appaia. Past part. apparito or apparso</i>	
<i>appartenēre, belong</i>	<i>See tenēre</i>	
<i>appēndere, hang</i>	<i>appēsi</i>	<i>appeso</i>
<i>applaudire (applaudēre, poetical), applaud</i>	<i>appludo, applaudisco</i>	
<i>aprire, open</i>	<i>Pres. ind. apro. Past abs. apērsi or aprii. Past part. aperto</i>	
<i>ārdere, burn</i>	<i>arsi</i>	<i>arso</i>
<i>ardire, be bold</i>	<i>Defective in parts which are identical with ardere</i>	
<i>arrēndere, comply</i>	<i>See rendere</i>	
<i>arrōgere, add</i>	<i>arroṣi</i>	<i>arroſo or arrōto. Defective. Rare</i>
<i>ascōndere, hide</i>	<i>See nascondere</i>	
<i>aspērgere, scatter, sprinkle</i>	<i>aspērsi</i>	<i>aspērso</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

assalire, <i>assail</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> assalgo or assalisco, assali or assalisci, etc., assaliamo or assalghiamo, assalite, assâlgono or assalîscono, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> assalii or assalsi. <i>Subj.</i> assalga or assalisca. <i>Past part.</i> assalito
assidersi, <i>besiege</i>	mi assisi assiso
assistere, <i>assist</i>	assistito
assolvere, <i>absolve</i>	<i>assolvēi, assolvētti or assolsi, assoluto or assolto</i>
assorbire, <i>absorb</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> assorbisco or assorbo etc. <i>Subj.</i> assor- bica or assorba etc. <i>Past part.</i> assorbito or assorto
assumere, <i>assume</i>	assunsi assunto
avere, <i>have</i>	<i>See 120</i>
avvertire, <i>warn</i>	avverto, avvertisco, etc.
benedire, <i>bless</i>	<i>Past descr.</i> benedicevo or benedivo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> benedissi or benedii. <i>Imp.</i> benedici etc. <i>Past part.</i> benedetto
bêvere or bêre, <i>drink</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> bêvo or bêo, bêvi or bêi, bêve or bêe, bêvono or bêno. <i>Past abs.</i> bêvvi or bêvetti. <i>Fut.</i> beverò or berrò
bollire, <i>boil</i>	<i>Pres. ind.</i> bollo etc.
cadere, <i>fall</i>	caddi, caduto <i>Fut.</i> cadrò
calere, <i>matter</i>	<i>3 sg. (mi) cale, poet. caglia, poet. calse, poet. caluto.</i> <i>Defective. Impersonal</i>
capire, <i>be contained in</i>	<i>3 pers. cape, câpono</i>
cêdere, <i>yield</i>	cessi (<i>poet.</i>) <i>Regular in prose</i>
chiêdere, <i>ask</i>	<i>Ind. pres. 1 sg.</i> chiêdo or chiëggo, <i>3 pl.</i> chiëdono, chiëggono. <i>Past abs.</i> chiësi. <i>Subj.</i> chiëda or chiëgga, chiediamo, chiëdano or chiëggano. <i>Past part.</i> chiësto
chiûdere, <i>close</i>	chiusi chiuso
cîngere, <i>gird</i>	cinsi cinto
circoncidere	<i>See decidere</i>
côgliere or corre, <i>pluck</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> côlgo, côgli, côglie, cogliamo or col- ghiamo, cogliete, côlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> côlsi. <i>Fut.</i> coglierò or corrò. <i>Imp.</i> côgli. <i>Subj.</i> côlga etc., cogliamo or colghiamo, côlgano. <i>Past part.</i> côlto côlto or culto. <i>Rare</i>
côlere, <i>revere</i>	
comparire, <i>appear</i>	<i>See apparire</i>

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

compiere or cōmpiere, fulfill	<i>Ind. pres.</i> compisco or cōmpio, compisci or cōmpi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Imp.</i> compisci or cōmpi. <i>Subj.</i> compisca or cōmpia <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> compissi or compiessi <i>etc.</i> <i>Pres. part.</i> compiendo; <i>past</i> compito or compiuto		
comprīmere, compress	compresso		
concēdere, concede	concedēti, concedētti or concessi, conceduto or concesso		
concepire, conceive	(conçeve, concepa, conceputo, <i>poetic forms</i>)		
conclūdere, conclude	<i>See</i> acclūdere		
condurre, conduct	<i>See</i> addurre		
connēttere, connect	<i>See</i> annēttere		
conōscere, be acquainted	conobbi	conosciuto	
conquīdere, conquer	conquiši	conquišo	Rare
consistere, consist	<i>See</i> assistere		
consumare, consūmere, consume, finish	<i>Past abs.</i> consumai or consunsi, consumò or con- sunse, consumārono or consünsero. <i>Past part.</i> consumato or consunto		
contēssere, entwine	<i>Part.</i> contesto		
contündere, bruise	contusi	contuso	
convertire, convert	<i>Ind. pres.</i> converto or convertisco. <i>Past abs.</i> con- vertiō or conversi. <i>Past part.</i> convertito, converso		
corrēggere, correct	<i>See</i> reggere		
cōrrere, run	corsi	corso. <i>Like</i> correre are accorrere, decorrere, percorrere, <i>etc.</i>	
cospērgere, sprinkle	<i>See</i> aspergere		
costringere, compel	<i>See</i> stringere		
costruire, construct	costruī or costrussi	costruito or costrutto	
crēscere, grow	crēbbi	cresciuto	
cucire, sew	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cucio, cūciono. <i>Subj.</i> cucia <i>etc.</i>		
cuōcere, cook	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cuōcio, cuōci, cuōce, cuōciono. <i>Past abs.</i> cōssi. <i>Fut.</i> cocerò. <i>Imp.</i> cuōci. <i>Subj.</i> cuōcia <i>Past part.</i> cotto		
dare, give	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dō, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno. <i>Past</i> <i>descr.</i> davo, davī, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> dētti or diēdi, dēsti, dētte or diēde, dēmmo, dēste, dēttero or diēdero. <i>Fut.</i> darò. <i>Imp.</i> da', date. <i>Pres. subj.</i> dia <i>etc.</i> , diamo, diate, dīano; <i>past</i> dessi. <i>Pres.</i> <i>part.</i> dando; <i>past</i> dato		
decidere, decide	decisi	deciso	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<i>delūdere, delude</i>	<i>See alludere</i>		
<i>deprīmēre, depress</i>	<i>See comprimere</i>		
<i>desūmēre, infer</i>	<i>See assumere</i>		
<i>difēndēre, defend</i>	difesi	difeso	
<i>dipēndēre, depend</i>	dipesi	dipeso	
<i>dipīngere, paint</i>	dipinsi	dipinto	
<i>dire, (dīcere), say</i>	<i>Ind. pres. dico, dici or di', dice, diciamo, dite, dīcono. Past descr. dicēvo etc. Past abs. dissī. Fut. dirō. Imp. di', dite. Subj. pres. dica etc.; past dicessi etc. Part. pres. dicēndo, dicēnte; past dētto. Compounds of dire have dici in 2 sg. imp.</i>		
<i>dirīgēre, direct</i>	dirēssi	dirētto	
<i>discōrrēre, converse</i>	<i>See correre</i>		
<i>discūtere, discuss</i>	discussi	discusso	
<i>dissōlvere, dissolve</i>	dissolvēi or dissolysi	dissoluto	
<i>dissuadēre, dissuade</i>	<i>See persuadere</i>		
<i>distinguēre, distinguish</i>	distinsi	distinto	
<i>divertire, divert</i>	<i>Ind. pres. diverto etc.; "turn aside," regular</i>		
<i>dividēre, divide</i>	divisi	diviso	
<i>dolēre, grieve, pain</i>	<i>Ind. pres. dolgo, duqli, duqle, dolghiamo or do-gliamo, dolete, dōlgono. Past abs. dōlsi. Fut. dorrō. Subj. dōlga. Past part. doluto</i>		
<i>dormire, sleep</i>	<i>Ind. pres. dōrmo. Subj. dōrma. Imp. dōrmi. Part. pres. dormēnte or dormiēnte</i>		
<i>dovere, owe</i>	<i>Ind. pres. dēvo or dēbbo (poet. dēggio); dēvi or dēi; dēve, dēbbe (rare), or dēe; dobbiamo; dovēte; dēvono or dēbbono (poet. dēggiono), etc. Fut. dovrō. Subj. dēva or dēbba</i>		
<i>elīdere, elide</i>	eliši or elidēi	elišo	
<i>elūdere, elude</i>	<i>See alludere</i>		
<i>emērgēre, emerge</i>	emērsi	emērso	
<i>empire or ēmpiere, fill</i>	<i>Ind. pres. ēmpio, ēmpi, etc. Past abs. empīi, em-piēi, empiētti; empisti, empiēsti, etc. Fut. em-pirō. Imp. ēmpi, empīte. Subj. ēmpia etc.; past empissi, empiēssi, etc. Part. pres. empiēndo; past empito or empiuto.</i>		
<i>ērgēre, erect</i>	ērsi	<i>(adj. ērto). Rare in prose</i>	
<i>erigēre, erect</i>	<i>See dirigere</i>		

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

<i>esclūdere, exclude</i>	<i>See accludere</i>	
<i>eşigere, exact</i>	<i>eşigēi</i>	<i>esatto</i>
<i>eşimere, exempt</i>	<i>eşimēi (Past abs. and past part. from eşentare.)</i>	
<i>eşistere, exist</i>	<i>See assistere</i>	
<i>espellere, expel</i>	<i>espulsi</i>	<i>espulso</i>
<i>esplōdere, explode</i>	<i>esplōşī</i>	<i>esplōso</i>
<i>esprimere, express</i>	<i>See comprimere</i>	
<i>ēssere, be</i>	<i>See 96</i>	
<i>estīnguere, extinguish</i>	<i>See distinguere</i>	
<i>evādere, escape</i>	<i>See invadere</i>	
<i>fare, (fācere), do, make</i>	<i>Ind. pres. fq or faccio, fai, fa (poet. face), facciamo, fate, fanno. Past descr. facevo etc. Past abs. fēci. Fut. farò. Imp. fa', fate. Subj. faccia etc. Part. pres. facēnte, facēndo; past fatto</i>	
<i>fedire (defective and poetical for ferire), strike</i>	<i>Ind. pres. fiędo, fiędi, fięde, fiędono. Subj. fięda, fiędano</i>	
<i>fēndere, split</i>	<i>fendēi or fęssi</i>	<i>fenduto or fęsso</i>
<i>fērvore, glow</i>	<i>Defective. Lacks compound tenses and past part.</i>	
<i>figgere, fix</i>	<i>fissi</i>	<i>fisso or fitto</i>
<i>fīngere, pretend</i>	<i>finsi</i>	<i>finto</i>
<i>flētttere, bend</i>	<i>fusi</i>	<i>flesso. Defective. Poetical</i>
<i>fōndere, melt</i>	<i>fransi</i>	<i>fuso</i>
<i>frāngere, break</i>	<i>frissi</i>	<i>franto</i>
<i>frīggere, fry</i>	<i>Ind. pres. fuggo, fuggi, fugge, etc. Imp. fuggi. Subj. fugga etc.</i>	
<i>fuggire, flee</i>		
<i>genuflētttere, kneel</i>	<i>genuflessi</i>	<i>genuflesso</i>
<i>giacēre, lie</i>	<i>Rare Ind. pres. giaccio, giaci, giace, giacciamo or giacciamo, giacete, giäcciono. Past abs. giacqui. Subj. giaccia etc.</i>	
<i>giocare, play</i>	<i>Ind. pres. giuqco, giuqchi, etc. See rotare.</i>	
<i>gire, turn</i>	<i>Ind. pres. and Imp. z pl. gite. Past descr. givo etc. Past abs. gisti, gimmo, girono. Fut. girò (rare). Past part. gito</i>	
<i>giüngere, arrive</i>	<i>giunsi</i>	<i>giunto</i>
<i>godēre, enjoy</i>	<i>Fut. goderò or godrò</i>	
<i>illūdere, illude</i>	<i>See alludere</i>	
<i>immērgere, immerse</i>	<i>See emergere</i>	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<i>imprīmere, print</i>	<i>See comprimere</i>	
<i>incidere, engrave</i>	<i>inciſi</i>	<i>inciſo</i>
<i>includere, include</i>	<i>See accludere</i>	
<i>incōrrere, incur</i>	<i>See correre</i>	
<i>incūtere, instil</i>	<i>incutēi or incussi</i>	<i>incusso</i>
<i>indūlgere</i>	<i>indulſi</i>	<i>indulto Poetical. Rare</i>
<i>indurre, induce</i>	<i>See addurre</i>	
<i>infocare, inflame</i>	<i>Ind. pres. infuqco, infuqchi, etc. See rotare.</i>	
<i>inghiottire, swallow</i>	<i>Ind. pres. inghiottisco or inghiotto. Subj. inghiottisca or inghiotta etc. Imp. inghiottisci or inghiotti</i>	
<i>insistere, insist</i>	<i>See assistere</i>	
<i>intēſſere, interweave</i>		<i>intessuto or intēſto</i>
<i>intridere, knead</i>	<i>intrisi</i>	<i>intriſo</i>
<i>intrūdere, intrude</i>	<i>intrusi</i>	<i>intruso</i>
<i>invādere, invade</i>	<i>invaſi</i>	<i>invaſo</i>
<i>ire, go</i>	<i>Pres. ind. ite. Past descr. ivo, ivi, etc. Past abs. isti, iste, iroно. Past part. ito. Poet. Defective</i>	
<i>istruire, instruct</i>	<i>See costruire</i>	
<i>lēdere, offend</i>	<i>lēſi (rare)</i>	<i>lēſo</i>
<i>leggere, read</i>	<i>leſſi</i>	<i>leſto</i>
<i>līcere or lēcere, allow</i>	<i>Past part. lēcito or līcito</i>	<i>Impersonal. Defective</i>
<i>lūcere, shine</i>	<i>Ind. pres. luci, luce, lūcono. Past descr. lućevo, lucēvano. Subj. pres. luca, lūcano; past lućessi etc. Pres. part. lucēndo (adj. lucēnte). Defective</i>	
<i>lūdere, play</i>	<i>lusi</i>	<i>lusо Rare</i>
<i>maledire, curse</i>	<i>See benedire</i>	
<i>mantenēre, maintain</i>	<i>See tenere</i>	
<i>mentire, lie, deceive</i>	<i>Ind. pres. mēnto, mentisco. Subj. mēnta, mentisca. Imp. mēnti etc.</i>	
<i>mērgere, plunge</i>	<i>mērsi</i>	<i>mērſo</i>
<i>mēscere, mix</i>		<i>misto or mesciuto</i>
<i>mēttere, put</i>	<i>miſi or mēſsi</i>	<i>messo</i>
<i>mōlcere, soothe</i>	<i>Ind. pres. molci, mōlce. Past descr. molćevo etc. Imp. molci. Subj. past molćessi etc. Pres. part. molcēndo</i>	<i>Defective. Poetical</i>
<i>mōrdere, bite</i>	<i>mōrsi</i>	<i>mōrſo</i>

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

<i>morire, die</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> muqio, muqri, muqre, moriamo, morite, muqiono. <i>Fut.</i> morrò, morirò. <i>Imp.</i> muqri. <i>Subj.</i> muqia, mqa (<i>poet.</i>), moriamo, moriate or moiate, muqiano, mqrano (<i>poet.</i>). <i>Part. pres.</i> morente, moriente; <i>past</i> mqrto
<i>mūngere, milk</i>	munsi
<i>muqvere, move</i>	mossi
<i>nāscere, be born</i>	nacqui
<i>nascōndere, hide</i>	nascosi
<i>negligere (cf. 5, c), neglect</i>	neglessi
<i>nuqcerē, harm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nuqco or noccio, nuqcono or nōcciono, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> nqcqui. <i>Past part.</i> nociuto
<i>nutrire, nourish</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nutro, nutrisco. <i>Subj.</i> nutra, nutrisca
<i>offēndere, offend</i>	offesi
<i>offrire or offerire, offer</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> offro, offerisco. <i>Past abs.</i> offersi or offrii. <i>Subj.</i> offra, offerisa. <i>Past part.</i> offerto
<i>oppīmēre, oppress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere
<i>ottenēre, obtain</i>	<i>See</i> tenere
<i>parēre, appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> paio, pari, pare, paiamo, parete, pāiono. <i>Past abs.</i> parvi or parsi. <i>Fut.</i> parrò. <i>Imp.</i> lack- ing. <i>Subj.</i> paia etc., pāiano. <i>Past part.</i> parso or paruto
<i>partire, leave, go away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> parto; "share," partisco
<i>patire, suffer</i>	<i>Rare forms:</i> pato, pati, pate, pātono; <i>p. part.</i> passo.
<i>pentirsi, repent</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mi pēnto etc. <i>Imp.</i> pēntiti. <i>Subj.</i> si pēnta etc.
<i>percipere, perceive</i>	<i>Past part.</i> perçetto
<i>percuqtere, strike</i>	<i>Defective. Rare</i> percossi
<i>pērdere, lose</i>	<i>The diphthong is preserved in the ind. pres. when-</i> <i>ever the tonic accent falls upon the o.</i> persi, perdēi, or perdetti; perso or perduto. <i>The</i> <i>compounds disperdere and sperdere have only</i> <i>the irregular forms.</i>
<i>permēttere, permit</i>	<i>See</i> mettere
<i>persistere, persist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere
<i>persuadēre, persuade</i>	persuaşı
<i>pervertire, pervert</i>	<i>See</i> avvertire

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<i>piacere, please</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> piaccio, piaci, piace, piacciono, piacete, piacciono. <i>Past abs.</i> piacqui. <i>Subj.</i> piaccia; piacciamo, piacciate, piacciono. <i>Past part.</i> piaciuto	
<i>piangere, weep</i>	piansi	pianto
<i>pingere, push</i>	<i>See</i> dipingere	<i>Rare in prose</i>
<i>piqvvere (impersonal), rain</i>	piqvve	piovuto
<i>plaudere, applaud</i>	<i>See</i> applaudire	<i>Poetical</i>
<i>pqrgere, stretch forth</i>	porsi	pporto
<i>porre (pqnere), place</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> pongo, ponì, pone, poniamo or ponghamo, ponete, póngono. <i>Past abs.</i> posì. <i>Fut.</i> porrò. <i>Imp.</i> ponì. <i>Subj.</i> ponga; poniamo or ponghamo, poniate, póngano. <i>Part. pres.</i> ponendo; <i>past</i> posto	
<i>possedere, possess</i>	<i>See</i> sedere	
<i>potere, be able</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> posso, può, può, possiamo, potete, pòssono (ponno, poet.). <i>Fut.</i> potrò. <i>Imp.</i> wanting. <i>Subj.</i> possa; possiamo, possiate, pòssano. <i>Past part.</i> potuto	
<i>precédere, precede</i>	precedetti	preceduto
<i>prediligere, prefer</i>	predilessi	prediletto
<i>preludere, prelude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
<i>prémere, crush</i>	pressi, premei, premetti	
<i>préndere, take</i>	presi	presso
<i>presumere, assume</i>	Comprendere, sorprendere, imprendere, <i>are conjugated like</i> prendere	
<i>produrre, produce</i>	presunsi	presunto
<i>profferire, proffer</i>	<i>See</i> addurre	
<i>prometttere, promise</i>	<i>See</i> offerire	
<i>protéggere, protect</i>	<i>See</i> mettere	
<i>pùngere, prick</i>	protessi	protetto
	punsi	punto
<i>rädere, shave</i>	rasi	raso
<i>recidere, sever</i>	<i>See</i> decidere	
<i>redimere, redeem</i>	redensi	redento
<i>redire or rièdere, return</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> rièdo, rièdi, riède; rièdono. <i>Past descr.</i> redivo. <i>Past abs.</i> redirono. <i>Subj. (rare)</i> riedesse and riedessero	<i>Defective. Poetical</i>
<i>règgere rule</i>	rëssi	rëtto
	<i>Compounds conjugated like</i> reggere	

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

rēndere, render	resi, rendei or rendetti; reso or renduto. Arrēndere, arreso
reprimere, repress	See comprimere
resistere, resist	See assistere
respīngere, repulse	See spingere
richiēdere, demand	See chiedere
rīdere, laugh	risi riso
ridurre, reduce	See addurre
riflēttere, reflect	riflessi riflesso
rifūlgere, shine	In sense of "consider" regular
rilūcere, shine	rifulsi Part. wanting
rimanere, remain	rillusii Part. wanting
ripōnere, replace	Ind. pres. rimango, rimani, rimane, rimaniamo or rilmanghamo, rimanete, rimāngono. Past abs. rimasi. Fut. rimarrò. Imp. rimani. Subj. rimanga. Past part. rimasto or rimaso
risolare, re-sole	See porre. More usual form, riporre
risolvere, resolve	risuolo, risuoli, etc.; diphthong occurs wherever o is accented
rispōndere, reply	See assolvere
riuscire, succeed	risposi risposto
rōdere, gnaw	See uscire
rōmpere, break	rosi roso
rotare, turn, whirl	ruppi rotto
salire, go up	Ind. pres. ruoto, ruoti, etc.; diphthong occurs wherever o is accented
sapēre, know	Ind. pres. salgo, sali, sale, salghiamo or sagliamo, salite, sālgono. Past abs. salii or salsi. Imp. sali. Subj. salga, salghiamo, sālgano, etc. Past part. salito
scēgliere (scērre), choose	Ind. pres. sq, sai, sa, sappiamo, sapete, sanno. Past abs. seppi. Imp. sappi, sappiate. Subj. sappia. Fut. saprò. Part. pres. sapiēte; past saputo
scēndere, descend	Ind. pres. scelgo, scegli, sceglie, scegliamo or scelghiamo, scegliete, scēlgono. Past abs. scelsi. Subj. scelga etc. Past part. scelto
scērnere, discern	scesi sceso
	scersi or scernēti Past part. wanting

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<i>scindere, sever</i>	<i>scissi</i>	<i>scisso</i>
<i>sciōgliere or sciōrre, loosen</i>	<i>Prescindere has prescindētti also Ind. pres. sciōlgo, sciōgli, sciōglie, sciogliamo, sciogliete, sciōlgono. Past abs. sciōlsi. Fut. scioglierò or sciorrò. Imp. sciogli. Subj. sciōlga. Past part. sciōlto</i>	
<i>scolpire, carve</i>	<i>scolpii or poet. sculsi</i>	<i>scolpito or poet. sculto</i>
<i>sconnēttere, disconnect</i>	<i>See annettere</i>	
<i>scoprire, discover</i>	<i>See coprire</i>	
<i>scōrgere, perceive</i>	<i>scōrsi</i>	<i>scōrto</i>
<i>scrivere, write</i>	<i>scrissi</i>	<i>scritto</i>
<i>scuōtere, shake</i>	<i>scossi</i>	<i>scosso</i>
<i>şdrucire, rip</i>	<i>Diphthong uo preserved only where the accent falls on it</i>	
<i>sedere, sit</i>	<i>Ind. pres. şdrucio or şdrucisco. Subj. şdrucia or şdrucisca</i>	
<i>sedurre, seduce</i>	<i>Ind. pres. sēggo or siēdo, siēdi, siēde, sediamo, sedete, sēggono or siēdono. Past abs. sedēi. Imp. siēdi. Subj. sēgga or siēda, sēggano or siēdano. Past part. seduto</i>	
<i>seguire, follow</i>	<i>See addurre</i>	
<i>sentire, feel, smell</i>	<i>Ind. pres. sēguo, sēgui, etc. Subj. sēgua etc. Imp. sēgui. Conseguire in sense of "obtain," regular. Eseguire regular</i>	
<i>seppellire, inter</i>		<i>sepoltō or seppellito</i>
<i>servire, serve</i>	<i>Ind. pres. sērvo, sērvi. Subj. sērvā. Imp. sērvi</i>	
<i>sodisfare, satisfy</i>	<i>Ind. pres. sodisfō or sodisfaccio, sodisfi, sodisfa, sodisfacciamo, sodisfate, sodisfano. Subj. so- disfi or sodisfaccia etc., sodisfacciamo, sodisfac- ciate, sodisfino or sodisfacciano. Imp. sodisfa, sodisfate. See fare</i>	
<i>soffōlcere, support</i>	<i>soffolse</i>	<i>soffolto Defective. Rare</i>
<i>soffrire, suffer</i>	<i>See offrire</i>	
<i>solēre (defective), be wont</i>	<i>Ind. pres. sōgliono, suōli, suōle, sogliamo, soleō, sōgliono. Subj. sōglia etc. Past abs., fut., past fut., imp., wanting; supplied by esser solito. Past part. sōlito</i>	
<i>sōlvere, undo</i>	<i>solvēi (solvētti)</i>	<i>soluto Poetical</i>

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

sonare, ring	<i>Ind. pres.</i> suqno, suqni. <i>Diphthong occurs wherever the accent falls on o</i>
sopprimere, suppress	<i>See comprimere</i>
sorbire, sip	<i>See assorbire</i>
sōrgere, arise	sorsi sorto
sospēndere, suspend	sospesi, sospeso. <i>So appendere, impendere ; pendere is reg., dipendere either reg. or irreg.</i>
sostenere, sustain	<i>See tenere</i>
spāndere, spill	spanduto or poet. spanto
spārgere, spatter	sparsa sparsò or rare sparto
sparire, disappear	<i>See apparire</i>
spēndere, spend	spesi speso
spēngere or spēgnere, extinguish	spensi spento
spērdere, lose	<i>See perdere</i>
spērgere, disperse	spersi sperso Rare
spīngere, push	spinsi spinto
spōrgere, project	sporsi sporto
stare, be, stay	<i>Ind. pres.</i> stq, stai, sta, stiamo, state, stanno. <i>Past descr.</i> stavo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> stetti, stesti, stette or (<i>poet.</i>) stiè, stemmo, steste, stettero. <i>Imp.</i> sta', state. <i>Subj.</i> stia etc., stiamo, stiate, stiano ; <i>past stessi</i> etc. <i>Past part.</i> stato. <i>Ri-stare and sopra-stare, like stare :</i> ristq, ristai, etc.
stēndere, extend	<i>See tendere</i>
stringere, press	strinsi stretto
strüggere, melt	strussi strutto
succēdere, succeed	Distruggere like struggere
sūggere, suck	<i>See concedere</i>
sussistere, subsist	suggei or sussi. <i>Past part.</i> lacking. Rare
svēllere or svēlgere (svērre), uproot	<i>See assistere</i>
svēnire, swoon	<i>Ind. pres.</i> svēlgo, svēlgi or svēlli, svēlge or svelle ; svēlgiamo or svēlghiamo, svēlgete, svēlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> svēlsi. <i>Fut.</i> svellerq. <i>Subj.</i> svēlga, svēlghiamo, svēlgano. <i>Past part.</i> svēlto
tacere, be silent	<i>See venire. Fut.</i> svenirq, sverrq
Ind. pres. taccio, taci, tace, taciamo, tacete, tācciono. <i>Past abs.</i> tacqui. <i>Imp.</i> taci. <i>Subj.</i> taccia ; tacciamo, tacciate, tācciano. <i>Past part.</i> taciuto	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

tēndere, extend	tēsi	tēso	
tenēre, hold	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tēngo, tiēni, tiēne, teniamo or tenghiamo, tenete, tēngono. <i>Past abs.</i> tēnni. <i>Fut.</i> terrō. <i>Imp.</i> tiēni. <i>Subj.</i> tēnga, teniamo or tenghiamo, etc. <i>Past part.</i> tenuto		
tērgere, wipe	tērsi	tērso	Rare
tīngere, tint	tinsi	tinto	
tōgliere or tōrre, take away	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōlgo, tōgli, tōglie, togliamo, togliete, tōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> tōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> torrō or toglierō. <i>Imp.</i> tōgli, tō'. <i>Subj.</i> tōlga etc. <i>Past part.</i> tōlto <i>Pres.</i> tuqno. <i>Diphthong occurs on the accent.</i>		
tonare, thunder	tōrsi	tōrto	
tōrcere, twist	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōsso. <i>Subj.</i> tōssa. <i>Imp.</i> tōssi. (Rarely tossisco etc.)		
tossire, cough	<i>See addurre</i>		
tradurre, translate	<i>Ind. pres.</i> traggio, trai, traē, tragghiamo, traēte, trāggono. <i>Past abs.</i> trassi, traēsti, trasse, traēmmo, traēste, trāssero. <i>Fut.</i> trarrō. <i>Imp.</i> trai. <i>Subj.</i> tragga etc., tragghiamo, trāggano. <i>Past part.</i> tratto. <i>The compounds</i> attrarre, con- trarre, distrarre, ritrarre, etc., like trarre		
uccidere, kill	ucciši	uccišo	
udire, hear	<i>Ind. pres.</i> qdo, qdi, qde, udiamo, udite, qdono. <i>Subj.</i> qda; udiamo, udiate, qdano. <i>Imp.</i> qdi, udite. <i>Fut.</i> udirō or udrō. <i>Past abs.</i> udi. <i>Past part.</i> udito		
ūngere, anoint	unsi	unto	
ūrgere, urge	<i>Forms in use:</i> <i>Ind. pres.</i> urge, ūrgono. <i>Past descr.</i> urgevo, urgēvano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> urga, ūrgano; <i>past</i> urgēsse, urgēssero. <i>Part. pres.</i> urgēnte, urgēndo. <i>Fut.</i> urgerà, urgeranno <i>Defective</i>		
uscire (rarely escire), go out	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ęsco, ęsci, ęsce, usciamo, uscite, ęscuno. <i>Subj.</i> ęsca; usciamo, usciate, ęscano. <i>Imp.</i> ęsci, uscite. <i>Past abs.</i> uscii. <i>Past part.</i> uscito		
valēre, be worth	<i>Ind. pres.</i> valgo, vali, vale, vagliamo or valghiamo, valēte, vālgono. <i>Past abs.</i> valsí. <i>Fut.</i> varrō. <i>Imp.</i> vali. <i>Subj.</i> valga or vaglia, valghiamo or vaglia- mo, valghiate, vālgano or vāgliano. <i>Past part.</i> valso or valuto		

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

<i>vedere, see</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vēdo or vēggo, vēdi, vēde, vediāmo, vēdete, vēdono or vēggono (<i>poet.</i> veggio, vēggiono). <i>Past abs.</i> vidi. <i>Fut.</i> vēdrō. <i>Imp.</i> vēdi or vē', vēdete. <i>Subj.</i> vēda or vēgga, <i>poet.</i> vēggia; vediāmo, vediāte, vēdano or vēggano, <i>poet.</i> vēggiano. <i>Part. pres.</i> vēdēnte or vēggēnte; <i>past</i> visto or veduto. <i>Prevedere</i> and <i>provvedere</i> have <i>futures</i> prevederō and provvederō. <i>Other compounds of vedere, like vedere</i>		
<i>venire, come</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vēngo, vieni, viene, veniamo, venite, vēngono. <i>Past abs.</i> venni. <i>Fut.</i> verrō. <i>Imp.</i> vieni, venite. <i>Subj.</i> vēnga, <i>poet.</i> vēgna. <i>Part. pres.</i> vēniēnte or vēgnēnte; <i>past</i> venuto. <i>Compounds of venire conjugated like venire</i>		
<i>vestire, dress</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vēsto, vēsti, vēste, etc. <i>Past part.</i> vestito, <i>poet.</i> vestuto		
<i>vilipēndere</i>	<i>See appendere</i>		
<i>vīncere, conquer</i>	<i>vinsi</i> vinto		
<i>vivere, live</i>	<i>Past abs.</i> vissi. <i>Fut.</i> vivrō. <i>Past part.</i> vissuto (<i>rarely</i> vivuto)		
<i>volere, wish, will</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> voglio or vō', vuōi, vuōle, vogliamo, vo- lēte, vōgliono. <i>Past abs.</i> vōlli. <i>Fut.</i> vorrō. <i>Imp.</i> vogli, vogliate. <i>Subj.</i> voglia etc., vogliamo, vogliate, vōgliano		
<i>vōlgere, turn</i>	<i>vōlsi</i>	vōlto	
<i>vōlvere, turn</i>	<i>vōlsi</i>	vōlto	Rare
	Devolvere has a <i>past part.</i> devoluto		
<i>votare, empty</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vuōto, vuōti, etc., diphthong occurring whenever the accent falls on o.		



ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

a, ad (39), at, to	affettuoso affectionate, cordial
abbandonare abandon	affisso <i>m.</i> placard, notice
abbasso below; downstairs	affollato crowded, thronged
abbiamo <i>i pl. pres. ind. of avere</i>	agguantare seize upon
abitante <i>m.</i> inhabitant	agire act
abitare dwell, reside	agitatore <i>m.</i> agitator
ābito <i>m.</i> coat	agli, ai, 75
abituarsi (<i>a</i>) accustom oneself (to)	ago <i>m.</i> needle; hand (of clock)
accadere happen	Agostino Augustine
accanto (<i>a</i>) next, next door (to)	agosto <i>m.</i> August
accēndere light, kindle	l'Aia the Hague
accettare accept	aiutare help
acciaio <i>m.</i> steel	al, allo, 75; alle sei at six o'clock
accidente <i>m.</i> accident	albergo <i>m.</i> hotel
accomodarsi make oneself comfortable, sit down	ālbero <i>m.</i> tree; mast
accompagnare accompany; match	alcuno some, some one
accordarsi agree	allegro joyful
accōrdo <i>m.</i> agreement	allōdola <i>f.</i> lark
accōrgersi di notice, become aware of	allora then, at that time
accrēscere increase	almēno at least
acqua <i>f.</i> water	alterare alter
acquistare acquire	altezza <i>f.</i> height; highness
acre sharp, bitter	alto high
addatto adapted, suitable	altrettanto as much again
addosso (<i>a</i>) on top, on the back (of)	altro other; ~! of course!
adriātico <i>adj.</i> Adriatic	altrui of others
adulto adult, mature	alzarsi rise, get up
affare <i>m.</i> affair; <i>pl.</i> business	amare love
affermare affirm, declare	ambedue both
	ambizione <i>f.</i> ambition
	ambiziōso ambitious
	l'Amērica <i>f.</i> America
	americano American

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

amica (<i>pl.</i> -che) <i>f.</i> friend	aprile <i>m.</i> April
amico (<i>pl.</i> -ci) <i>m.</i> friend	aprire open
Amleto Hamlet	arancio <i>m.</i> orange-tree
ammalato ill	architetto <i>m.</i> architect
amministrativo administrative	ārdere burn
ammirare admire	ardito bold
amore <i>m.</i> love	ardore <i>m.</i> ardor
anche also	argento <i>m.</i> silver
ancora yet, still, again	āria <i>f.</i> air
andare (149) go; andārsene (127)	Aristōtile Aristotle
go away	armi <i>f. pl.</i> arms
andō 3 <i>sg. p. abs.</i> of andare	arrestare arrest
anello <i>m.</i> ring	arrivare arrive
āngelo <i>m.</i> angel	arrivo <i>m.</i> arrival
āngolo <i>m.</i> corner; far ~ con be at the corner of	arte <i>f.</i> art
angusto narrow	artista <i>m.</i> artist
annaffiare water	ascoltare listen
annaffiatō <i>m.</i> watering-pot	aspettare wait, await
anno <i>m.</i> year; buon~ Happy New Year	aspettativo <i>m.</i> expectancy
annoverare enumerate	assai very; much
antemeridiano of the morning	assortito to match, like
antichità <i>f.</i> antiquity	assurdo absurd
anticipatamente beforehand, in ad- vance	astuccio <i>m.</i> sewing-case
antico ancient	attēdere await
antimilitarista <i>m.</i> anti-militarist	attēnto attentive; stare ~ pay at- tention
antologīa <i>f.</i> anthology	attenzione <i>f.</i> attention; fare ~ pay attention
ape <i>f.</i> bee	attillato close fitting; well dressed
aperto open	āttimo <i>m.</i> instant
apparecchiare set table	attrarre draw, attract
appartamento <i>m.</i> apartment	augurare wish, wish well
appartenēre belong	austriaco Austrian
appassire wither	automōbile <i>c.</i> automobile
appēna hardly; no sooner	autore <i>m.</i> author
applicare apply	autunno <i>m.</i> autumn
appollaiarsi roost	avanti before, ahead; ~ che conj. w. subj. before
approvare approve	avarō <i>m.</i> miser
appuntare pin	avere (120) have; ~ da have to; aver

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

caldo, freddo, be hot, cold ; avér	Bèlga (<i>pl. -gi, -ghe</i>) Belgian
fretta, fūria, be in a hurry ; avēr-	il Bèlgio Belgium
sela a male take ill, be offended	bellezza <i>f.</i> beauty
avrò <i>1 sg. fut. ind. of avère</i>	bēllico pertaining to war
avvenire (138) happen	bellico warlike
avventarsi a rush upon	bellino pretty
avverare aver, confirm	bello fine, beautiful ; bell' <i>è fatto</i>
avvertire advise, warn	ready-made
avvezzare accustom	benchè <i>conj. w. subj.</i> although
avviarsi take one's way	bene, bēn, well
avvicinarsi a approach	benefizio <i>m.</i> benefit
avviàrsi bethink oneself	benissimo very well indeed
avviso <i>m.</i> placard	benzina <i>f.</i> gasoline
avvocato <i>m.</i> lawyer	bēre drink
azzurro blue	bianco white
 	biasmāre blame
babbo <i>m.</i> papa	bicchière <i>m.</i> drinking-glass
baciare kiss	bīgio gray
bācio <i>m.</i> kiss	biglietto <i>m.</i> ticket ; \sim d'andata e ritorno round-trip ticket
badare take care	bilāncio <i>m.</i> balance, account
bagagliaio <i>m.</i> baggage-room	biliōne <i>m.</i> trillion (U.S.), billion (Eng.)
bagāglia <i>m.</i> baggage, trunk	bimbo, -a, baby
bagnato wet	bisognare <i>impers.</i> need
bagno <i>m.</i> bath	bisogno <i>m.</i> need
balenare lighten	bocconi on one's face
bambino, -a, child	bojia <i>m.</i> executioner
banda <i>f.</i> band	bollella <i>f.</i> check, receipt
bandiera <i>f.</i> flag	bollire boil
barattare exchange	Borbōne Bourbon
barca <i>f.</i> boat	borsa <i>f.</i> purse, bag
basso low	bōscō <i>m.</i> wood
bastare suffice, be enough	bottega <i>f.</i> shop
bastōne <i>m.</i> cane	bottiglia <i>f.</i> bottle
battāglia <i>f.</i> battle	bōve <i>m.</i> ox
bātttere beat	braccio <i>m.</i> arm
baule <i>m.</i> trunk ; fare il \sim pack	brano <i>m.</i> shred, fragment
one's trunk	bravo brave ; clever
bāvero <i>m.</i> coat-collar	brēccia <i>f.</i> breach
bēbē <i>m.</i> baby	brēve short
bēl <i>for</i> bello	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

britānnico Britannic	capo <i>m.</i> head; a ~ chino with bowed head
bruciare burn	caporale <i>m.</i> corporal
bruscamente abruptly	cappello <i>m.</i> hat; ~ sōdo derby hat; ~ a cēncio soft hat
brutto ugly	carāttore <i>m.</i> character, disposition
būio <i>m.</i> dark; al ~ in the dark	carbonaro <i>m.</i> charcoal-burner
buqno, buqn, good; buqn giorno	cārcere <i>m.</i> prison
good morning; buqna sera good	cardo <i>m.</i> thistle
afternoon, good evening	carezza <i>f.</i> caress
burro <i>m.</i> butter	cārica <i>f.</i> load; office
büssola <i>f.</i> compass, bearings	caricare load; wind up
busta <i>f.</i> envelope	cārico loaded; wound up
buttare throw; ~ via throw away	carino charming, pretty
cacciare hunt, drive out	Carlo Charles
cadere fall	carne <i>f.</i> meat
caduco weak	caro dear
caffè <i>m.</i> coffee; café	carponi on all fours
caldo warm, hot; fa ~ it is warm	carrozza <i>f.</i> carriage
weather	carta <i>f.</i> paper; ~ protocollo foolscap
calmo calm	cartasuga <i>f.</i> blotting-paper
calore <i>m.</i> heat	cartellino <i>m.</i> sheet, label
calzino <i>m.</i> sock	cartello <i>m.</i> shop-sign
calzolaio <i>m.</i> shoemaker	cartolaio <i>m.</i> stationer
calzonì <i>m. pl.</i> trousers	cartolina postale post card
cāmera <i>f.</i> chamber; ~ da letto bed- room	casa <i>f.</i> house; a ~ homeward, home; in ~ at home; stare in ~ stay in; star di ~ reside
cameriére <i>m.</i> waiter	le Cascine "The Dairies," a park in Florence
camminare walk	cašo <i>m.</i> case; in ogni ~ in any case; ~ mai in case
campagna <i>f.</i> country	castello <i>m.</i> castle
campione <i>m.</i> sample	catēna <i>f.</i> chain
cane <i>m.</i> dog	cattivo bad
cannone <i>m.</i> cannon	cavaliere <i>m.</i> knight, man on horse- back
cantare sing	cavallo <i>m.</i> horse; andare a ~ ride horseback
canzone <i>f.</i> song	cavare take out
capello <i>m.</i> hair	
capino <i>m.</i> crown of hat	
capire understand	
capitale <i>f.</i> capital	
capitare chance to be, happen in	
capitolo <i>m.</i> chapter	

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

cēdere yield	cinque five
cēlebre celebrated	cioccolata <i>f.</i> chocolate
celēste light blue	circa about, approximately
cēncio <i>m.</i> rag; cappello a ~ soft hat	Ciro Cyrus
cēnno <i>m.</i> signal, nod	città <i>f.</i> city
centēsimo <i>m.</i> centime	cittadino <i>m.</i> citizen
centimetro <i>m.</i> centimeter	ciuco <i>m.</i> donkey
centinaio <i>m.</i> collective hundred	civetta <i>f.</i> coquette
cēnto hundred, a hundred	civile civilized
centrale central	civiltà <i>f.</i> civilization
cēntro <i>m.</i> center; al ~ down town	classe <i>f.</i> class
cercare look for; ~ di (<i>w. inf.</i>) try	clāssico classic
cervello <i>m.</i> brain	cogli, coi, 75
Cēsare Caesar	cogliere gather, pluck
cessare cease	cognata <i>f.</i> sister-in-law
chē which, that	cognato <i>m.</i> brother-in-law
chi who, whom	cōl, cōllo, cōlla, 75
chiacchierare chat	colazione <i>f.</i> luncheon; far ~ take luncheon
chiamare call; chiamarsi be called, be named	collana <i>f.</i> necklace
Chiara Clara	cōllera <i>f.</i> anger
chiaro clear, light (color)	collina <i>f.</i> hill
chicca <i>f.</i> sweetmeat	cōlmo <i>m.</i> summit
chięsa <i>f.</i> church	colorato colored; tan
chilo <i>m.</i> kilogram	colore <i>m.</i> color
chino bent; a capo ~ with bowed head	colpa <i>f.</i> blame, fault
chiōcciola <i>f.</i> snail; scala a ~ winding stair	coltello <i>m.</i> knife
chirurgo <i>m.</i> surgeon	comandare command
chiūdere shut	comando <i>m.</i> command
ci, ce, <i>pron.</i> us; <i>adv.</i> there; c'è, ci sono, there is, there are	combattēre fight
ciarpetta <i>f.</i> necktie, scarf	come as, like
ciascuno each one	cominciare begin
cięco blind	comissiōne <i>f.</i> errand
cilindro <i>m.</i> cylinder; cappello a ~ tall hat	commosso moved
cima <i>f.</i> summit; in ~ a on top of	commovēnte moving
cinquanta fifty	cōmodo convenient, comfortable; far ~ come handy; star ~ be comfortable
	compagno, -a, companion
	comparire appear

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

compiere fulfill, complete	convenire (138) be suitable, be fitting
compleanno <i>m.</i> birthday	conversazione <i>f.</i> conversation
complimento <i>m.</i> compliment; <i>far complimenti</i> stand on ceremony	copertone <i>m.</i> blanket
compra <i>f.</i> purchase	copiare copy
comprare buy	coppia <i>f.</i> couple
comunicante connecting, communicating	coprire cover
comunicare communicate	coraggio <i>m.</i> courage
con with	cornetta <i>f.</i> horn
condannare condemn	corrēggere correct
condurre conduct	cōrrere run
confine <i>m.</i> boundary	corrispōndere correspond
comforto <i>m.</i> comfort	cōrsa <i>f.</i> course, run
confrontare compare	cōrtese kind
congiurare conspire	cōrto short
conoscenza <i>f.</i> acquaintance	cōsa <i>f.</i> thing
conōscere know, be acquainted with	cosciēnza <i>f.</i> consciousness
conquistatore <i>m.</i> conqueror	così thus, so
considerare consider	cōsta <i>f.</i> coast
considerēvole considerable	costaggiù down there
consigliere <i>m.</i> adviser, counselor	costare cost
consiglio <i>m.</i> advice	cotōne <i>m.</i> cotton
consistere consist	cōttimo <i>m.</i> contract; a ~ by the piece
cōnsole <i>m.</i> consul	cravatta <i>f.</i> necktie, cravat
consumato used up	crēdere believe
contadino, -a, peasant	crēscere grow
contante <i>m.</i> counting, cash; a contanti in cash	cristiano Christian
conte <i>m.</i> count	Cristōforo Colōmbo Christopher Columbus
contentarsi (<i>di</i>) content oneself (with)	crociata <i>f.</i> crusade
contento contented	cucchiaio <i>m.</i> spoon
contessa <i>f.</i> countess	cucina <i>f.</i> kitchen; cookery
continuare continue	cucire sew
conto <i>m.</i> bill; tornar ~ be of advantage; non mērita il ~ it is not worth while	cugino, -a, cousin
contrārio contrary	cui to whom, of whom, to which, of which
contro against	cultura <i>f.</i> culture
	cuōcere cook
	cuojo <i>m.</i> leather

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

cuore <i>m.</i> heart	diciassette seventeen
da by, from	diciotto eighteen
dacchè since (<i>temporal</i>)	dicono <i>3 pl. pres. ind. of dire</i>
dagli, dai, dal, dallo, dalla, 75	dieci ten
danno <i>3 pl. of dare</i>	dietro <i>a</i> behind
danno <i>m.</i> damage, injury	difendere defend
dappertutto everywhere	difesa <i>f.</i> defense
dare (131) give; ~ su face on; ~ il buon viaggio wish (one) a pleasant journey	difetto <i>m.</i> fault, defect
davanti <i>a</i> in front of	difficile difficult
davvero indeed	diffondere scatter
décimo tenth	difilato straight ahead
decina <i>f.</i> (<i>collective</i>) ten	dighiacciare thaw
dedicare dedicate	dimenticare forget
degenerare degenerate	diminuire diminish
degli, dei, del, dello, della, 75	dimorare dwell, reside
denaro <i>m.</i> money	dimostrare show
dente <i>m.</i> tooth	dinanzi <i>a</i> in front of
dentro (<i>di</i>) within	dinastia <i>f.</i> dynasty
deplorare regret, lament	dio <i>m.</i> god
deprimere depress	dire (175) say
deputato <i>m.</i> deputy, representative	direzione <i>f.</i> direction
desiderare desire	dirigere direct
desiderio <i>m.</i> desire	discosto (a) distant (from)
deşinare dine	discreto modest, discreet
dëstro right	discutere discuss
determinare determine	disfatta <i>f.</i> defeat
dëtto <i>p.p. of dire</i>	disgrazia <i>f.</i> misfortune
dëvi, dëve, 2-3 sg. <i>pres. ind. of dovere</i>	disgraziatamente unfortunately
di of; di là da beyond; di qua da on this side of	dispaccio <i>m.</i> telegram
dì <i>m.</i> day	disperato desperate
dia <i>sg. pres. subj. of dare</i>	dispiacente sorry
diálogo <i>m.</i> dialogue	dispiaciére displease
dica <i>sg. pres. subj. of dire</i>	disse <i>3 sg. p. abs. of dire</i>
dice says	distendere spread
dicembre <i>m.</i> December	ditale <i>m.</i> thimble
dichiarare declare	dito <i>m.</i> finger
diciannove nineteen	diventare become
	diverso different
	divertirsi amuse oneself
	dividere divide

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

dō <i>1 sg. pres. ind. of dare</i>	ècco here is, there is, behold
dobbiamo <i>1 pl. pres. ind. of dovere</i>	èco <i>c.</i> echo
dōdici twelve	educato polite
dolce <i>m.</i> sweetmeat, dessert; <i>adj.</i> sweet	effettuare effect
dolere (172) grieve; <i>w. dat.</i> ache	egli, ei, he
dolorosamente sorrowfully, painfully	èglino they (<i>m.</i>)
domandare ask; ~ <i>di</i> ask for (a person)	elegante elegant
domani to-morrow	elevato elevated
domēnica <i>f.</i> Sunday	eligere elect
domēstico <i>m.</i> servant; <i>adj.</i> domestic	ella she
donna <i>f.</i> woman; woman-servant	èlleno they (<i>f.</i>)
dopo <i>prep.</i> after; ~ <i>ché</i> <i>conj.</i> after	elogio <i>m.</i> praise, eulogy
doppio double	emozione <i>f.</i> emotion
dormire sleep	energia <i>f.</i> energy
dōsso <i>m.</i> back	Enrico Henry
dotare endow	entrambi both
dōtto learned	entrare enter
dove where	entuşıasmo <i>m.</i> enthusiasm
dovere <i>v.</i> (188) owe; <i>m.</i> duty	èra <i>f.</i> era
dovesse <i>3 sg. p. subj.</i> of <i>dovere</i>	eredità <i>f.</i> heredity
dovunque <i>conj. w. subj.</i> wherever	erçe <i>m.</i> hero
dozzina <i>f.</i> dozen	eroicamente heroically
drammātico dramatic	esclusivamente exclusively
dubitare doubt	esempio <i>m.</i> example
duca <i>m.</i> duke	esercito <i>m.</i> army
ducato <i>m.</i> duchy	esiiliare exile
due two; Due Sicilie <i>f. pl.</i> Kingdom of the Two Sicilies	esitare hesitate
dunque then, accordingly	esperto skillful, expert
duodēcimo twelfth	esporre (196) expose
duomo <i>m.</i> cathedral	espressione <i>f.</i> expression
durare last	esprime <i>3 sg. pres. ind.</i> of <i>esprimere</i>
è, èd (39), and	esprimere express
è is	èssere (96) be
eccitamento <i>m.</i> excitement	esso, -a, he, him, she, her, it
	estate <i>f.</i> summer
	età <i>f.</i> age; in ~ <i>di</i> at the age of
	eterno eternal
	etrusco Etruscan
	evenienza <i>f.</i> event, occurrence
	evitare avoid

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

fa <i>3 sg. pres. ind. of fare</i>	fērro <i>m. iron</i>
fa' <i>2 sg. imper. of fare</i>	ferroviārio <i>railway (adj.)</i>
facchino <i>m. porter</i>	fērvēre <i>burn, be fervent</i>
fāccia <i>f. face; in ~ a opposite</i>	fēsta <i>f. holiday</i>
fāccio <i>1 sg. pres. ind. of fare</i>	fiacco <i>weak</i>
faceva <i>3 sg. past descr. of fare</i>	fico <i>m. fig</i>
fācile <i>easy</i>	figlia <i>f. daughter</i>
facoltà <i>f. college (of university)</i>	figlio <i>m. son</i>
falco <i>m. falcon, hawk</i>	figurare <i>figure</i>
fallire <i>fail</i>	figurarsi <i>imagine</i>
fallo <i>m. miss, failure, error; senza ~ without fail</i>	figurino <i>m. pattern; manikin</i>
fame <i>f. hunger; aver ~ be hungry</i>	Filippo <i>Philip</i>
famiglia <i>f. family</i>	filosōfico <i>philosophical</i>
famoso <i>famous</i>	finalmēnte <i>finally</i>
fango <i>m. mud</i>	finchē <i>as long as; ~ nōn until</i>
fantašia <i>f. ornament</i>	fine <i>f. end; m. aim; alla ~ at last</i>
fare <i>(163) make, do; far caldo be hot weather; far freddo be cold weather; far colazionē take breakfast; far passare, far entrare, show in; far tardi be late</i>	finēstra <i>f. window</i>
fatale <i>fatal</i>	finire <i>finish</i>
fatica <i>f. fatigue, effort</i>	fino <i>fine</i>
faticoso <i>wearisome</i>	fino a <i>up to, as far as; fin da from (time); fin dove how far</i>
fatto <i>m. fact, deed; p.p. of fare</i>	finziōne <i>f. fiction, pretense</i>
favore <i>m. favor; per ~ please</i>	fiocco <i>m. bow</i>
favorire <i>favor, favor with</i>	fiore <i>m. flower</i>
fazzoletto <i>m. handkerchief</i>	fiorentino <i>Florentine</i>
febbraio <i>m. February</i>	fiorire <i>bloom</i>
fēcero <i>3 pl. p. abs. of fare</i>	fiorito <i>in bloom</i>
fede <i>f. faith</i>	Firenze <i>Florence</i>
fedeltà <i>f. fidelity</i>	fischio <i>m. whistle</i>
felice <i>happy</i>	fiume <i>m. river</i>
feltro <i>m. felt</i>	fōdera <i>f. lining</i>
ferire <i>wound, strike</i>	fōglia <i>f. leaf</i>
ferita <i>f. wound</i>	fondino <i>m. shape, foundation</i>
fermāgio <i>m. brooch</i>	fondo <i>m. back, bottom, end; in ~ a at the back etc. of</i>
fermarsi <i>stop</i>	fōrbici <i>f. pl. scissors</i>
fermo <i>firm, still</i>	forchetta <i>f. fork</i>
	fōrma <i>f. form, last</i>
	formicolare <i>swarm</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

fornaio <i>m.</i> baker	generale <i>adj.</i> general; <i>m.</i> general
fornire furnish	generalmente usually, generally
forse perhaps	gēnere <i>m.</i> sort, kind
forte strong	gēnero <i>m.</i> son-in-law
fortuna <i>f.</i> fortune, good luck	generoso generous
forza <i>f.</i> force; <i>a ~ di</i> by dint of	genitori <i>m. pl.</i> parents
forzato forced	gennaio <i>m.</i> January
fotografia <i>f.</i> photograph	gēnte <i>f.</i> folk, people
fra among, between	gentile kind, agreeable
francēse French	ghiacciare freeze
Francesco Francis	ghiaccio <i>m.</i> ice
la Francia France	già already; once, formerly
francobollo <i>m.</i> postage-stamp	giacchetta <i>f.</i> jacket
frate <i>m.</i> friar, brother	il Giappone Japan
fratello <i>m.</i> brother	giardino <i>m.</i> garden
freddo cold; <i>fa ~</i> it is cold	ginōcchio <i>m.</i> knee
freño <i>m.</i> brake	ginocchiōni on one's knees
frēsco cool	giocare (110, <i>d</i>) play
frētta <i>f.</i> haste; <i>aver ~</i> be in haste	gioia <i>f.</i> joy
frettoloso hurried	gioielliére <i>m.</i> jeweler
fronte <i>f.</i> front; forehead; <i>far ~ a</i> resist	gioiello <i>m.</i> jewel
frugale frugal	Giorgio George
frutto <i>m.</i> fruit	giornale <i>m.</i> newspaper
fu the late, deceased	giornata <i>f.</i> day, period of a day; <i>a ~ by the day</i>
fucilazione <i>f.</i> execution, shooting	giorno <i>m.</i> day; <i>di ~ by day</i>
fuggire flee	giōvane young
fulmine <i>m.</i> thunderbolt	giovanetto, -a, young person
fumo <i>m.</i> smoke	Giovanni, Giovannino, John
fungo <i>m.</i> mushroom	giovare be of use
fuoco <i>m.</i> fire	giovedì <i>m.</i> Thursday
fuori outside; <i>~ di porta</i> outside the city; <i>andar ~ go out</i>	gioventù <i>f.</i> youth
galantuomo <i>m.</i> honorable man	girare turn
gallina <i>f.</i> hen	giratina <i>f.</i> short walk
ganci <i>m. pl.</i> hooks (and eyes)	giro <i>m.</i> tour, circular journey
garōfano <i>m.</i> carnation	giù down
gelare freeze	giubba <i>f.</i> dress-coat
gelato <i>m.</i> ice-cream	giudiziōso sensible, judicious
	giugno <i>m.</i> June
	Giūlio Julius

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

giungere arrive	ignorante ignorant
giurare swear	il, i, the (<i>m. sg. and pl.</i>)
Giuseppe Joseph	illustre illustrious
giusto just, right	imbandire serve (a meal)
gli to him; the (<i>m. pl.</i> , 71, b, c)	immediatamente immediately
gloria f. glory	imparare learn
gnocco m. dumpling	impari odd, uneven
gomito m. elbow	impedire prevent, hinder
gondola f. gondola	imperatore <i>m.</i> emperor
gota f. cheek	impermeabile <i>m.</i> rain-coat
governatore <i>m.</i> governor	impéro <i>m.</i> empire
governo <i>m.</i> government	impérvio impervious
grammatica f. grammar	impiccare hang (a man)
grande large, great	impiegato <i>m.</i> employee
granducato <i>m.</i> grand duchy	imporre (196) impose
grasso fat	importare import
grave heavy	impossibile impossible
grazie f. <i>pl.</i> thanks	impostare post, mail
grazioso pretty, charming, graceful	imprigionare imprison
greco Greek	improvviso unforeseen; all' ~ un-
gridare cry, shout	expectedly
grigio gray	imprudente imprudent
grossezza size, magnitude	in in, into
grasso big	incassare set
gru f. crane	incasso <i>m.</i> receipts
gruppo <i>m.</i> group	inchiostro <i>m.</i> ink
guadagnare earn	incominciare commence
guancia f. cheek	incontrare meet
guantaio <i>m.</i> glover	indarno in vain
guanto <i>m.</i> glove	independenza f. independence
guardare look, look at	indietro back, backward
guardia f. conductor, guard	individuo individual
guarire recover, be cured	indomani <i>m.</i> (the) next day
guarnizione f. trimming	indovinare guess
guerra f. war	industria f. industry
guida f. guide	inesauribile inexhaustible
gusto <i>m.</i> taste	infatti in fact
idea f. idea	infelice unhappy
ieri yesterday	inferiore inferior, lower
	inferno <i>m.</i> Inferno, hell

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

infimo	lowest	lana	f. wool
inganno	m. deceit	lanciare	throw
ingegnere	m. engineer	lapis	m. pencil
ingegno	m. talent, genius	larghezza	f. width
l'Inghilterra	f. England	largo	wide
inglese	English	lasciare	leave, allow
Inglese	m. Englishman	latino	Latin
ingrato	ungrateful	latta	f. tin
innalzare	raise	latte	m. milk
insegna	f. shop sign	lavamanio	m. washstand
insegnare	teach	lavarsi	bathe, wash
insieme	together	lavorare	work
insigne	remarkable	lavoro	m. task
insudiciare	soil	le	to her; the (f. pl.)
integro	whole, entire	legge	f. law
intelligente	intelligent	leggendo	reading
intendere	understand	leggere	read
interrotto	interrupted	leggiero	light; light-colored
intitolare	entitle	legno	m. wood; carriage
intravvedere	glimpse	lei	her; you, sg. (65, a)
invecchiare	grow old	lettera	f. letter
invce	instead; on the contrary	letteratura	f. literature
inverno	m. winter	letto	p.p. of leggere
inviare	send	letto	m. bed
io	I	levare	lift; levarsi rise
isola	f. island	lezione	f. lesson
istituire	establish	li	them (m.)
istitutore, -trice	, instructor, teacher	li	there
istituzione	f. institution	liberazione	f. liberation
l'Italia	f. Italy	libero	free
italiano	Italian	libertà	f. liberty
la, le,	the (f. sg. and pl.); her,	libraio	m. bookseller
them (f.)		libro	m. book
là	there	licenza	f. leave
labbro	m. lip	lieto	gay, cheerful
lagnarsi	complain	limone	m. lemon
lago	m. lake	lingua	f. language; tongue
lāico	lay, layman	lira	f. lira, twenty cents
lāmpada	f. lamp	liscio	smooth, plain
		lite	f. lawsuit

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

livornese	Leghornese	malgrado <i>m.</i> displeasure ; ~ <i>ché</i>
Livorno	Leghorn	<i>conj. w. subj.</i> notwithstanding that
<i>l</i> o him ; the (<i>m. sg.</i> , 71, b)		mamma, mammina , <i>f.</i> mamma
lodare	praise	māmmola <i>f.</i> violet
il Lombardo-Vēneto	Lombardo-Venetia	mancanza <i>f.</i> lack; sentire la ~ di miss
		mancare fail, be lacking
Londra	London	māncia <i>f.</i> fee, tip
lontano (da)	distant (from)	mandare send
<i>l</i> oro their, them ; you, <i>pl.</i> (65, a)		mane <i>f.</i> morning (<i>poet.</i>) ; da ~ a
lotta <i>f.</i> struggle		sera from morning till night
lotto <i>m.</i> lottery		mangiare eat
lūglio <i>m.</i> July		mānica <i>f.</i> sleeve
lui him		mānico <i>m.</i> handle
Luigi Louis		maniēra <i>f.</i> manner
lume <i>m.</i> light, lamp		mano <i>f.</i> hand ; a ~ by hand ; di
lunedì <i>m.</i> Monday		seconda ~ at second hand ; dar la
lunghezza <i>f.</i> length		~ a shake hands with
lungi far		māntice <i>m.</i> bellows
lungo long		mārcia <i>f.</i> march
luogo <i>m.</i> place		marciapiède <i>m.</i> sidewalk
lusso <i>m.</i> luxury		mare <i>m.</i> sea ; al ~ by the sea ; in ~
lustrare polish, black		at sea
lustrascarpe <i>m.</i> bootblack		marina <i>f.</i> navy
lutto <i>m.</i> mourning ; a ~ in mourning		marinaio <i>m.</i> sailor
 		marito <i>m.</i> husband
ma but		martedì <i>m.</i> Tuesday
māccchia <i>f.</i> stain ; thicket		martirio <i>m.</i> martyrdom
māccchina <i>f.</i> machine ; ~ da scrivere		marzo <i>m.</i> March
typewriter		māschera <i>f.</i> mask
madre <i>f.</i> mother		maschio male
maestà <i>f.</i> majesty		māssimo greatest
maestro, -a , teacher		matēria <i>f.</i> subject, matter, material
māggio <i>m.</i> May		mattina <i>f.</i> morning
maggiore greater; elder		mazzolino <i>m.</i> bouquet
mai ever ; non . . . ~ never		medēšimo same, self
malamente badly		medicina <i>f.</i> medicine
malanno <i>m.</i> misfortune		mēdico <i>m.</i> physician
malattia <i>f.</i> illness		mēglio better (<i>adv.</i>)
male badly ; far ~ a hurt ; non c' è ~		mēla <i>f.</i> apple
pretty well ; ~ di testa headache		memōria <i>f.</i> memory

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

meno less (<i>adv.</i>); fare a ~ di do without; a ~ che <i>conj. w. subj.</i> unless	miserabile, wretched
mente <i>f.</i> mind; a ~ by heart	misura <i>f.</i> measure; su ~ to order
mentire lie	mite gentle
mentre while	Mōdena a city in northern Italy
merciaio <i>m.</i> dry-goods merchant	modenese of Modena
mercoledì <i>m.</i> Wednesday	moderno modern
meridionale southern	modesto modest
meritare deserve	modista <i>f.</i> milliner
mese <i>m.</i> month	mōglie (<i>pl.</i> mōgli) <i>f.</i> wife
messa <i>f.</i> Mass	mōlla <i>f.</i> spring, mainspring
mestiere <i>m.</i> trade, craft	mōlle <i>f.</i> <i>pl.</i> tongs
metà <i>f.</i> half	moltitudine <i>f.</i> multitude
metallo <i>m.</i> metal	molto, -i, much, many
mētro <i>m.</i> meter	momento <i>m.</i> moment; a momento in a minute
metrōpoli <i>f.</i> metropolis	mōnaco <i>m.</i> monk
mēttere put, put on; mēttersi a begin; mēttersi a sedere sit down	monarca <i>m.</i> monarch
mēzzanotte <i>f.</i> midnight	monārchico monarchical
mēzzo <i>m.</i> half; middle; in ~ a in the middle of	mōndo <i>m.</i> world
mēzzogiorno <i>m.</i> mid-day	monello <i>m.</i> rascal
mi, mē, me	monēta <i>f.</i> coin, piece of money
miglio (<i>pl.</i> miglia) <i>m.</i> mile	montagna <i>f.</i> mountain
migliore better (<i>adj.</i>)	montare mount, climb
Milano Milan	montone <i>m.</i> sheep
miliōne <i>m.</i> million	morire (156) die
militare military	mormorare murmur
militarišmo <i>m.</i> militarism	mōrte <i>f.</i> death
militarista <i>m.</i> militarist	mōrto dead
mille thousand, a thousand	mostrare show
mināccia <i>f.</i> threat	mōstro <i>m.</i> monster
minacciare threaten	mōto <i>m.</i> motion
miniēra <i>f.</i> mine	movimento <i>m.</i> movement
mīnimo least	muggire low
ministro <i>m.</i> minister	mughetto <i>m.</i> lily-of-the-valley
minōre less; younger	muōvere (110, d, i) move
minuto <i>m.</i> minute	muricciuolo <i>m.</i> low wall
mīo my	muro <i>m.</i> wall
	musēo <i>m.</i> museum
	mutare change; ~ di pensiero change one's mind

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Nāpoli Naples	nōnno <i>m.</i> grandfather, grandparent
nāscere be born	nōno ninth
nascōndere hide	nonostante <i>chè conj. w. subj.</i> notwithstanding that
nascōsto hidden; di ~ secretly	nōstro our, ours
nastro, nastrino, <i>m.</i> ribbon	notizie <i>f. pl.</i> news
Natale <i>m.</i> Christmas; buon ~	nōtte <i>f.</i> night; di ~ by night
Merry Christmas	novanta ninety
natura <i>f.</i> nature	nōve nine
naturale natural	novēmbre <i>m.</i> November
navale naval	novità <i>f.</i> novelty, notion
nazionale national	nozione <i>f.</i> notion, idea
nazionalità <i>f.</i> nationality	nōzze <i>f. pl.</i> wedding
nazione <i>f.</i> nation	nulla nothing
nē <i>adv.</i> thence; <i>pron.</i> of it, of them	nūgra <i>f.</i> daughter-in-law
nè <i>conj.</i> neither, nor; ~ . . . ~ neither	nūovo new; di ~ again
... nor	nutrire nourish
nēbbia <i>f.</i> fog	
necessārio necessary	o, qd (39), or; o . . . o either . . . or
negōzio <i>m.</i> shop	o or q now, well now
nēl, nēllo, nēlla, nēgli, nēi, 75	occasiōne <i>f.</i> occasion, opportunity
nemico <i>m.</i> enemy	qcchio <i>m.</i> eye; a quattr' qcchi tête-à-tête; dar nēll' ~ be conspicuous
nemmeno not even	occidentale western
neppure nor . . . either; not even	occōrrere <i>impers.</i> need; occorrente requisite, wanted
nēro black	occupare occupy
nessuno no one	offrire offer
neve <i>f.</i> snow	qggi to-day
nevicare snow	ogni every
nido <i>m.</i> nest	ognuno every one
niēnte nothing; you're welcome	olmo <i>m.</i> elm
nipote, nipotino, <i>m.</i> nephew	ombrēllo <i>m.</i> umbrella
nitrire neigh	qnda <i>f.</i> wave
nō no	onomāstico <i>m.</i> saint's-day
nōbile noble	onore <i>m.</i> honor
nōce <i>f.</i> walnut	qpera <i>f.</i> work
nōi we, us	operaio <i>m.</i> workman
nōia <i>f.</i> annoyance; dar ~ a annoy	ora now; qr ~ just now; qr sōnō ago
nōiōso annoying	oramāi, ormāi, henceforth
nōme <i>m.</i> name	
nōn not, no	
nondimeno nevertheless	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

ordinamento <i>m.</i> arrangement	paradiſo <i>m.</i> paradise
ordinare order	paragonare compare
ordine <i>m.</i> order	pareggiare equal
orecchino <i>m.</i> earring	parēnte <i>m.</i> relative
orēcchio <i>m.</i> ear; ~ da mercante	parere (161) appear
deaf ear	pari even
organizzazione <i>f.</i> organization	Parigi Paris
orlo <i>m.</i> edge	parlare speak
oro <i>m.</i> gold	pārroco <i>m.</i> parish priest
orolōgio <i>m.</i> watch	parte <i>f.</i> part, side, share
orrōre <i>m.</i> horror	partire depart
osare dare	parvenire (138) arrive
oscuro obscure	Pasqua <i>f.</i> Easter
osservare observe	passare pass
osso <i>m.</i> bone	passeggiare walk
ottanta eighty	passeggiata <i>f.</i> walk; fare una ~
ottavo eighth	take a walk
ōttimo best	passeggiō <i>m.</i> walk
otto eight	passo <i>m.</i> step; passage
ottōbre <i>m.</i> October	pasta <i>f.</i> cake
ove where	patire suffer
 	pātria <i>f.</i> country, fatherland
pacco <i>m.</i> parcel	patrimōnio <i>m.</i> patrimony
pace <i>f.</i> peace	patriota <i>m.</i> patriot
padre <i>m.</i> father	patto <i>m.</i> bargain; a ~ ché <i>conj. w.</i>
padrone <i>m.</i> landlord	subj. on condition that
paesāggio <i>m.</i> landscape	paūra <i>f.</i> fear; aver ~ di be afraid of
paese <i>m.</i> country; village	paziēnza <i>f.</i> patience
pagare pay, pay for	pazzo mad
pāgina <i>f.</i> page	peccato <i>m.</i> sin; what a pity
pāglia <i>f.</i> straw	peggio worse (<i>adv.</i>)
paio <i>m.</i> (<i>pl.</i> paia) pair	peggiore worse (<i>adj.</i>)
palazzo <i>m.</i> palace	pēi, pēl, 75
palla <i>f.</i> ball	pelle <i>f.</i> skin
panchētto <i>m.</i> footstool	pellegrino <i>m.</i> pilgrim
pane <i>m.</i> bread	penna <i>f.</i> pen; ~ a serbatōlo fountain
paniēre <i>m.</i> basket	pen
panna <i>f.</i> whipped cream	pensare think, reflect; ~ a think of
panorama <i>m.</i> view	pensiēro <i>m.</i> thought; dar ~ a worry
Pāolo Paul	(<i>tr.</i>); stare in ~ worry (<i>intr.</i>)

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

pensione <i>f.</i> board; boarding-house; boarding-school	pieno full
pentirsi repent	pietra <i>f.</i> stone
per for; per uno apiece	pigliare take
pera <i>f.</i> pear	pioggia rain
perchè why; because; so that	pittore <i>m.</i> painter, artist
perciò therefore	più more
perdere lose	piuma <i>f.</i> plume
peregrinare wander, go on pilgrimage	piuolo <i>m.</i> rung; scala a piuoli ladder
pericolo <i>m.</i> danger	piuttosto rather
pericoloso dangerous	pneumatico <i>m.</i> tire
permesso <i>m.</i> permission, permit me	poco <i>adv.</i> little, a little; <i>pl.</i> pochi <i>adj.</i> few, a few; <i>a ~ a ~</i> little by little
permettere permit	poeta <i>m.</i> poet
pero <i>m.</i> pear-tree	poetare poetize
però however	poi then
perseguitare persecute	poichè since (<i>causal</i>)
persona <i>f.</i> person	politica <i>f.</i> politics
pesante heavy	politico <i>adj.</i> political; <i>m.</i> statesman
pêsco <i>m.</i> peach-tree	polvere <i>f.</i> powder
pessimo worst	pomeridiano of the afternoon
Petrarca Petrarch	pompare pump
pêtto <i>m.</i> breast	ponte <i>m.</i> bridge
pêzzo <i>m.</i> piece	pontificio papal, pontifical
piacere a (185) please; per ~ please; far ~ a do a favor for	popolo <i>m.</i> people
piaggia <i>f.</i> slope	porgere stretch out
piangere weep	porre (196) put
pianista <i>m.</i> pianist	porta <i>f.</i> door, gate
piano <i>m.</i> plain; <i>adv.</i> softly, gently	portare carry
pianta <i>f.</i> plant	portata <i>f.</i> reach, ability; <i>a ~ di mano</i> within reach of one's hand
piattino (<i>m.</i>) da tazza saucer	porto <i>m.</i> harbor
piatto <i>m.</i> plate, dish; course	posata <i>f.</i> place at table, cover
piazza <i>f.</i> square, open place	possizione <i>f.</i> position, location
piccino tiny	possibile possible
piccolo small	possibilità <i>f.</i> possibility
piède <i>m.</i> foot; <i>a piedi</i> on foot	posso <i>I sg. pres. ind.</i> of potere
piêga <i>f.</i> plait	posta <i>f.</i> post, mail; <i>a ~ on purpose</i>
il Piemonte Piedmont	postale postal; cartolina <i>~</i> post card
piemontese Piedmontese	postino <i>m.</i> postman
	posto <i>m.</i> place, room

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

potere (168) can, be able; <i>non ~ a meno di</i> cannot help	problema <i>m.</i> problem
potrebbero <i>3 pl. past fut. of potere</i>	produzione <i>f.</i> production
pôvero poor	professore <i>m.</i> professor
povertà <i>f.</i> poverty	profondamente profoundly
pranzare dine	proibire prevent, forbid
pranzo <i>m.</i> dinner	prometttere promise
prática <i>f.</i> practice	pronto ready; all aboard
prático practical; <i>~ di</i> familiar with	proprietà <i>f.</i> property
prato <i>m.</i> meadow	proprio own
preferire prefer	 prova <i>f.</i> trial; fitting
pregare ask, pray	provare try, try on
pregio <i>m.</i> value	prudente prudent
prego don't mention it	pulire clean
prendere take; prendersela take offense	punire punish
preoccuparsi di be concerned with	puntare aim
preparare prepare	punto <i>m.</i> point
presentare present	purchè <i>conj. w. subj.</i> provided that
presidente <i>m.</i> president	pure however; pray
prestare lend	purgatôrio <i>m.</i> purgatory
presto quickly, soon	
presumere assume	
prevalegere (220) prevail	
prezioso precious	qua here
prezzo <i>m.</i> price	quaderno <i>m.</i> note-book
prigione <i>f.</i> prison	quadrettino <i>m.</i> check
prima before, earlier; quanto ~ as soon as possible ; <i>~ che conj. w. subj.</i> before; <i>~ di prep.</i> before	quadro <i>m.</i> picture
primavera <i>f.</i> spring	qualche (<i>sg. only</i>) some
primitivo primitive	quale, -i , such as
primo first	qualora whenever
principale principal	qualunque whatever
principe <i>m.</i> prince	quando when
principessa <i>f.</i> princess	quanto how much; in <i>~ a</i> as for, regarding; per ~ however
principiare begin	quaranta forty
principio <i>m.</i> beginning; fin dal ~ from the first	quarto <i>m.</i> quarter, fourth
	quattordici fourteen
	quattro four
	quello that; quel che that which, what
	quercia <i>f.</i> oak
	questo this; quest' altro next, coming

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

quiete <i>f.</i> quiet	riabbracciare	embrace again
quindici fifteen	riaprire	reopen
quinto fifth	riavere	recover, get back
	ricco	rich
raccomandare mend; recommend;	ricēvere	receive
raccomandarsi warn, urge	richiēdere	demand
raccomandazione <i>f.</i> warning, recommendation	ricontare	count over
raccontare narrate	ricordarsi <i>di</i>	remember
raro rare; di ~ seldom	ridare	give again, give back
raffreddore <i>m.</i> cold; prēndere un ~ catch cold	ridere	laugh
ragazza <i>f.</i> girl	ridicolo	ridiculous
ragazzo <i>m.</i> boy	rifare	remake, rebuild
ragione <i>f.</i> reason; aver ~ be right	rifiutare	refuse
rallentare slacken speed	rigato	striped
rame <i>m.</i> copper, brass	rigoroso	rigorous
rappresentare represent	rimanere (129)	remain
rē <i>m.</i> king	rimedio <i>m.</i> remedy; non c' è ~ there is no help for it	
reale royal	rimproverare	reprove
recare bring, take; recarsi take one's way	rimprōvero <i>m.</i> reproof	
recente recent; di ~ recently	rincrēscere <i>impers.</i>	pain, cause sorrow
recluta <i>f.</i> recruit	rinomato	famous
redimere redeem	rinunziare <i>a</i>	renounce
redingote (<i>Fr.</i>) <i>f.</i> frock-coat	riparare	take refuge
rēggere rule	ripētere	repeat
Rēggio a city in northern Italy	risata <i>f.</i>	laugh, laughter
regina <i>f.</i> queen	rischio <i>m.</i>	risk
regnante <i>m.</i> ruler	riso <i>m.</i>	laugh
regno <i>m.</i> kingdom	risorgimento <i>m.</i>	resurrection
relativo relating	risparmiare	save, spare
rēmo <i>m.</i> oar; barca a ~ row-boat	rispettābile	respectable
Rēno Rhine	rispōndere	respond
repubblicano republican	risultato <i>m.</i>	result
resistēnza <i>f.</i> resistance	ritornare	return
restare remain	ritratto <i>m.</i>	portrait
rēsto <i>m.</i> rest; change (money)	riunire	assemble
rēte <i>f.</i> net	riuscire (204)	succeed
retta <i>f.</i> heed; dar ~ give heed	rivedēre	see again; a rivederla au revoir

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

rivoltare	turn back	sarta	f. dressmaker
rivoluzionario	revolutionary	sarto	m. tailor
røba (collective)	f. things	sävio	wise
rocchetto	m. spool	la Savoia	Savoy
Røma	Rome	šbadigliare	yawn
romanzo	m. novel	šbagliare	make a mistake
rømpere	break	šbarazzare	rid
røsa	f. rose	šbarcare	land
røsso	red	šbarco	m. disembarkation
røta	f. wheel	šbättere	rout
rotare (110, d)	turn	scaffale	m. shelf
rovèscio	m. reverse side; a ~ upside down; piøvere a ~ rain in torrents	scala	f. stair; ~ a chiøciola winding stair; ~ a piuøli ladder
rozzo	rough	scalino	m. step of stair
rumoroso	noisy	scarafaggio	m. beetle
		scärico	run down
säbato	m. Saturday	scarpa	f. shoe
sacco	m. bag	scatola	f. box
sacrifizio	m. sacrifice	scègliere (211)	choose
sacro	sacred	scellerato	criminal
sala	f. hall; ~ da pranzo dining-room	scèndere	descend
salire	go up	schianto	m. crash
salita	f. rise, slope	schioppo	m. gun
saløne	m. parlor	sciønza	f. science
saløtto	m. sitting-room	scintilla	f. spark
saltare in aria	be blown up	sciølto	loose
salutare	salute	sciøpero	m. strike
salute	f. health, safety, salvation	sciupare	spoil
saluto	m. greeting	scoglio	m. reef
salvare	save	scolare	m. pupil
salvezza	f. safety	scolastico	scholastic
salvo	safe; in ~ in safety	scollato	low-necked
sangue	m. blood	scommessa	f. wager
santo	m. saint; adj. holy	scompartimento	m. compartment
santo, san, Saint		scopo	m. purpose
sapere (132)	learn, know, know how; ~ di smack of	scoppiare	burst
sapiente	wise	scoprire	discover
saracino	Saracen	scørso	last, past
		scozzese	Scotch; checked, plaid
		scricchiolare	creak

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

scrittore <i>m.</i> writer	servire serve; ~ di serve as; ser-
scrivere write	virsi di make use of
scudo <i>m.</i> shield	servizio, servizino, <i>m.</i> service
scuola <i>f.</i> school	sessanta sixty
scuotere (110, <i>d</i> , 1) shake	sesto sixth
scuro dark	seta <i>f.</i> silk
scusa <i>f.</i> excuse	sète <i>f.</i> thirst; aver ~ be thirsty
sé if	settanta seventy
sè <i>3 sg. and pl. disj. refl.</i>	sette seven
sebbene <i>conj. w. subj.</i> although	settembre <i>m.</i> September
sécolo <i>m.</i> century	settimana <i>f.</i> week
secondo second; <i>prep.</i> according to	séttimo seventh
sedere sit	sfacciato bold
sé dici sixteen	sgonfio empty, flat, deflated
ségiola <i>f.</i> chair	sgridare scold
segno <i>m.</i> sign	si <i>3 sg. and pl. refl. pron.</i>
segreto <i>m.</i> secret	sì yes; so
seguire follow	sia <i>sg. subj. of èssere</i>
seguitare follow	siamo <i>1 pl. pres. ind. of èssere</i>
séi six	siccome as, since
seicento six hundred	la Sicilia Sicily
selva <i>f.</i> forest	sicuro sure
selvaggio wild, savage	signora <i>f.</i> lady, married woman, Mrs.
sembrare seem	signore <i>m.</i> gentleman, sir, Mr.
sémplice simple	signorina <i>f.</i> young lady, unmarried woman, Miss
sémpre always	silenzio <i>m.</i> silence
senatore <i>m.</i> senator	simbolo <i>m.</i> symbol
Senna <i>f.</i> Seine	simpatico nice, sympathetic, congenial
sentimento <i>m.</i> sentiment	sincerità <i>f.</i> sincerity
sentinella <i>f.</i> sentinel	sincero sincere
sentire feel	singulto <i>m.</i> sob
senza without	sinistro left
sepolcro <i>m.</i> cemetery	slittare slide
sera <i>f.</i> evening; buona ~ good afternoon, good evening	smarrirsi lose one's way
serbatqio <i>m.</i> reservoir; penna a ~ fountain pen	sociale social
serenamente serenely	socialista <i>m.</i> socialist
sério serious; sul ~ seriously	sodisfatto satisfied
serrare lock	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

sodo hard, solid	cappello ~ Derby hat	spārgere scatter
soffrire suffer		sparire disappear
soggetto <i>adj.</i> subject; <i>m.</i> subject		spasso <i>m.</i> walk; andare a ~ go to walk
soggezione <i>f.</i> subjection; timidity, embarrassment; aver ~ be timid, nervous		spaventare frighten
sōglia <i>f.</i> threshold		spāzzola <i>f.</i> brush
sognare dream		speciale special
sogno <i>m.</i> dream		spēcie <i>f.</i> kind, sort; far ~ a surprise
soldato <i>m.</i> soldier		speculator <i>m.</i> speculator
sole <i>m.</i> sun		spedale <i>m.</i> hospital
solēnne solemn		spedire send
sōlito: per il ~ usually; come al ~ as usual		speditamente fluently
solitūdine <i>f.</i> solitude		sperare hope
solo single, only (<i>adj.</i>)		spesa <i>f.</i> expense
soltanto only (<i>adv.</i>)		spesso often
somma <i>f.</i> sum		spettācolo <i>m.</i> spectacle
sommo highest, supreme		spezzare destroy, tear to pieces
sonare (110, <i>d</i>) ring, play		spia <i>f.</i> spy
sonnecchiare nap		spicciarsi hasten
sonno <i>m.</i> sleep; aver ~ be sleepy		spiegare unfold
soprābito <i>m.</i> overcoat		spirito <i>m.</i> spirit
soprattutto above all		spōrgersi lean out
sopravvivere survive		sportello <i>m.</i> ticket window, car window
sorbire sip		sta' <i>z sg. imper. of stare</i>
sorella <i>f.</i> sister		stagione <i>f.</i> season; mezza ~ between seasons
sorellina <i>f.</i> little sister		stamane this morning
sorpresa <i>f.</i> surprise		stampa <i>f.</i> press
sōrte <i>f.</i> kind; lot		stancarsi become tired
sortire go out		stanco tired
sostegno <i>m.</i> support		stanotte to-night; last night
sottana <i>f.</i> petticoat, skirt		stanza <i>f.</i> room
sotterrāneo underground		stare (166) be, stay; ~ di casa re-side
sotto under		starnutire sneeze
la Spagna Spain		starò <i>I sg. fut. ind. of stare</i>
spagnuolo Spanish		stasera this evening; this afternoon
spalla <i>f.</i> shoulder		stato <i>m.</i> state
sparare fire		

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

statuto *m.* constitution
stazione *f.* station
Stefano Stephen
sterzare turn (a vehicle)
stesso same, self; io ~ I myself
stimare consider
stivale *m.* boot
stoffa *f.* goods
storia *f.* history, story
strada *f.* road; ~sotterranea underground railway
strage *f.* butchery
straniero *m.* foreigner, alien
straordinario extraordinary
strapazzo *m.* abuse
strépito *m.* noise
stretto narrow; *p.p. of stringere*
stringa *f.* shoe-lace
stringere squeeze, press
strumento *m.* instrument
studiare study
stúdio *m.* study
studioso studious
stupefatto amazed
su, sur (39), on; above
sùbito immediately
sublime sublime
succédere *a* succeed (*tr.*)
succhiare suck
sugli, sui, sul, sullo, sulla, 75
suo his, her
suçero *m.* father-in-law
suçolo *m.* soil
superiore upper, superior
superiorità *f.* superiority
supplizio *m.* execution, torture
suprèmo supreme
svigliare waken
svventura *f.* misfortune
svizzero Swiss

svogliato unenthusiastic, unwilling
svoltare swerve

tacco *m.* heel of shoe
tacere (185; i *pl. ind. pres. taciamo*)
 be silent
tagliare cut
tale such; un ~ such a
Tamigi Thames
tanto, -i, so much, so many
tardi late; far ~ be late
tasca *f.* pocket
tassa *f.* tax
távola *f.* table
tazza *f.* cup
tè *m.* tea
teatro *m.* theater
tedesco German
tela *f.* linen
telefonare telephone
téma *m.* theme
téma *f.* fear
temere fear
tempo *m.* time, weather; a ~ on time; per ~ early; col ~ in time, in the course of time; fa bel ~ it is fine weather
tenere hold
terminare terminate
termosifone *m.* hot-water furnace
térra *f.* earth
terrazza *f.* balcony
terribile terrible
territorio *m.* territory
terzo third
tésa *f.* hat-brim
tésta *f.* head
Tévere *m.* Tiber
ti, té, thee
tiéne *3 sg. ind. pres. of tenere*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

tingere tinge; tingersi be colored	trēno <i>m.</i> train
tipico typical	trēnta thirty
tirannia <i>f.</i> tyranny	tricolore tri-colored
tiranno <i>m.</i> tyrant	triōnfo <i>m.</i> triumph
tirare pull; \sim vento blow; \sim via continue	triplice triple
toccare touch; \sim a concern, be the turn of	triplō triple
tocco <i>m.</i> stroke of bell; al \sim at one P.M.	tristezza <i>f.</i> sadness
Tommaso Thomas	troppo too, too much
tonare (110, <i>d</i>) thunder	trovare find
tono <i>m.</i> tone, tint	truppe <i>f. pl.</i> troops
tornaconto <i>m.</i> advantage	tu thou
tornare return; \sim conto (<i>a</i>) come out right, be of advantage (to)	tuō thy
torre <i>f.</i> tower	tuōno <i>m.</i> thunder
torrente <i>m.</i> torrent	Turco Turk
torto <i>m.</i> wrong; aver \sim be wrong	tutto all
la Toscana Tuscany	
tossire cough	
tovaglia <i>f.</i> tablecloth	ubbidire a obey
tra between, among	ubriaco drunk
tradimento <i>m.</i> betrayal, treachery	uccello <i>m.</i> bird
tradire betray	udire (192) hear
traditore, -tora or -trice, traitor, traitress	ufficiale <i>m.</i> officer
tranne except; \sim che <i>conj. w. subj.</i> except that	uguale equal, exactly like
trattare treat; trattarsi di be a question of	ultimo last
tratto <i>m.</i> trait; a un \sim suddenly, all at once	umano human
traversare cross	un <i>a, one</i>
travestire disguise	undēcimo eleventh
trē three	ündici eleven
tredicēsimo thirteenth	único only, unique
trēdici thirteen	unità <i>f.</i> union
tremare tremble	unito united
tremēndo tremendous	università <i>f.</i> university
	uno (59, <i>b</i>), un , una , <i>a, one</i>
	uōmo <i>m.</i> (<i>pl.</i> uōmini) man
	uōpo <i>m.</i> need; $\dot{\epsilon}$ d' \sim , fa d' \sim , it is necessary
	uōvo <i>m.</i> (<i>pl.</i> uōva) egg
	urlo <i>m.</i> howl
	urtare hurl
	üscio <i>m.</i> exit, doorway
	uscire (204) go out

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

uscita <i>f.</i> exit	vettura <i>f.</i> carriage
uva <i>f.</i> grape	vi, vę, adv. = ci; <i>pron.</i> you (<i>dat.</i> and <i>acc.</i>)
va goes	via <i>adv.</i> off, away; ę via <i>dicendo et cetera</i>
vacanza <i>f.</i> vacation	via <i>f.</i> street
vacca <i>f.</i> cow	viaggiare travel
valere (220) be worth; <i>valersi di</i> avail oneself of	viaggiatore <i>m.</i> traveler
valigia <i>f.</i> valise	viaggio <i>m.</i> journey; buq̄n ~ a pleasant journey to you
valle <i>f.</i> valley	vicenda <i>f.</i> turn; a ~ in turn
vampiro <i>m.</i> vampire	vicino <i>m.</i> neighbor; ~ a <i>prep.</i> near
vanno <i>3 pl. ind. pres. of andare</i>	vieni <i>2 sg. pres. ind. of venire</i>
vasto vast	vile cowardly
vęcchio old	villa <i>f.</i> country-place
vęde sees	vincere conquer, win
vedere see; non ~ l' ora di not be able to wait to, long to	vinto <i>p.p. of vincere</i>
vedetta <i>f.</i> scout	virtù <i>f.</i> virtue, power
vela <i>f.</i> sail; far ~ set sail	višita <i>f.</i> visit; fare una ~ a call upon
vendemmia <i>f.</i> vintage	višitare visit
vęndere sell	višo <i>m.</i> face
vęndita <i>f.</i> sale	vista <i>f.</i> view; far ~ di make a pre-tense of
venerdì <i>m.</i> Friday	visto <i>p.p. of vedere</i>
Venezia Venice	vita <i>f.</i> life
veneziano Venetian	vite <i>f.</i> grape-vine
venire (138) come	vittima <i>f.</i> victim
ventaglio <i>m.</i> fan	vittoria <i>f.</i> victory
venti twenty	Vittorio Emanuele Victor Emmanuel
vento <i>m.</i> wind; tirar ~ blow	vittorioso victorious
veramente truly	vivacità <i>f.</i> vivacity
verde green	vivere live, be alive
vergogna <i>f.</i> shame	vivo alive
vergognarsi be ashamed	vogliamo <i>1 pl. pres. ind. of volere</i>
verità <i>f.</i> truth	voglio <i>1 sg. pres. ind. of volere</i>
vero true	voi you
verso towards	volante <i>m.</i> steering-wheel
vestiario <i>m.</i> wardrobe; rōba da ~ clothing	volentieri gladly, willingly
vestirsi dress oneself	
vestito, vestitino, <i>m.</i> dress	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

volere (133) wish, will; \sim bene a
love
volontà *f.* will
volta *f.* time, a time; una \sim once
voltarsi turn (*intr.*)
voluto desired, willed; *p.p. of volere*

Vossignorìa *f.* Your Lordship
vostro your
vuole *3 sg. pres. ind. of volere*
zia *f.* aunt
zio *m.* uncle
zitto hush

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

a, an	un, uno, una	agree	accordarsi
able	capace; be ~ potere	ahead	avanti; straight ~ diritto
aboard	a bordo; all ~ pronti	aim	puntare
about <i>prep.</i>	intorno a, dintorno a;	air	aria <i>f.</i>
<i>adv.</i> circa; be ~ to star per		alive	vivo
absurd	assurdo	all	tutto; above ~ soprattutto
abuse	strapazzo <i>m.</i>	already	già
accept	accettare	also	anche
accompany	accompagnare	alter	alterare
according to	secondo	always	sempre
account	bilancio <i>m.</i>	amazed	stupefatto
accustom	avvezzare, abituare	ambition	ambizione <i>f.</i>
ache	dolere	America	l' America <i>f.</i>
acquaintance	conoscenza <i>f.</i>	American	americano
acquainted with: be ~ conosciere		among	tra, fra
acquire	acquistare	amuse	divertire; ~ oneself divertirsi
act	agire	ancient	antico, -chi
Adriatic <i>adj.</i>	adriatico	and	e, ed
advantage	vantaggio, tornaconto <i>m.</i> ;	anger	cöllera <i>f.</i>
	be of ~ to tornar conto a	annoy	dar noia a
advice	consiglio <i>m.</i>	annoyance	noia <i>f.</i>
adviser	consigliere <i>m.</i>	anthology	antologìa <i>f.</i>
affair	affare <i>m.</i>	any <i>adj.</i>	alcuno; <i>pron.</i> ne
affectionate	affezionato	anything	qualunque cosa, ogni cosa
afraid ; be ~ (of)	aver paura (di)	apartment	appartamento <i>m.</i>
after <i>prep.</i>	dopo; <i>conj.</i> dopo che	apiece	per uno
afternoon	dopopranzo <i>m.</i> ; <i>adj.</i> po-	appear	comparire
	meridiano; good ~ buona sera	apple	pomo <i>m.</i> ; mela <i>f.</i>
afterward	dopo	approach	avvicinarsi a
again	di nuovo	April	aprile <i>m.</i>
against	contro, contra	Aristotle	Aristòtile
age	età <i>f.</i> ; at the ~ of in età di	arm	braccio <i>m.</i>
ago	fa, or sono	arms	armi <i>f. pl.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

army esercito <i>m.</i>	battle battaglia <i>f.</i>
arrangement ordinamento <i>m.</i>	be essere
arrive arrivare, giungere, parvenire	beach spiaggia <i>f.</i>
art arte <i>f.</i>	bearings see compass
artist artista <i>c.</i>	beat battere
as siccome; ~ for in quanto a	beautiful bello
ashamed: be ~ vergognarsi	beauty bellezza <i>f.</i>
ask (for) domandare (di)	because perchè
assemble riunirsi	become diventare, divenire
assume presùmere	bed letto <i>m.</i>
at a, ad	bed-room camera (<i>f.</i>) da letto
attention: pay ~ stare attento	bee ape <i>f.</i>
attentive attento	beetle scarafaggio <i>m.</i>
attract attrarre	before (time) adv. prima; prep.
August agosto <i>m.</i>	prima di; conj. prima che -
Augustine Agostino	before (place) prep. innanzi a, di-
aunt zia <i>f.</i>	nanzi a, davanti a; adv. avanti,
Austrian austriaco	innanzi
author autore, scrittore <i>m.</i>	begin cominciare, principiare
automobile automobile <i>c.</i>	beginning principio <i>m.</i>
autumn autunno <i>m.</i>	behind adv. indietro, dietro; prep.
avail oneself (of) valersi (di)	dietro a
avoid evitare	Belgian belga
await attendere, aspettare	Belgium il Belgio
away via	believe credere
 	belong appartenere
baby bimbo, -a	below prep. sotto; adv. abbasso
back dosso <i>m.</i> ; at the ~ of in fondo	benefit benefizio <i>m.</i>
a; on the ~ of addosso a	best adj. il migliore; adv. il meglio;
bad cattivo; too ~! peccato!	do one's ~ fare di tutto, fare il
badly male	possibile
bag sacco <i>m.</i> , borsa <i>f.</i>	betray tradire
baggage bagaglio <i>m.</i> ; ~ room ba-	better adj. migliore; adv. meglio
gagliaio, depósito <i>m.</i>	between fra
baker fornaio <i>m.</i>	beyond prep. al di là di, di là da, oltre
balcony terrazza <i>f.</i>	big grosso
ball palla <i>f.</i>	bill conto <i>m.</i>
band banda <i>f.</i>	bird uccello <i>m.</i>
basket paniere <i>m.</i>	birthday giorno natale, complean-
bath bagno <i>m.</i>	no <i>m.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

black	nero	burn	ārdere, bruciare
blame	colpa <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> biasmare, dare addosso a	but	ma
blind	ciēco	butchery	strage <i>f.</i>
blood	sangue <i>m.</i>	butter	burro <i>m.</i>
bloom	fiorire; in ~ fiorito	buy	comprare
blotter	cartasuga, cartasugante <i>f.</i>	by	da; (beside) accanto a
blow	tirar vēnto; ~ up saltare in aria		
blue	azzurro, celeste		
board , boarding-house , boarding-school , pensione <i>f.</i>		café	caffè <i>m.</i>
boat	barca <i>f.</i>	cake	pasta <i>f.</i>
boil	bollire	call	chiamare; ~ on far vīsita a; be called chiamarsi
bold	ardito	can , be able , potere	
book	libro <i>m.</i>	cane	bastone <i>m.</i>
bookseller	libraio <i>m.</i>	cannon	cannone <i>m.</i>
boot	stivale <i>m.</i> ; ~black lustrascarpe <i>m.</i>	caress	carezza <i>f.</i>
born	nato; be ~ nāscere	carnation	garōfano <i>m.</i>
both	tutt'e due, entrambi	carriage	carrozza, vettura <i>f.</i> , legno <i>m.</i>
bottom	fondo <i>m.</i> ; at the ~ of in fondo a	carry	portare
boundary	confine <i>m.</i>	case	caso <i>m.</i> ; in any ~ in ogni caso
bouquet	mazzolino <i>m.</i>	cash :	in ~ a contanti
Bourbon	Borbōne <i>m.</i>	castle	castello <i>m.</i>
box	scātola <i>f.</i>	cathedral	duōmo <i>m.</i> , cattedrale <i>f.</i>
boy	ragazzo <i>m.</i>	cease	cessare [cimitēro <i>m.</i>
brain	cervēllo <i>m.</i>	cemetery	sepolcreto, campo santo,
breach	brēccia <i>f.</i>	central	centrale
bread	pane <i>m.</i>	century	sēcolo <i>m.</i>
break	rōmpere	ceremony :	stand on ~ far complimenti
breast	pētto <i>m.</i>	chair	sēggiola <i>f.</i>
bridge	pōnte <i>m.</i>	change	mutare, cambiare; ~ one's
brim (hat-) tēsa <i>f.</i>		mind	mutar di pensiero; <i>n.</i> (<i>money</i>) rēsto <i>m.</i>
bring	portare	chapter	capitolo <i>m.</i>
Britannic	britānnico	charcoal-burner	carbonaro <i>m.</i>
brother	fratēllo <i>m.</i>	Charles	Carlo
brother-in-law	cognato <i>m.</i>	chase	cacciare
brush	spāzzola <i>f.</i>	chat	chiacchierare
bunch	mazzolino <i>m.</i>	cheek	guāncia <i>f.</i>
		child	fanciullo, -a, bambino, -a
		chocolate	cioccolata <i>f.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

choose scēgliere	congenial simpātico
Christian cristiano	connecting comunicante
Christmas Natale <i>m.</i> ; Merry ~	conqueror conquistatore <i>m.</i>
Buōn Natale	consciousness cosciēza <i>f.</i>
Christopher Cristōforo	consist (of) consīstere (in)
church chiesa <i>f.</i>	constitution statuto <i>m.</i>
citizen cittadino <i>m.</i>	consul cōnsole <i>m.</i>
city città <i>f.</i>	continue continuare
civilization civiltà <i>f.</i>	contrary contrario; on the ~ in- vece
civilized civile	convenient cōmodo
clap (one's hands) bātttere (le mani)	conversation conversazione <i>f.</i>
Clara Chiara	cook cuoco <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> cuōcere, fare la cucina
class classe <i>f.</i>	cookery cucina <i>f.</i>
classic clāssico	copper rame <i>m.</i>
close chiūdere	corner āngolo <i>m.</i> ; be at the ~ of far āngolo con
coast cōsta <i>f.</i>	corporal caporale <i>m.</i>
coffee caffè <i>m.</i>	correct corrīgere
coin monēta <i>f.</i>	correspond corrispōndere
cold frēddo; be ~ aver frēddo; it is ~ fa frēddo; catch ~ prēndere un raffreddore	cost costare
collar collare <i>m.</i> ; coat ~ bāvero <i>m.</i>	cotton cotone <i>m.</i>
college (of University) facoltà <i>f.</i>	cough tossire
color colore <i>m.</i> ; be colored tingersi	count conte <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> contare
Columbus Colōmbo	countess contessa <i>f.</i>
come venire	country (rural) campagna <i>f.</i> ; (polit.) paese <i>m.</i> ; (<i>fatherland</i>) pātria <i>f.</i>
comfortable cōmodo; make oneself ~ accommodarsi	couple coppia <i>f.</i>
command comandare, ordinare	courage coraggio <i>m.</i>
commence cominciare	course corsa <i>f.</i> ; of ~ naturalmente
communicate comunicare	cousin cugino, -a
companion compagno, -a	cover coprire
compartment scompartimento <i>m.</i>	cow vacca <i>f.</i>
compass büssola <i>f.</i>	cowardly vile
complain lagnarsi	crane gru <i>c.</i>
compliment complimento <i>m.</i>	criminal scellerato
condition condizione <i>f.</i> ; on ~ that a patto chē (<i>w. subj.</i>)	crusade crociata <i>f.</i>
conduct condurre	cry grido <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> gridare
conductor guārdia <i>f.</i>	cup tazza <i>f.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

cut tagliare	direct dirigere
Cyrus Ciro	disagreeable sgradevole
daily quotidiano	disappear sparire
dairy cascina f.	discover scoprire
damage danno m.; <i>v.</i> dannare	disembarkation sbarco m.
danger pericolo m.	disguise travestire
dangerous pericoloso	dish piatto m.
dark buio m.; <i>adj.</i> scuro	displease dispiacere a
daughter figlia f.	distant lontano, discosto
daughter-in-law nuora f.	disturb disturbare
dawn alba f.	divide dividere
day giorno m.; period of a ~ giorno	do fare ; aux. 62, b, 1; how do you ~? come sta?
nata f.; ~ by ~ giorno a giorno;	
by the ~ a giornata; by ~ di	
giorno	
daybreak: at ~ sul far del giorno	
dead morto	dog cane m.
dear caro	domestic domestico
death morte f.	done fatto
deceit inganno m.	door porta f.
December dicembre m.	double doppio
declare dichiarare	doubt dubbio m.; <i>v.</i> dubitare
defeat sconfitta f.	down giù; ~ there laggìù, costaggiù;
defend difendere	~ town al centro; ~ stairs abbasso
defense difesa f.	dozen dozzina f.
degenerate degenerare	dramatic drammatico
demand richiedere	dream sogno m.; <i>v.</i> sognare
depart partire	dress vestito m.; ~ oneself vestirsi
depress deprimere	dressmaker sarta f.
descend scendere	drive condurre; ~ out cacciare
desire desidero m.; <i>v.</i> desiderare	drunk ubriaco
desired voluto	duchy ducato m.; grand ~ gran-
dessert dolce m.	ducato m.
dialogue dialogo m.	duke duca m.
die morire	dumpling gnocco m.
difficult difficile	duty dovere m.
dine desinare, pranzare	dwell abitare, dimorare
dining-room sala f. da pranzo.	
dint: by ~ of a forza di	
	each ciascuno
	ear orecchio m.
	early per tempo
	earth terra f.
	east levante m.

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

Easter	Pasqua <i>f.</i>	ever mai
eastern	orientale	every ogni
easy	facile	everybody ognuno, tutti
echo	eco <i>c.</i>	everything tutto
effect	effettuare	everywhere dappertutto
egg	uovo <i>m.</i>	except tranne
eight	otto	excursion gita <i>f.</i>
eighteen	diciotto	excuse scusare
eighteenth	décimo ottavo	execution supplizio <i>m.</i>
eighth	ottavo	executioner boia <i>m.</i>
eighty	ottanta	exercise-book quaderno <i>m.</i>
elbow	gomito <i>m.</i>	exile esilio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> esiliare
elder	maggiore	exit uscita <i>f.</i>
elect	eligiere	expense spesa <i>f.</i>
elegant	elegante	expose esporre
eleven	undici	express esprimere
eleventh	undicesimo	
elm	olmo <i>m.</i>	face faccia <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> far fronte a; on
embrace	abbracciare	one's ~ bocconi
emperor	imperatore <i>m.</i>	fact : in ~ infatti
empire	impéro <i>m.</i>	fail fallire
end	fine <i>f.</i> ; at the ~ of in fondo a	fair bello; it is ~ weather fa bel tempo
endow	dotare	
enemy	nemico <i>m.</i>	faith fede <i>f.</i>
England	l'Inghilterra <i>f.</i>	falcon falco <i>m.</i>
English	inglese	fall cadere; ~ upon avventarsi su
enough	assai, bastante; be ~ bastare	family famiglia <i>f.</i>
enter	entrare	famous famoso, rinomato
entrance	entrata <i>f.</i>	fan ventaglio <i>m.</i>
enumerate	annoverare	fat grasso
envelope	busta <i>f.</i>	father padre <i>m.</i>
equal	uguale	father-in-law suocero <i>m.</i>
era	era <i>f.</i>	fatigue fatica <i>f.</i>
establish	stabilire, istituire	fault colpa <i>f.</i>
et cetera	è così in seguito, è via	favor favore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> favorire
	dicendo	fear paura <i>f.</i> , timore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> aver paura, temere
Etruscan	etrusco	February febbraio <i>m.</i>
even	adj. pari; adv. pure; not ~ neppure	feel sentire
		felt feltro <i>m.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

festival	festa <i>f.</i>	four	quattro ; on all ~s carponi
few	pochi, -e	fourteen	quattordici
fidelity	fedeltà <i>f.</i>	fourteenth	décimoquarto
fifteen	quindici	fourth	quarto
fifteenth	quindicésmo	franc	lira <i>f.</i>
fifth	quinto	France	la Fráncia
fifty	cinquanta	Francis	Francesco
fig	fico <i>m.</i>	free	libero
fight	combattere	freeze	gelare
figure	figurare	French	francese
finally	finalmente	Frenchman	Francesé <i>m.</i>
find	trovare	friar	frate <i>m.</i>
fine	bello ; fino	Friday	venerdì <i>m.</i>
finger	dito <i>m.</i>	friend	amico, -a
finish	finire, terminare	from	da ; (<i>time</i>) fin da
fire	fuoco <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sparare; set on ~	front	fronte <i>f.</i> ; in ~ of davanti a
	dar fuoco a	frugal	frugale
first	primo	fruit	frutto <i>m.</i>
fitting	prova <i>f.</i>	fulfill	avverare
five	cinque	full	pieno
flag	bandiera <i>f.</i>		
flee	fuggire .	garden	giardino <i>m.</i>
Florence	Firénze	gather	cogliere
Florentine	fiorentino	general	adj. generale ; <i>n.</i> generale <i>m.</i>
flower	fiore <i>m.</i>	generally	generalmente
fluently	speditamente	genius	genio <i>m.</i>
fog	nèbbia <i>f.</i>	gentle	mite
folk	gente <i>f.</i>	gentleman	signore <i>m.</i>
follow	seguire, seguitare	George	Giorgio
foot	piède <i>m.</i> ; on ~ a piedi	German	tedesco
footstool	panchetto <i>m.</i>	Germany	l'Alemagna <i>f.</i>
for	per ; (<i>time</i>) da ; as ~ in quanto a	get	ottenere ; ~ back riavere ; ~ up levarsi
	force		
forced	forzato	girl	ragazza <i>f.</i> ; little ~ bambina <i>f.</i>
foreign	stranière <i>m.</i>	give	dare ; ~ up rinunziare a
foreigner	forestière, stranière <i>m.</i>	glass	bicchiere <i>m.</i> ; (<i>material</i>) vetro <i>m.</i>
forest	forêsta <i>f.</i>	glimpse	intravvedere
forget	dimenticare	glory	glòria <i>f.</i>
fork	forchetta <i>f.</i>	glove	guanto <i>m.</i>
forty	quaranta		

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

glover guantaio <i>m.</i>	hand mano <i>f.</i> ; within reach of one's ~ a portata di mano; by ~ a mano; at second ~ di seconda mano
go andare; ~ out andar fuori; ~ up salire; ~ in entrare; ~ away partire	handkerchief fazzoletto <i>m.</i>
god dio <i>m.</i>	handsome bello
God Iddio <i>m.</i>	handy: come ~ far cōmodo
gold qro <i>m.</i>	hang impiccare
gondola gōndola <i>f.</i>	happen accadere, succēdere
gone partito	happy felice; ~ New Year buon fine e principio d'anno
good buono; ~ morning buon giorno	hard duro, difficile
good-by (<i>polite</i>) a rivederla, (<i>sam.</i>) addio	hardly appena
goodness bontà <i>f.</i>	hasten spicciarsi
goods stoffa <i>f.</i> ; dry ~ merceria <i>f.</i>	hat cappello <i>m.</i>
govern governare	have avere; ~ to avere da
government governo <i>m.</i>	hawk falco <i>m.</i>
grammar grammatica <i>f.</i>	he egli, esso
grandfather nonno <i>m.</i>	head testa <i>f.</i> , capo <i>m.</i> ; with bowed ~ a capo chino
grandmother nonna <i>f.</i>	health salute <i>f.</i>
grape uva <i>f.</i>	hear sentire, udire
grape-vine vite <i>f.</i>	heart cuore <i>m.</i> ; by ~ a mente; take it to ~ prēndersela
gray grigio	heart-broken afflitto
great grande	heat calore <i>m.</i>
Greek greco	heavy pesante
green verde	heed dar rētta a
greet salutare	heel (<i>of shoe</i>) tacco <i>m.</i> ; (<i>of foot</i>) calzago <i>m.</i>
greeting saluto <i>m.</i>	help aiuto <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> aiutare; not be able to ~ non poter a meno di
ground suolo <i>m.</i>	hen gallina <i>f.</i>
group gruppo <i>m.</i>	henceforth di qui innanzi, oramai
grow crēscere	Henry Enrico
guard guārdia <i>f.</i>	her pron. la, le; poss. il suo etc.
guess indovinare; ~ right darci dentro	here qui, qua; ~ is, ~ are, ecco, c' è ci sono
guide guida <i>f.</i>	heritage retaggio <i>m.</i>
gun schioppo <i>m.</i>	hero eroe <i>m.</i>
Hague: The ~ l'Aia	
hair capello <i>m.</i>	
half adj. mezzo; <i>n.</i> metà <i>f.</i>	
hall sala <i>f.</i>	

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

heroic erōico	if sè
herself lei stessa; (<i>refl.</i>) si	ignorant ignorante
hesitate esitare	ill ammalato; fall ~ ammalare
high alto	imagine immaginare, figurarsi
highness altezza <i>f.</i>	immediately subito
him gli, lui, lo	impervious impervio
himself lui stesso; (<i>refl.</i>) si	important: be ~ importare
his il suo, la sua, <i>etc.</i>	impose imporre
history storia <i>f.</i>	imprudent imprudente
hold tenere	in in; (<i>time</i>) fra
holiday festa <i>f.</i>	increase accrescere
home: at ~ da noi; in casa	indeed davvero
homeward a casa	independence indipendenza <i>f.</i>
honor onorare	inexhaustible inesauribile
hook gancio <i>m.</i>	inferior inferiore
hope speranza <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sperare	ingrate ingrato <i>m.</i>
horse cavallo <i>m.</i>	ink inchiostro <i>m.</i>
horseback: ride ~ andar a cavallo	inside (of) dentro (a)
hospital spedale <i>m.</i>	instead (of) invece (di)
hot caldo; it is ~ fa caldo	instrument strumento <i>m.</i>
hotel albergo <i>m.</i>	intelligent intelligente
hour ora <i>f.</i>	into in
house casa <i>f.</i> ; at the ~ of da	introduce presentare
how come; ~ do you do? come sta?	iron ferro <i>m.</i>
~ much, ~ many, quanto, -i	island isola <i>f.</i>
however conj. però, pure; <i>adv.</i> per	it esso, lo
quanto	Italian italiano
human umano	Italy l' Italia <i>f.</i>
hundred cento	
hunger fame <i>f.</i>	jacket giacchetta <i>f.</i>
hungry: be ~ aver fame	January gennaio <i>m.</i>
hunt cacciare	Japan il Giappone
hurl lanciare	jewel gioiello <i>m.</i>
hurry fretta <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> spicciarsi; be in	John Giovanni
a ~ aver fretta, aver fúria	Joseph Giusseppe
husband marito <i>m.</i>	journey viaggio <i>m.</i>
I io	joy gioia <i>f.</i>
ice ghiaccio <i>m.</i>	joyful allegro
ice-cream gelato <i>m.</i>	Julius Cæsar Giulio Césare
	July luglio <i>m.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

June giugno <i>m.</i>	least mīmino ; at ~ almēno
just giusto ; ~ now or ora	leather cuoio <i>m.</i>
kilogram chilogramma <i>m.</i>	leave <i>tr.</i> lasciare ; <i>intr.</i> partire ; <i>n.</i>
kind gēnere <i>m.</i> , spēcie, sorte <i>f.</i> ; <i>adj.</i>	licenza <i>f.</i>
buono, cortese	left sinistro
king rē <i>m.</i>	Leghorn Livorno
kingdom rēgno <i>m.</i>	lemon limone <i>m.</i>
kiss bācio <i>m.</i>	length lunghēzza <i>f.</i>
kitchen cucina <i>f.</i>	less meno
knee ginocchio <i>m.</i> ; on one's ~s gi-	lessen diminuire
nocchioni	lesson lezione <i>f.</i>
knife coltello <i>m.</i>	let (<i>allow</i>) lasciare ; cf. § 92, a
know sapere, conōscere	letter lēttera <i>f.</i>
label cartellino <i>m.</i>	liberty libertà <i>f.</i>
laborious laborioso	lie giacere ; mentire
lacking : be ~ mancare	life vita <i>f.</i>
ladder scala a piuoli	light luce <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> accēndere ; <i>adj.</i>
lady signora <i>f.</i> ; young ~ signorina <i>f.</i>	chiaro, leggiéro
lake lago <i>m.</i>	lighten balenare, lampeggiare
lamp lume <i>m.</i>	like sīmile ; should ~ vorrei etc.
land sbarcare	lily-of-the-valley mughetto <i>m.</i>
language lingua <i>f.</i>	linen lino <i>m.</i> ; tēla <i>f.</i>
large grande	lining fōdera <i>f.</i>
lark allōdola <i>f.</i>	lip labbro <i>m.</i>
last fōrma <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> durare ; <i>adj.</i> ùltimo, (<i>past</i>) scorso ; at ~ alla fine	lira <i>f.</i> lira (twenty cents)
late tardi ; the ~ il fu; be ~ far tardi	listen (<i>to</i>) ascoltare
laugh riso <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> ridere	literature letteratura <i>f.</i>
law legge <i>f.</i>	little pōco ; ~ by ~ pōco a pōco ;
lawsuit lite <i>f.</i>	<i>adj.</i> piccolo
lawyer avvocato <i>m.</i>	live vīvere ; (<i>dwell</i>) abitare, dimorare, star di casa
lay posare ; ~ the cloth mēttere la tovaglia	load cārica <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> caricare
layman läico <i>m.</i>	loaded cārico
leaf foglia <i>f.</i>	lock serratura <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> serrare
lean out spōrgersi	London Londra
learn imparare ; ~ of sapere	long lungo ; ~ to non veder l' ora di ; as ~ as tantochè, finchè
learned dōtto	look, look at, guardare ; ~ for care
	lordship : your ~ Vossignoría <i>f.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

lose pērdere	merchant mercante <i>m.</i>
lot sorte <i>f.</i>	metal metallo <i>m.</i>
Louis Luigi	metropolis metrōpoli <i>f.</i>
love amore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> amare	middle mezzo <i>m.</i> ; in the ~ of in
low adj. basso; <i>v.</i> muggire	mezzo a
lower inferiore	midnight mezzanotte <i>f.</i>
luck : good ~ fortuna <i>f.</i>	might potrei etc.; or subj.
luckily meno male	mild mite
luggage bagāglia <i>m.</i>	military militare
luncheon colazione <i>f.</i> ; take ~ far	milk latte <i>m.</i>
colazione	milliner modista <i>f.</i>
 	mind mente <i>f.</i>
Madam Signora <i>f.</i>	mine miniéra <i>f.</i> ; il mio etc.
mail posta <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> impostare	minute minuto <i>m.</i>
mainspring molla <i>f.</i>	miser avaro <i>m.</i>
majesty maestà <i>f.</i>	misfortune sventura, disgrazia <i>f.</i>
majority maggior parte <i>f.</i>	miss sentire la mancanza di
make fare	Miss Signorina <i>f.</i>
mamma mamma, mammina <i>f.</i>	mistake sbaglio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sbagliare
man uomo <i>m.</i> ; honorable ~ galan-	modern moderno
tuomo <i>m.</i>	moment momento <i>m.</i> ; in a ~ a mo-
manner maniera <i>f.</i>	menti
many molti	monarch monarca <i>m.</i>
march marcia <i>f.</i>	monarchist monārchico <i>m.</i>
March marzo <i>m.</i>	Monday lunedì <i>m.</i>
married woman signora <i>f.</i>	money denaro <i>m.</i>
martyr mārtire <i>m.</i>	monk mōnaco <i>m.</i>
mask māschera <i>f.</i>	monster mostro <i>m.</i>
mass messa <i>f.</i>	month mese <i>m.</i>
mast ālbero <i>m.</i>	moon luna <i>f.</i>
match fiammifero <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> accompa-	more più
gnare	morning mattina <i>f.</i> ; good ~ buon giorno
matter importare	no; say good ~ dare il buon giorno
may, can , potere	most il più
May maggio <i>m.</i>	mother madre <i>f.</i>
me mi, me	mother-in-law suōcera <i>f.</i>
meadow prato <i>m.</i>	mount salire, montare
meat carne <i>f.</i>	mountain montagna <i>f.</i>
meet incontrare; conōscere	mourning lutto <i>m.</i> ; in ~ a lutto
memory memoria <i>f.</i>	move muōvere

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

movement moto <i>m.</i>	niece nipote <i>f.</i>
Mr. Signore <i>m.</i>	night notte <i>f.</i>
Mrs. Signora <i>f.</i>	nine nove
much molto; as ~ again altrettanto	nineteen diciannove
mud fango <i>m.</i>	nineteenth dēcimo nono
murmur mormorare	ninety novanta
mushroom fungo <i>m.</i>	ninth nono
my il mio, la mia, etc.	no no; ~ one nessuno; (<i>not any</i>)
myself io stesso; <i>refl.</i> mi	non (<i>preceding vb.</i>)
 	noise rumore, strēpito <i>m.</i>
name nome <i>m.</i>	none nessuno
nap sonnecchiare	noon mezzogiorno <i>m.</i>
Naples Nāpoli	nor nè
narrow stretto	north tramontana <i>f.</i> , norte <i>m.</i>
nation nazione <i>f.</i>	northern settentrionale
navy marina <i>f.</i>	not non
near vicino (a)	nothing ni�nte, nulla
necessary necess�rio; be ~ biso-	notice avviso <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> acc�rgersi (<i>di</i>)
gnare, occ�rrere	notwithstanding (<i>that</i>) non ob-
neck collo <i>m.</i>	stante (<i>che</i>) (<i>conj. w. subj.</i>)
necklace collana <i>f.</i>	novel romanzo <i>m.</i>
necktie cravatta, ciarpetta <i>f.</i>	November nov�mbre <i>m.</i>
need bisogno <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> aver bisogno di	now ora, adesso
neigh nitrire	nowadays al giorno di q�ggi, oggi�l
neighbor vicino <i>m.</i>	number n�mero <i>m.</i>
neither n�; ~ . . . nor n� . . . n�	
nephew nipote <i>m.</i>	oak quercia <i>f.</i>
nest nido <i>m.</i>	oar remo <i>m.</i>
never non . . . mai	observe osservare
nevertheless tuttavia	obstinate svogliato
new nuovo; New Year's capo d'an-	occur aver luogo
no; Happy New Year bu�n capo	occurrence evenienza <i>f.</i>
d'anno; to wish a happy new year	o'clock : at six ~ alle sei
augurare il bu�n anno	October ottobre <i>m.</i>
news notizie <i>f. pl.</i>	of di
newspaper giornale <i>m.</i>	off lungi, via
next (<i>near</i>) accanto a; (<i>coming</i>)	offend offendere; be offended av�r-
pr�ssimo, quest' altro; ~ door	sela a male
accanto	offer offrire
nice simp�tico	officer ufficiale <i>m.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

often	spesso	patriot	patriota <i>m.</i>
old	vecchio; grow ~ invecchiare	pattern	figurino <i>m.</i>
on su, sur		Paul	Paolo
once	una volta; at ~ subito	pay	~ for, pagare
one	un, uno, -a	peace	pace <i>f.</i>
only	adj. solo, unico; adv. soltanto; but, only (<i>w. acc.</i>), non . . . che	peach	pesca <i>f.</i>
open	adj. aperto; v. aprire	pear	pera <i>f.</i>
opportunity	occasione <i>f.</i>	peasant	contadino, -a
opposite	in faccia a, dirimpetto a	pen	penna <i>f.</i> ; fountain ~ penna a serbat <u>o</u> io
or o, od		pencil	lapis <i>m.</i>
orange	arancia <i>f.</i>	people	p <u>o</u> polo <i>m.</i> ; gente <i>f.</i>
orange-tree	arancio <i>m.</i>	perceive	accorgersi (di)
order	ordine <i>m.</i> ; v. ordinare; to ~ su misura	perhaps	fors <u>e</u>
other	altro	permit	permettere
ought	dovrei etc.	persecute	perseguitare
our	il nostro, la nostra, etc.	person	persona <i>f.</i>
ourselves	noi stessi; (<i>refl.</i>) ci	Petrarch	Petrarca
out	fuori; go ~ andar fuori	Philip	Filippo
outside (of)	all' infuori (di)	philosophical	filosofico
over	su, sopra	photograph	fotografia <i>f.</i>
overcoat	soprabito <i>m.</i>	physician	m <u>ed</u> ico <i>m.</i>
owe	dovere	pianist	pianista <i>c.</i>
own	adj. proprio; v. possedere	picture	quadro <i>m.</i>
package	pacco <i>m.</i>	piece	pezzo <i>m.</i> ; (<i>money</i>) moneta <i>f.</i> ; tear to ~s far a brani; by the ~ a c <u>o</u> ttimo
page	p <i>a</i> gina <i>f.</i>	Piedmont	il Piemonte
pain	dolore <i>m.</i> ; v. dolere	Piedmontese	piemontese
pair	paio (<i>pl.</i> paia) <i>m.</i>	pilgrim	pellegrino <i>m.</i>
palace	palazzo <i>m.</i>	pilgrimage :	go on ~ peregrinare
papa	babbo <i>m.</i>	pin	spillo <i>m.</i> ; v. appuntare
paper	carta <i>f.</i> ; news ~ giornale <i>m.</i>	pity	piet <u>a</u> <i>f.</i> ; what a ~ peccato!
parents	genitori <i>m. pl.</i>	place	luogo, posto <i>m.</i> ; (<i>at table</i>) posata <i>f.</i> ; v. porre
Paris	Parigi	plant	pianta <i>f.</i>
parish-priest	parroco <i>m.</i>	plate	piatto <i>m.</i>
parlor	salotto <i>m.</i>	play	giocare; (<i>an instrument</i>) sonare
part	parte <i>f.</i>	please	per piacere, per favore; v. piacere a
pass	passare		
patience	pazi <u>en</u> za <i>f.</i>		

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

pleasure	piacere <i>m.</i> ; do a ~ to far piacere a	princess	principessa <i>f.</i>
pleat	pięga <i>f.</i>	prison	prigione <i>f.</i> , cărcere <i>m.</i>
pocket	tasca <i>f.</i>	problem	problema <i>m.</i>
poet	poeta <i>m.</i>	professor	professore <i>m.</i>
point	punta <i>f.</i>	promise	promessa <i>f.</i>
polish	lustrare	property	proprietà <i>f.</i>
polite	educato	proprietor	padrone <i>m.</i>
political	politico	provided that	purchè (<i>w. subj.</i>)
politician	politico <i>m.</i>	prudent	prudente
politics	politica <i>f.</i>	punish	punire
poor	pōvero	pupil	scolare <i>m.</i>
port	pōrto <i>m.</i>	purchase	compra <i>f.</i>
porter	facchino <i>m.</i>	purpose	scopo <i>m.</i> ; on ~ a pōsta
portrait	ritratto <i>m.</i>	purr	far le fusa
possess	possedere; ~ oneself of agguntare	purse	borsa <i>f.</i>
post	pōsta <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> impostare	put, put on,	mēttere
postage-stamp	francobollo <i>m.</i>		
postal	postale	queen	regina <i>f.</i>
post-card	cartolina (<i>f.</i>) postale	question	domanda <i>f.</i> ; be a ~ of tratt-
postman	postino <i>m.</i>		tarsi di
poverty	povertà <i>f.</i>	quiet	quieto, tranquillo
powder	pōlvore <i>f.</i>		
power	potere <i>m.</i>	rain	pioggia <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> piōvere
practice	pratica <i>f.</i>	raincoat	impermeabile <i>m.</i>
praise	lodare	raise	levare, alzare, innalzare
pray	<i>v.</i> pregare; <i>adv.</i> pure	rather	piuttosto
precious	prezioso	read	leggere
prefer	preferire	ready	pronto; ~-made bell' e fatto
prepare	preparare	really	veramente
president	presidente <i>m.</i>	reason	ragione <i>f.</i>
press	stampa <i>f.</i>	rebuild	rifare
pretense	finzione <i>f.</i> ; make ~ of far vista di	receipts	incasso <i>m.</i>
pretty	carino, grazioso	receive	ricēvere
prevail	prevalere	recently	di recente
prevent	impedire	recommend	raccomandare
primitive	primitivo	recover	tr. riavere; <i>intr.</i> guarire
prince	principe <i>m.</i>	recruit	recluta <i>f.</i>
		red	rosso
		redeem	redimere
		reef	scoglio <i>m.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

refuge rifugio <i>m.</i> ; take ~ rifugiarsi	rose rōṣa <i>f.</i>
refuse rifiutare	rough rozzo
regard (<i>greeting of remembrance</i>)	row-boat barca (<i>f.</i>) a remi
saluto <i>m.</i>	rule rēgola <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> rēggere
regret deplorare, rincrēscere a, dis-	ruler regnante <i>m.</i>
piacere a; I ~ mi rincrēsce	run corsa <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> cōrrere; ~ down
relative parente <i>m.</i> ; <i>adj.</i> relativo	<i>adj.</i> scārico
remain rimanere	
remainder rēsto <i>m.</i>	sad triste
remake rifare	sadness tristezza <i>f.</i>
remember ricordarsi di	safe sicuro
renounce rinunziare a	safety sicurezza, salvezza <i>f.</i> ; in ~
repeat ripētere	in salvo
repent pentirsi	sail vēla <i>f.</i> ; set ~ far vēla
reply risposta <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> rispōndere	sailor marinaio <i>m.</i>
reproof rimprōvero <i>m.</i>	saint santo <i>m.</i>
reprove rimproverare	Saint san, santo
republic repubblica <i>f.</i>	saintly santo
republican repubblicano	saint's-day onomāstico <i>m.</i>
respectable rispettābile	sale vēndita <i>f.</i>
rest rēsto, riposo <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> riposarsi	same stesso
result risultato <i>m.</i>	sample campione <i>m.</i>
resurrection risorgimento <i>m.</i>	Saturday sābato <i>m.</i>
return ritorno <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> tornare, ritor- nare	saucer piattino (<i>m.</i>) da tazza
Rhine Rēno <i>m.</i>	savage selvaggio <i>adj.</i>
ribbon nastro <i>m.</i>	save <i>v.</i> salvare, (<i>money</i>) risparmiare; <i>prep.</i> tranne
rich ricco <i>m.</i>	Savoy la Savoia <i>f.</i>
rid oneself sbarrarsi	say dire
right dēstro; be ~ aver ragione	says dice
rigorous rigoroso	scatter spārgere, diffōndere
ring anēllo <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sonare	school scuola <i>f.</i>
rise levarsi, alzarsi	scissors fōrbici <i>f. pl.</i>
risk rīschio <i>m.</i>	scold șgridare
river fiume <i>m.</i>	score ventina <i>f.</i>
road strada <i>f.</i>	scout vedetta <i>f.</i>
Roman romano	scrap brano <i>m.</i>
Rome Rōma	sea mare <i>m.</i> ; at ~ in mare; by the ~
room stanza <i>f.</i>	al mare
roost appollaiarsi	season stagione <i>f.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

second	secondo	should	past fut. or subj.
secret	segreto <i>m.</i>	shoulder	spalla <i>f.</i>
secretly	di nascosto	shout	grido <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> gridare
see	vedere	show	mostrare, dimostrare; ~ in far passare
seem	sembrare	Sicily	la Sicilia
seen	visto	side	parte <i>f.</i> ; on this ~ of al di qua di; on that ~ of al di là di
Seine	Senna <i>f.</i>	sign	affisso, cartello <i>m.</i> ; segno <i>m.</i>
seldom	di rado	signal	cenno <i>m.</i>
self	see myself, himself, etc.	silence	silenzio <i>m.</i>
sell	vendere	silk	seta <i>f.</i>
send	mandare, inviare, spedire	silver	argento <i>m.</i>
sentinel	sentinella <i>f.</i>	simple	semplice
September	settembre <i>m.</i>	since (time)	dacchè; (<i>cause</i>) poichè
seriously	sul sèrio	sincere	sincero
servant	servo, -a	sing	cantare
serve	servire; (<i>meal</i>) imbandire	sip	sorbire
service	servizio <i>m.</i>	sir	Signore <i>m.</i>
set table	apparecchiare	sister	sorella <i>f.</i>
seven	sette	sister-in-law	cognata <i>f.</i>
seventeen	diciassette	sit	sedere; ~ down accomodarsi
seventeenth	dècimo sètimo	six	sei
seventh	sètimo	sixteen	sédici
seventy	settanta	sixteenth	dècimo sèsto
several	parecchi	sixth	sèsto
sew	cucire	sixty	sessanta
shake	scuotere; ~ hands with dar la mano a	skirt	sottana <i>f.</i>
shall I (in questions)	dèvo	sleep	sonno <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> dormire
shame	vergogna <i>f.</i>	sleepy:	be ~ aver sonno
share	parte <i>f.</i>	sleeve	mânica <i>f.</i>
she	ella, essa, lei	small	piccolo
sheep	pècora <i>f.</i>	smoke	fumo <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> fumare
sheet	lenzuolo; (<i>of paper</i>) foglio <i>m.</i>	sneeze	starnutire
shelf	scaffale <i>m.</i>	snow	neve <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> nevicare
shield	scudo <i>m.</i>	so	così; ~ much, ~ many, tanto, tanti; ~ that perchè (<i>w. subj.</i>)
shoe	scarpa <i>f.</i>	sob	singulto <i>m.</i>
shoemaker	calzolaio <i>m.</i>	socialist	socialista <i>m.</i>
shoot	tirare	sock	calzino <i>m.</i>
shop	bottega <i>f.</i>		
short	corto, brève		

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

soft dolce	station stazione <i>f.</i>
softly piano	stay restare, rimanere
soil suolo <i>m.</i>	steel acciaio <i>m.</i>
soldier soldato <i>m.</i>	step passo <i>m.</i>
solitude solitudine <i>f.</i>	Stephen Stéfano
some <i>adj.</i> qualche; <i>pron.</i> né	still ancora, tuttavia
son figlio <i>m.</i>	stone pietra <i>f.</i>
son-in-law genero <i>m.</i>	stop fermarsi
song canzone <i>f.</i>	story storia <i>f.</i>
soon presto, tosto; as ~ as tosto che;	straight dritto; ~ ahead difilato
as ~ as possible quanto prima; no	
~er . . . than appena . . . che	
sorrow dolore <i>m.</i>	strange strano
sorrowful afflitto, doloroso	stranger straniero <i>m.</i>
sorry dispiacente; be ~ dispiacere	straw paglia <i>f.</i>
a; I am ~ mi dispiace	street via <i>f.</i>
south mezzogiorno	stretch out porgere
southern meridionale	strike sciopero <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> colpire
Spaniard Spagnuolo <i>m.</i>	struggle lotta <i>f.</i>
Spanish spagnuolo	study studio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> studiare
spark scintilla <i>f.</i>	succeed riuscire; <i>tr.</i> succedere a
speak parlare	suck succhiare
spectacle spettacolo <i>m.</i>	suddenly improvvisamente, a un
spectacles occhiali <i>m. pl.</i>	tratto
speculator speculatore <i>m.</i>	suffer soffrire, patire
spend (<i>time</i>) passare; (<i>money</i>)	suffice bastare
spēndere	suitable : be ~ convenire
spirit spirito <i>m.</i>	sum somma <i>f.</i>
spool rocchetto <i>m.</i>	summer estate <i>f.</i>
spoon cucchiaio <i>m.</i>	summit colmo <i>m.</i>
spot macchia <i>f.</i>	sun sole <i>m.</i>
spread distendere	Sunday domenica <i>f.</i>
spring (<i>season</i>) primavera <i>f.</i> ; (<i>motive</i>	superior superiore
power) mollà <i>f.</i>	support sostegno <i>m.</i>
spy spia <i>f.</i>	supreme supremo
stain macchia <i>f.</i>	sure sicuro
stair scala <i>f.</i> ; winding ~ scala a	surgeon chirurgo <i>m.</i>
chiocciola	surprise sorpresa <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sorprendere
state stato <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> dichiarare	swarm sciame <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> formicolare
statesman politico <i>m.</i>	swear giurare
	sweet dolce
	sweetmeat dolce <i>m.</i> ; chicca <i>f.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

Swiss svizzero	they essi, esse
table tavola f.; set the ~ apparecchiare; ~cloth tovaglia f.	thicket mācchia f.
tailor sarto m.	thimble ditale m.
take prēndere, pigliare; ~ off levarsi; ~ away tōgliere; ~one's way avviarsi; ~ out cavare	thing cōsa f.
talent ingegno m.	things rōba f. collective
tall alto	think pensare; (<i>believe</i>) crēdere
task lavoro m.	third tērzo
tax tassa f.	thirst sēte f.
tea tē m.	thirsty: be ~ avér sēte
teach insegnare	thirteen trēdici
teacher maestro, -a; istitutore, -trice	thirteenth dēcimo tērzo
telegram telegramma, dispaccio m.	thirty trēnta
telephone telefonare	this questo
tell dire; raccontare	thither lì, là
ten dięci	Thomas Tommaso
tenth dēcimo	thou tu
terrible terribile	though benchè, sebbene
territory territōrio m.	thought pensiero m.
tête à tête a quattr'occhi	thousand mille
Thames Tamigi m.	threat mināccia f.
than di, che, di quel che	threaten minacciare
thanks grāzie f. pl.	three tre
that dem. pron. quello; rel. pron.	threshold sōglia f.
che; conj. che	throw gettare, buttare; ~away buttar via
thaw sgelare, dighiacciare	thunder tuono m.; v. tonare
the il, la; pl. i, gli, le	thunderbolt fulmine m.
theater teatro m.	Thursday giovedì m.
thee ti, te	thus così
their il loro, la loro, etc.	thy il tuo, la tua, etc.
them li, le, loro	thyself tu stesso; refl. ti
theme tēma m.	Tiber Tēvere m.
themselves loro stessi; refl. si	ticket biglietto m.; round-trip ~ biglietto d'andata e ritorno; first-class ~ biglietto di prima classe
then allora, dunque	ticket-window sportello m.
thence indi, ne	tight stretto
there lì, là; ~ is, ~ are, c'è, ci sono, (<i>dem.</i>) ecco	time tēmpo m.; (<i>a time</i>) vōlta f.; on ~ a tēmpo; short ~ poco
therefore dunque	tin latta f.

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

tiny mīnimo, piccino	twentieth ventēsimo
tired stanco; become ~ stancarsi	twenty vēnti
to a, ad	twice due volte
to-day oggi	two due
together insieme	typewriter mācchina (<i>f.</i>) da scrivere
to-morrow domani	typical tipico
tongs mōlle <i>f. pl.</i>	tyranny tirannia <i>f.</i>
too, too much, troppo; ~ many troppi	tyrant tiranno <i>m.</i>
tooth dēnte <i>m.</i>	ugly brutto
top cima <i>f.</i> ; on ~ of in cima a	umbrella ombrelllo <i>m.</i>
torture supplizio <i>m.</i>	uncle zio <i>m.</i>
tour giro <i>m.</i>	under sotto
towards vērso	understand capire, intēndere
tower torre <i>f.</i>	unequal ineguale
trade mestiere; commercio <i>m.</i>	uneven impari
train trēno <i>m.</i>	unhappy infelice
traitor, -ress , traditore, -tora	union unità <i>f.</i>
travel viaggiare	unite unire
traveler viaggiatore <i>m.</i>	university università <i>f.</i>
treachery tradimento <i>m.</i>	unless a meno che (<i>w. subj.</i>)
tree ālbero <i>m.</i>	until fino a
tremble tremare	up su; get ~ levarsi
tricolored tricolore	upon su
trimming guarnizione <i>f.</i>	upper superiore
triple trīplice, triplo	us ci, noi
troops truppe <i>f. pl.</i>	use uso <i>m.</i> ; make ~ of servirsi di; be of ~ to servire a
trousers calzoni <i>m. pl.</i>	usual sōlito; as ~ come al sōlito
trunk baule <i>m.</i> ; pack one's ~ fare il baule	usually generalmente, per il sōlito
truth veritā <i>f.</i>	
try provare, cercare di; ~ one's best fare di tutto; ~ on provare	vacation vacanza <i>f.</i>
Tuesday martedì <i>m.</i>	vain: in ~ indarno
Turk Turco <i>m.</i>	valley valle <i>f.</i>
turn voltarsi; ~ back rivoltare; in ~ a vicenda; be the ~ of toccare a	value pregio <i>m.</i> ; be of ~ valere
Tuscany la Toscana	vast vasto
twelfth dēcimo secondo	veil velo <i>m.</i>
twelve dōdici	Venetian veneziano
	Venice Venēzia
	very molto

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

view vista <i>f.</i>	west ponente <i>m.</i>
village villaggio, paese <i>m.</i>	western occidentale
vintage vendemmia <i>f.</i>	wet bagnato
violet mämmola <i>f.</i>	what che, quel che
virtue virtù <i>f.</i>	whatever adj. qualunque; pron. chech'hè
visit višita <i>f.</i> ; v. visitare	when quando
 	whenever qualora (<i>w. subj.</i>)
wager scommessa <i>f.</i>	where dove
wait, wait for , aspettare	wherever dovunque (<i>w. subj.</i>)
waiter cameriere <i>m.</i>	whether se
walk v. camminare, andare a piedi	which che, il quale
walk passeggiata, giratina <i>f.</i> , spasso <i>m.</i> ; take a ~ andare a spasso, fare una passeggiata	while mentre; be worth ~ meritare il conto
wall muro <i>m.</i>	white bianco
walnut noce <i>f.</i>	who rel. che; interr. chi
wander peregrinare	whom rel. che, cui; interr. chi
war guerra <i>f.</i> ; wage ~ móver guerra	whose rel. cui, di cui; interr. di chi
warfare guerra <i>f.</i> ; of ~ bëllico	why perchè
warlike bellico	wicked scellerato
warm caldo; be ~ aver caldo	wide largo
wash lavare; ~-stand lavamano <i>m.</i>	width larghezza <i>f.</i>
watch orologio <i>m.</i> ; v. guardare, vegliare	wife moglie <i>f.</i>
water acqua <i>f.</i> ; v. annaffiare	will volontà <i>f.</i> ; v. volere
wave onda <i>f.</i>	win vincere
way via, strada <i>f.</i> ; lose one's ~ smarrirsi; take one's ~ avviarsi, recarsi; on the ~ strada facendo	wind up caricare
we noi	wind vento <i>m.</i>
weak dëbole, caduco, fiacco	window finestra <i>f.</i>
weather tèmpo <i>m.</i> ; it is fine ~ fa bel tèmpo	winter inverno <i>m.</i>
wedding nqzze <i>f. pl.</i>	wise savio, sapiente
Wednesday mercoledì <i>m.</i>	wish volere, desiderare; ~ well augurare
week settimana <i>f.</i>	with con
weep piängere	wither appassire
welcome benvenuto; you're ~ niènte	without senza; do ~ fare a meno di
well bëne; ~ then ebbene, dunque; ~ now o or q	woman donna <i>f.</i> ; married ~ signora <i>f.</i> ; unmarried ~ signorina <i>f.</i>
	wood bësco <i>m.</i> ; (material) legno <i>m.</i>
	wool lana <i>f.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

work ḥopera f., lavoro <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> lavorare	yard corte <i>f.</i>
workman operaio <i>m.</i>	yawn sbadigliare
world mondo <i>m.</i>	year anno <i>m.</i>
worse adj. peggiore; <i>adv.</i> peggio	yes sì
worst il peggiore; il peggio	yesterday ieri
worry <i>tr.</i> dar pensiero a; <i>intr.</i> stare in pensiero, darsi pensiero	yet ancora, tuttavia
worth : be ~ valere	you voi, tu, Lei; cf. 65, <i>a, b, c</i>
would volere; <i>past fut. or subj.</i>	young giovane
wound ferita <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> ferire	your il vostro, il tuo, il Suo
wound up adj. carico	yourself voi stesso, tu stesso, Lei stesso; <i>refl.</i> vi, ti, si
write scrivere	yourselves voi stessi, Loro stessi; <i>refl.</i> vi, si
writer scrittore <i>m.</i>	youth gioventù <i>f.</i>
wrong : be ~ aver torto	

INDEX

[Numbers refer to sections]

a, idioms with, 227, *a*
Accent, graphic, 18-21
 acute, 21
 circumflex, 20
 grave, 19
 meaning distinguished by, 19, *e*
Accent, tonic, 9-15
 marks of, in this book, 9
 meaning distinguished by, 15
 in truncated words, 33
 in verbs, 13, *a*
Addition of d or r for euphony, 39
Address, person in, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*
Adjectives, 82-88
 agreement, 83
 with two or more nouns, 83, *b*
 sg. adj. with pl. n., 83, *c*
 capitalization of, 88, *a*
 demonstrative, 86; 190
 interrogative, 87; 191
 invariable, 85, *b*
 irregular, 85, *a*
 position of, 84
 prepositions with, 223
 used substantively, 88
 with subst. understood, 88, *b*
Adverbs, 89; 212-219
 comparison of, 115; 116; 117
 formation of, 89, *a*; 214
 position of, 212; 216, *n*
 of affirmation, 215; 230, *b*, 3
 of manner, 214; 219, *a*; 227
 of negation, 216
 of place, 217; 219, *b*
 of quantity, 89, *b*; 160; 218
 of time, 219, *c*
Age, 153
'ago,' 151, *d*
alcuno, 206, *a*
'all,' 160, *c*
Alphabet, 1
altro, 208, *c*, *d*
altrui, 208, *b*
andare, 149
 idioms with, 149, *b*
 special uses of, 149, *a*
'any,' 77; 124; 206, *a*, 1, 2, 3; 208, *c*
Aphesisis, 35
Apocope, 37
Archaic forms, 44-47
Arithmetical formulae, 159, *b*
Article, *see* Definite and Indefinite
Article repeated, 61
Augmentatives, 228, *a*; 229
Auxiliary
 agreement of past part. with, 99;
 104, *c*, 1, 2; 194, *b*
 avere used as, 68; 101, *b*, *c*; 121
 'do,' 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
 essere used as, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
 modal auxiliaries, 186
 avere, 68; 101; 120; 121
 idiomatic uses of, 123
 past part. with, 122
'be,' 96
bello, forms of, 85, *a*
'both,' 150, *d*; 207, *f*
buono, forms of, 85, *n*
'can,' *see* Modal auxiliaries, sapere
Capitalization, 41-43
 capitals omitted, 42
 capitals used contrary to English
 usage, 43
 of adjectives, 88, *a*
Cardinal numerals, 150
 'about' with, 158, *a*, 1

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- care, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
- Century, number of, 151, *c*; 157, *c*
- cere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
- che, 114, *a*; 115, *b*, 1, 2, *c*; 169, *i*, note 2; 189, *b*; 230, *b*, 2, 3, 4
- ci (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
- ci (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1; 224, *b*
- ciare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
- ciò, 190, *d*
- Close vowels, 3, *a*, *c*, *f*
- co, masculines in, 178, *c*
- Collective nouns, agreement with, 183
- Collective numerals, 158, *a*
 - with special meanings, 158, *b*
- Comparatives, 115
 - of equality, 119
 - irregular, 117, *a*
 - with special meanings, 117, *b*
- Compound nouns, 181; 225
- Compound tenses, 68; 96; 120
- Conjugations, 90, *a*
- Conjunctions, 230
- Conjunctive pronoun objects
 - forms, 94
 - changes in, 125, *b*
 - position, 95, *a*, *b*
 - of two objects, 125, *a*
 - with dependent inf., 167
 - curtailment of inf. before, 95, *b*, 2
 - direct becoming indirect, 167, *c*, 2
 - initial consonants doubled in, 100, *b*
 - used redundantly, 100, *d*, *e*
 - used as subject, 100, *g*
 - with compound prep. and verb, 222, *a*
 - with *ecco*, 100, *a*
- Consonants, 5
- Contraction of prepositions, 75
- d, addition of, for euphony, 39
- da, idiomatic uses of, 103; 112; 123, *a*; 139; 162, *c*; 227, *b*
- dare, 131
 - idioms with, 131, *a*
- Dates, 150, *c*; 151, *a*, *b*, *c*; 157, *c*
- Definite article
 - forms, 70
 - their uses, 71; 72
- syntax, 73; 146; 147
 - agreement with two nouns, 148
 - in dates, 146, *f*; 151
 - distributive, 146, *g*
 - idiomatic uses, 146, *k*
 - omission of, 147
 - used for possessive, 107, *c*; 146, *e*
 - with proper names, 146, *c*, *d*, *h*
- Demonstrative adjective, 86; 190
- Demonstrative pronoun, 190
- di, 78; 164, *b*, 1; 174, *b*, 3, *c*, 3; 205, *a*; 221, *b*; 227, *c*
- Dialogues
- In un albergo, p. 154
- L' Arrivo, p. 134
- L' Automobile, p. 219
- Dal calzolaio, p. 202
- Dalla modista, p. 245
- Dalla sarta, p. 163
- Dal sarto, p. 188
- Si fanno le compre, p. 250
- Diminutives, 228, *b*; 229
- Diphthongs, 4, *a*, *b*; 53
- dire, 175
- Disjunctive pronoun, 135; 136
 - nominative, 65; 135, *a*
 - objective, 135, *b*
 - uses of, 65, *a*, 1; 136
 - 'do,' auxiliary, 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
- dolere, 172
- Double consonants, 5, *b*
- Doublings, special, 5, *b*, 2
- dovere, 188
 - special uses of, 187, *c*
- ecco, 100, *a*; 217, *c*
- ed for e, 39
- Elision, 22-28; 52
 - in contracted forms, 28
- essere, 96
 - used as auxiliary, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
- Exclamations, 191, *a*; 230, *b*, 2; 231
- fare, 163
 - idioms with, 163, *b*
 - with dependent inf., 163, *a*; 167, *c*
- Fractions, 157, *b*
- 'from,' 227, *d*, 2
- Future, 69; 141

INDEX

- gare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
- Gender, 80; 197-203
 - distinguished by form, 80, *b*; 197
 - distinguished by meaning, 80, *a*; 198
 - masculines in *a*, 202
 - in names of animals, 200
 - in nouns of human relationship, 201
 - rank, feminine forms of words denoting, 203
 - two genders, nouns of, 199
- Genitive, *see* Possessive
- gere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
- Gerund, English, transl. into Italian, 193, *d*
- Gerundive, Italian, 193, *b*
- giare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
 - gli (hard g), 5, *c*
 - grande, forms of, 85, *a*
 - 'half,' 157, *b*, 1
 - 'have,' 120
 - 'have to,' 123, *a*
 - 'here,' 126, *a*; 217; 219, *b*
 - 'he who,' 190, *c*, 2
 - 'however,' 230, *a*
- i, euphonic, 38
- iare, verbs ending in, 110, *b*
- Idioms, *see* andare, da, dare, etc., Adverbs, Prepositions, Time, Weather, etc.
- Imperative
 - formation, in irr. verbs, 130, *e*
 - negative, 92, *b*
 - third person of, 92, *a*
- Impersonal English expressions, translation of, 106, *b*
- Impersonal verbs, 164
 - with subjunctive, 164, *b*
 - use of di with, 164, *b*, 1
- Indefinite article
 - forms, 58
 - their uses, 59; 60
 - syntax of, 61; 66; 162
- Indefinite pronouns, 205-210
 - alphabetical list, 205
 - with di, 205, *a*
 - negative, 210
- Indicative, *see* Tenses
- Infinitive, 173; 174
 - government of, 174
 - uses of, 173
 - with a, 174, *b*, 1; *c*, 2
 - with da, 174, *a*; *c*, 4
 - with di, 174, *b*, 3; *c*, 3
- Inflections, *see* Conjugations
- Interjections, 231
- Interrogative adjective, 87; 191
- Interrogative construction, 62
- Interrogative pronouns, 191
- Invariable adjectives, 85, *b*
- Invariable nouns, 176
- Inversion, 145; 194, *c*
- io, plural of nouns in, 178, *a*, 2
- Irregular verbs, pp. 261-273
 - formation, 130
 - past absolutes of, 120, *a*
 - principal parts of, 120, *b*; 130
 - regular forms of, 128
- issimo, ending, 116, *d*
- 'it,' anticipative subject, 100, *g*, 2
 - in predicate after essere, 100, *e*
 - 'it is I,' etc., 65, *f*
- 'its,' 107, *c*
- Lei, in address, 65, *a*, 1; 100, *c*
- Letters, *see* Alphabet, Consonants, Vowels
- loro, 125, *a*, 1; 136, *i*, 1
- mai, 191, *b*; 216, *f*, 1
- 'may,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- Marks of pronunciation, 2, *a*; 5, *e*; 9
- Measurements, 155
- meco, etc., 136, *a*, 1
- Metathesis, 40
- Modal auxiliaries, 186; 187
 - in compound tenses, 186, *b*
 - with inf., 186, *d*
 - special uses of, 187
- Money, 154
- Moods, *see* Imperative, Indicative, Subjunctive
- morire, 156
- Multiplicatives, 159, *a*
- 'must,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- 'myself,' etc., *see* Reflexives

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

nascere, past tenses of, 140, *d*, i
ne (adv.), 126; 217, *b*
ne (pron.), 107, *c*; 124; 224, *b*
for ci, 94, *a*, i
'never,' 216, *b*, i; *f*
no for non, 216, *d*
non, 216, *a*, *b*, *f*
pleonastic, 169, *a*, i
position, 216, *a*
'not,' 216

Nouns, *see* Gender, Plural
compound, 181; 225
position as object of dependent
infinitive, 167, *c*, i

Number, *see* Plural

Numerals, *see* Cardinal, Ordinal

o, uo, in verbs, 110, *d*

Objects, *see* Conjunctive and Nouns

Old forms, *see* Archaic

'one,' 106, *b*; 207

'only,' 216, *b*

Open vowels, 3, *b*, *d*, *g*

Ordinal numerals, 157

agreement, 157, *a*
century numbers, 157, *c*
fractions, 157, *b*
'half,' 157, *b*, i
order, 157, *d*, *e*
uses, 157, *b-d*

Orthographical peculiarities of
verbs, 110

Orthography, *see* Variant forms

'other,' 208, *d*

'ought,' *see* Modal auxiliaries

parere, 161

Parole bisdrucciole, 13

Parole piane, 10

Parole sdrucciole, 12

Parole tronche, 11

Participle, past, 194

absolute construction, 195
agreement, 194, *b*
inversion, 194, *c*

Participle, present, 193

English, transl. into Italian, 102;
193, *c*

Italian, transl. into English, 193,
a, *b*

Partitive, 77; 124

Passive, 97

English, transl. into Italian, 106, *a*
with andare, rimanere, venire, 97,
a, i

Past absolute, 74; 140, *a*
irregular construction of, 120, *a*

Past descriptive, 140, *c*

Past future, 79; 93; 142

Past tenses, *see* Tenses

Person in address, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*

Personal pronouns, 65

see Conjunctive, Disjunctive
piacere, 185

Pitch in speech, 14

Plural of nouns, 67; 176-184

in compound nouns, 181
defective, 182
feminine, 177
invariable, 176
irregular, 179
masculine, 178
meaning distinguished by, 182, *d*
in proper nouns, 180
sg. used for, with parts of body,
184

Poetic forms, *see* Archaic

porre, 196

Possessive with di, 78

Possessive adjective, 107

agreement, 107, *b*
definite article omitted, 108
definite article used for, 109
'its,' 107, *c*

potere, 168; 187, *b*

Prepositions, 221-227

with adjectives, 223
alphabetical lists of, 226
compound, 222
conjunctive object used with,
222, *a*

contracted with article, 75
idioms with, 227

with objects of verbs, 224, *b*
repeated with each noun, 76
simple, 221, *a*
with pronouns, 221, *b*

Present indicative, *see* Tenses

Principal parts of verbs, 91; 120, *b*;
130

INDEX

Probability, future of, 141, *a*, *i*
 Pronouns, *see* Conjunctive, Demonstrative, Disjunctive, Indefinite, Interrogative, Relative
 Pronoun subject omitted, 63, *a*
 Pronunciation, 2-5
 close vowels, 3, *a*, *c*, *f*
 consonant sounds, 5
 marks, 2, *a*; 5, *e*; 9
 meaning distinguished by, 3, *e*, *h*; 5, *b*, *e*, 4, *d*; 15
 mispronunciations, 2, *b*
 open vowels, 3, *b*, *d*, *g*
 Tuscan peculiarities of, 5, *d*
 vowel sounds, 2
 words for practice, 16, 17

qualche, 206, *c*, *i*

r, euphonic, 39

Reciprocal verbs, 104, *b*

Reflexive pronoun, 94, *c*
 as dative of reference, 105, *b*, 3
 omitted from dependent inf., 105, *b*, 2
 for possessive, 105, *c*

Reflexive verbs, 104-106
 with 2d conjunctive object, 127
 with prepositions, to translate English transitives, 105, *b*, *i*
 uses, 104, *b*; 105
 special uses, 106

Regular verbs, 90
 construction of, 91

Relative pronoun
 forms, 114
 uses, 189

Rhyme, 55

rimanere, 129

s, pronunciation of, 5, *e*, *i*, 2
 s impure, 59, *a*, *i*
 santo, forms of, 85, *a*
 sapere, 132
 special meanings of, 132, *a*

scegliere, 211

sè, 136, *i*

Semivowels, 4

sentire, conjugation of, 111, *a*
 'shall,' *see* Future, dovere
 'should,' *see* Past future

si, *see* Reflexive
 Singular for plural with parts of body, 184
 'so' after verbs of thinking etc., 100, *e*, *i*; 215, *b*, *i*
 'some,' 'some one,' 77; 124; 206
 'some more,' 208, *d*, *z*

Spelling, *see* Variant forms

stare, 166
 idioms with, 166, *b*
 special meanings of, 166, *a*

Subject, inversion of, 145

Subjunctive
 in dependent clauses, 169
 in conditions, 93
 with credere, 137
 with impersonal verbs, 164, *b*
 after superlatives, 118
 after verbs of wishing, 113
 in independent clauses, 171
 future for, 169, *i*, note i
 sequence of tenses with, 170

Suffixes, *see* Augmentatives, Diminutives

Superlative, 116
 absolute, 116, *d*
 article omitted, 116, *b*
 preposition used with, 116, *c*
 subjunctive with, 118

Syllabification, 6-8

Syllables, division of, at end of line, 8

Syncope, 36

Tenses of the indicative, 139-142
 compound, 68; 96; 120
 future, 69; 141
 past absolute, 74; 140, *a*
 past descriptive, 140, *c*
 past future, 79; 93; 142
 past perfect, 140, *d*
 present, 139
 present perfect, 140, *b*
 second past perfect, 140, *e*
 sequence of, 143
 'than,' 115, *b*, *c*, *d*
 'there,' 217

Time
 of day, 152
 idioms of, 151, *e*; 152, *e*; 160, *d*; 219, *c*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

'to,' 227, *d*, 1
Triphthongs, 4, *c*; 53, *a*
Truncation, 29-33
 conditions of, 30
 irregular, 32
 poetic, 31, *d*
 regular, 31, *a*, *b*, *c*
 titles truncated, 31, *c*
Tuscan peculiarities of pronunciation, 5, *d*

udire, 192
uno, 59, *b*; 150, *a*; 207
uscire, 204

valere, 220
Variant forms of words, 34-40
venire, 138
 special uses of, 138, *a*
Verbs, *see* Regular, Irregular, Tenses
 agreement of
 with subject, 144
 with collectives, 183
 inversion of subject, 145
 sequence of tenses, 143; 170

Versification, 50-57
 blank verse, 56
 diphthongs, 53
 elision, 52
 lines, 51
 rhyme, 55
 strophes, 57
 syllables, 54
vi (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
vi (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1
volere, 133
 special meanings of, 133, *a*; 187, *a*
Vowels, 2

Weather, expressions of, 165
'what,' rendering of, 190, *a*, 5, *a*; 191; 191, *a*
'whatever,' 'whoever,' 209, *b*
'will,' *see* Future
'would,' *see* Past future

'you,' 65, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*; 100, *c*

z, pronunciation of, 5, *e*, 3, 4

